

点金训练

教师用书

《点金训练》编写组 编

► 英语

选择性必修 第一册

配外研版



四川教育出版社

CONTENTS

目录

Unit 1 Laugh out loud!

○单元概览	1
○探究构建	Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending 3
	Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points 6
	Section III Using language 10
	Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection 15
○迁移应用	Part 1 应用文写作 21
	Part 2 读后续写 22
○重构拓展	24

Unit 2 Onwards and upwards

○单元概览	32
○探究构建	Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending 34
	Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points 37
	Section III Using language 41
	Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection 46
○迁移应用	Part 1 应用文写作 52
	Part 2 读后续写 53
○重构拓展	55

Unit 3 Faster, higher, stronger

○单元概览	63
○探究构建	Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending 65
	Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points 68
	Section III Using language 72
	Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection 75
○迁移应用	Part 1 应用文写作 82
	Part 2 读后续写 83
○重构拓展	85



Unit 4 Meeting the muse

○单元概览	99
○探究构建	
Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	101
Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	104
Section III Using language	108
Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	111
○迁移应用	
Part 1 应用文写作	117
Part 2 读后续写	118
○重构拓展	120

Unit 5 Revealing nature

○单元概览	128
○探究构建	
Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	130
Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	133
Section III Using language	137
Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	142
○迁移应用	
Part 1 应用文写作	148
Part 2 读后续写	150
○重构拓展	152

Unit 6 Nurturing nature

○单元概览	160
○探究构建	
Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending	162
Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points	165
Section III Using language	170
Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection	174
○迁移应用	
Part 1 应用文写作	180
Part 2 读后续写	181
○重构拓展	183

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and self, whose topic is a positive attitude towards life. This unit has a variety of articles, including questionnaire, narrative, dialogue, essays, blog, and so on. Starting from a video of comedy history, this unit, in turn, presents the self questionnaire, the story of the clown doctor, the British humorous story, Mark Twain’s and Wang Zengqi’s humorous life stories, Charlie Chaplin’s general introduction learning content, from multiple angles expounds the topics related to the positive attitude towards life, aims to help students to better manage their emotions, keep a happy mood, with a positive attitude to face life, and set up the correct attitude towards life.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与“积极乐观的生活态度”主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	理解限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句的相同点和不同点,学会在写作中正确使用非限制性定语从句。
		语篇	1. 基于本单元提供的问卷、记叙文、对话、论说文、博客等多模态语篇,学会综合运用各种语言技能; 2. 读懂关于具有幽默精神的人物及其经历的介绍,了解中外优秀人物的幽默品质,深化对单元主题意义的理解。
		语用	学会用英语讲幽默故事和进行评论,并能在实际生活中运用所学的表达。
	语言技能	听	能听懂并谈论与幽默相关的话题,了解中外优秀人物的幽默品质,深化对单元主题意义的理解。
		说	恰当使用所学词汇与表达讲述幽默故事,介绍喜剧演员。
		读	1. 综合运用各种语言技能,读懂关于具有幽默精神的人物及其经历的介绍; 2. 在阅读理解中,厘清文章对对比事物的表达思路,发现这些对比事物的特点。
		写	1. 学会在写作中正确使用非限制性定语从句,并能在实际语境中运用; 2. 了解人物介绍的基本内容、文体特征和写作手法;能运用所学知识介绍一位大众熟悉和喜爱的喜剧演员。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	能通过运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进度,提高自己的理解能力和表达能力。
文化意识	1. 能运用单元所学知识指导生活实际; 2. 了解不同国家的喜剧历史及其发展的相关内容,更加全面、详细地了解不同国家和文化对喜剧的不同认识,增强多元文化理解能力。
思维品质	能运用单元所学内容,通过比较、分析并联系自身实际,创作并表演脱口秀和喜剧,树立积极乐观的生活态度,树立积极向上的人生观,实现知识和思维能力的拓展与迁移。

◉ 必备知识

必背 单词	mood, circus, amusement, spot, ankle, entertain, examine, advertisement, employer, essential, impress, deserve, literary, remark, interaction, shave, fellow, cruel, gentle, complicated, conclude, composer
重点 表达	health care, in pain, do a great job, more often than not, work closely with, cheer up, do the trick, throw light on, long face, laughing stock, crack a smile, brand of humour, fall behind
重点 知识	1. It+be+ <i>adj.</i> +that... 2. make+宾语+宾语补足语 3. not only... but also...
单元 语法	非限制性定语从句
单元 写作	喜剧演员简介

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Learn to understand and use some words related to comedy and humour.
2. To know types of comedy and check how fun you are.
3. Understand specific information by listening and watching. Present your views in a logical structure through comparison.
4. To know the information about clown doctors and talk about the value of their work.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. mood *n.* 心情
2. amusement *n.* 娱乐, 消遣
3. entertain *v.* 使快乐
4. examine *v.* 检查(身体)
5. advertisement *n.* 广告
6. employer *n.* 雇用者, 雇主
7. cheer up (使)高兴起来, (使)振作起来
8. do the trick 奏效, 达到预期效果
9. more often than not 通常; 多半
10. look through 浏览, 翻阅
11. in pain 痛苦地
12. concentrate on 集中精力于; 全神贯注于
13. take off 脱掉; 起飞; 迅速流行
14. apologise for 因……而道歉

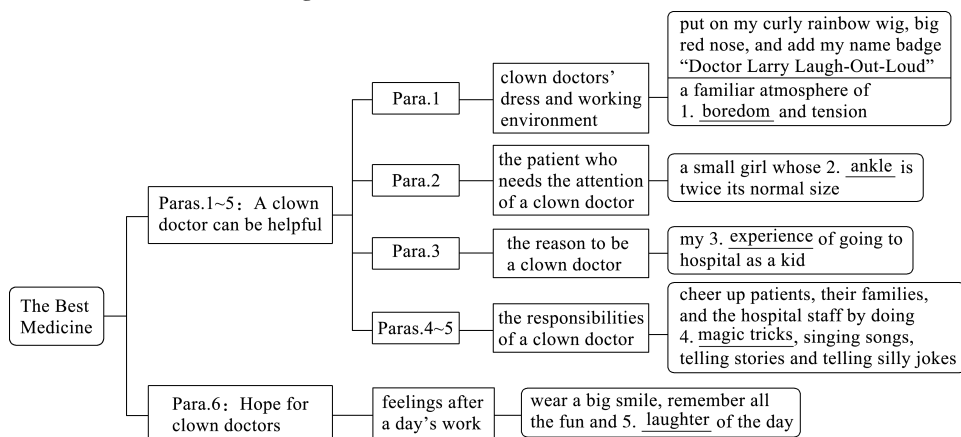
(二) 阅读词汇

1. circus *n.* 马戏团
2. wig *n.* 假发
3. clown *n.* 小丑
4. badge *n.* 徽章
5. ankle *n.* 脚踝
6. curly *adj.* 卷曲的
7. on a weekly basis 每周; 按每周一次的标准
8. be designed for 为……设计/准备
9. feel like (doing) 想要(做)……
10. as for 至于, 关于
11. in need of 需要
12. work closely with 和……密切合作
13. fall off 从……跌落
14. amusement park 游乐场
15. health care 医疗保健
16. do a great job 干得很棒; 尽职尽责

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What's the atmosphere like without clown doctors in the hospital?
A. Friendly. B. Boring.
C. Lively. D. Frightening.
- What's the job of a clown doctor?
A. To cure patients.
B. To carry medicine.
C. To cheer patients up.
D. To do the cleaning.
- Why did Larry choose to be a clown doctor?
A. Because he was born with humour.
B. Because he had no other choice.
C. Because he could get good payment.
D. Because he had a bad experience in hospital as a kid.
- How does the clown doctor help the patient?
A. By telling stories and jokes.
B. By doing magic tricks.
C. By singing songs.
D. By doing all of the above.

答案: 1~4 BCDD

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- People sit uncomfortably on plastic chairs, looking through old magazines, all of which have been read hundreds of times previously.
[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。looking through old magazines 是现在分词短语作伴随状

语; all of which 引导非限制性定语从句, 修饰先行词 old magazines。

[尝试翻译]人们别扭地坐在塑料椅子上, 翻阅着之前已经被读过几百次的旧杂志。

- Although it's the doctors and nurses who will treat her injury, it's my job to make her feel better.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。Although 引导让步状语从句; it's... who... 是强调句型, 强调主语 the doctors and nurses。主句中 it 是形式主语, 动词不定式是真正的主语。

[尝试翻译]尽管为她治疗伤痛的是医生和护士, 但让她感觉好一些是我的工作。

- We are specially trained clowns who work as part of a programme known as "hospital clowning".

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。who 引导定语从句, 修饰先行词 clowns。known as "hospital clowning" 是过去分词短语作后置定语。

[尝试翻译]我们是受过专门培训的小丑, 是“医院小丑”项目的成员。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- How does the author feel after a day's work?
He feels happy and satisfied.
- Would you like to work as a clown doctor? Why or why not?
I'd like to, for I want to do something for those who are in pain and use my brand of humour to lessen their pain. (回答合理即可)

Unit 1 课后素养评价 (一)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

I am a big fan of laughter. I've been told that even in a room of a thousand people, you can always hear me laughing in the crowd. For me, laughter is the ultimate form of embodied joy. And by "embodied", I mean that my whole body is involved when I laugh. On the inside, it's like a bubbling fountain of joy spilling out all over the place.

But what is joy, anyway?

Life can be terrible, but if you decide to follow the sound of the joy-fountain, you will find joy showing up in all kinds of places: pets playfully bouncing around, kindness, or even in nothingness.

How can joy be found? A friend moved into a new apartment and needed some help, so I helped him. Afterwards, he was obviously so much happier and at ease. I noticed that playing even a small part in his happiness brought me great joy, and I took a moment to let this feeling of embodied joy in. We can practise letting joy in by noticing how it feels to smile. Where does your body light up when you smile? When I smile, it makes me want to take a deep breath, and I notice my shoulders and belly relaxing. When I embody care and love, it feels great!

Sadly, many of us are unaware of joy, or

suspicious of it. Maybe you are afraid to open up to joy, or you are so unfamiliar with what joy feels like that you ignore or resist it when it comes knocking. No one holds the key to your happiness except you, but you might unknowingly block feelings or experiences that help you embody joy. The fact is that when you can't embody joy, you miss out on one of life's essential vitamins.

Want more joy? Don't be afraid to look silly. Silliness helps us take things less personally. It helps us see the world the way a kid does. When we can find more joy in the small things of everyday life, we can embody happiness, rather than just chasing after it.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要讨论了快乐到底是什么。

- How is the topic of joy introduced at the beginning of the text?
 - By highlighting a joyful experience.
 - By stressing the importance of laughing.
 - By presenting an ultimate form of satisfaction.
 - By sharing the author's understanding of joy.

D 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知,文章开头通过分享作者对快乐的理解引入快乐的话题。故选 D。
- What might be the author's advice on finding joy?
 - Taking a deep breath.
 - Smiling at your friends.
 - Doing small acts of kindness.
 - Reflecting on nothingness.

C 推理判断题。根据第四段中的“A friend moved... to let this feeling of embodied joy in.”和“When I smile, it makes... feels great!”可推知,作者通过自己帮助朋友的经历建议我们通过做一些小小的善举发现快乐。故选 C。
- What might be the reason for many of us missing joy?
 - That many of us refuse it on purpose.
 - That many of us are insensitive to joy.
 - That many of us lack life's essential vitamins.
 - That many of us are likely to take joy for granted.

B 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“Sadly, many of us are unaware of joy, or suspicious of it. Maybe you are afraid to open up to joy, or you are so unfamiliar with what joy feels like that you ignore or resist it when it comes knocking.”可推知,我们中的许多人对快乐不敏感,这可能是我们许多人错过快乐的原因。故选 B。
- What is the best title for the text?
 - Life Is the Creation of Joy
 - A Happy Man Always Laughs Last
 - People Are Always Unaware of Joy
 - Happy People Are Happy in Childhood

A 标题归纳题。结合最后一段的内容并通读全文可知,我们可以在生活中发现快乐,可以通过帮助他人体验快乐;就是创造快乐。由此可推断,A项“生活就是创造快乐”最适合作为文章标题。故选 A。

II. 七选五

When people first come across the Law of Attraction (吸引力法则), their hearts and minds often immediately think of one specific thing that they'd love to achieve in their lives. However, the next thought is often “But I can't do that”. You may come up with all kinds of excuses. 1 Here are the reasons why you should believe you can use the Law of Attraction to obtain whatever you want.

Small steps create big changes. One of the most common reasons for abandoning dreams is that they simply seem too huge to realise. Usually it's manageable to think of following your dream as taking a series of significant but small steps. 2 Then look at each of them. Not so unrealistic now, is it?

3 When people are interviewed on their deathbeds or write about their lives in autobiographies (自传), it is often observed that major regrets tend to relate to things that were not done. In older age, it's likely that you will be uncomfortable with the idea that you didn't even try to do the things that you loved or attempt to obtain what you truly wanted. 4 But you don't ever need to feel this way! Make today the first day of your new journey towards avoiding regret.

Steps towards your dream are never backward steps. Another common worry is that if you follow your dreams, you'll be “taking steps back”. 5 However, what looks like backward steps in your old life can more productively and accurately be seen as forwarding steps in the brand-new life you're creating.

- You can avoid regret.
- It makes sense to move forward confidently.
- Luckily, the truth is that it's never too late to follow your dream.
- It often comes up when people are at the top of careers they hate.
- It is painful to feel like you haven't ever found your true purpose.
- For example, challenge yourself to write down the path to success in ten stages.
- You have enough life experience and knowledge to make changes to pursue your dream.

答案:1~5 CFAED

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Language points

学习任务目标

- 1. Understand the working responsibilities and significance of a clown doctor.
- 2. Master the language points by sentence analysis and describe the experiences and feelings by using them.
- 3. Think deeply about the work of a clown doctor, and form a positive and optimistic attitude towards life.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. She was in a good **mood** and she was looking forward to her new life. 心情
- 2. He performs riding horses in the **circus**. 马戏团
- 3. She has **curly** hair, black eyes and talks in a funny way. 卷曲的
- 4. She stepped on a loose stone and twisted her **ankle**. 脚踝
- 5. The boy pinned a **badge** on his jacket yesterday. 徽章
- 6. If you say that someone is a **clown**, you mean that they say funny things or do silly things to amuse people. 小丑

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>amusement</u> <i>n.</i> 娱乐, 消遣	<u>amuse</u> <i>v.</i> 使开心, 逗笑; (提供) 消遣; (使) 娱乐
	<u>amused</u> <i>adj.</i> 逗乐的; 觉得好笑的
	<u>amusing</u> <i>adj.</i> 好笑的, 有乐趣的
<u>entertain</u> <i>v.</i> 使快乐	<u>entertainment</u> <i>n.</i> 娱乐, 文娱节目; 招待, 款待
	<u>entertaining</u> <i>adj.</i> 娱乐的; 有趣的
<u>examine</u> <i>v.</i> 检查 (身体)	<u>examination</u> <i>n.</i> 检查, 审查; 考试
<u>advertisement</u> <i>n.</i> 广告	<u>advertise</u> <i>v.</i> 做广告, 登广告
	<u>advertiser</u> <i>n.</i> 登广告者, 广告商
<u>employer</u> <i>n.</i> 雇用者, 雇主	<u>employ</u> <i>v.</i> 雇用; 使用
	<u>employee</u> <i>n.</i> 雇员
	<u>employment</u> <i>n.</i> 职业; 就业

III. 补全短语

- 1. look through 浏览, 翻阅
- 2. apologise for 因……而道歉
- 3. in pain 痛苦地

- 4. be designed for 为……设计/准备
- 5. feel like (doing) 想要(做)……
- 6. do the trick 奏效, 达到预期效果
- 7. concentrate on 集中精力于; 全神贯注于
- 8. as for 至于, 关于
- 9. take off 脱掉; 起飞; 迅速流行
- 10. in need of 需要
- 11. on a weekly basis 每周; 按每周一次的标准
- 12. more often than not 通常; 多半
- 13. do a great job 干得很棒; 尽职尽责

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式: what 引导宾语从句
Anxious parents do what they can to comfort nervous and crying children.
焦虑的父母竭尽所能地安抚紧张哭闹的孩子。
- 2. 句型公式: 倍数表达法
... I spot a small girl whose ankle is twice its normal size.
……我注意到一个小女孩, 她的脚踝肿成了原来的两倍。
- 3. 句型公式: 强调句型
Although it's the doctors and nurses who will treat her injury, it's my job to make her feel better.
尽管为她治疗伤痛的是医生和护士, 但让她感觉好一些是我的工作。
- 4. 句型公式: 强调谓语动词
And my magic medicine does indeed seem to do the trick.
而我的灵药似乎真的奏效了。
- 5. 句型公式: it 作形式主语
After all, it really is true that "laughter is the best medicine".
毕竟, “笑是最佳灵药”, 这一句千真万确。

◦ 任务型课堂 ◦

1. amusement *n.* 娱乐, 消遣

[教材原文] an **amusement** park 一座游乐场

[归纳拓展]

(1) to one's amusement (= to the amusement of sb.)

让某人感到好笑/有趣的是

in/with amusement 愉悦地; 好笑地; 感兴趣地

(2) amuse *v.* 使开心, 逗笑; (提供) 消遣; (使) 娱乐

amuse sb./oneself by/with 以……来逗乐某人/自己

(3) amused *adj.* 逗乐的; 觉得好笑的

be amused at/by 以……为乐, 觉得……有趣

be amused to do sth. 做某事而感到好笑

keep sb. amused by/with 用……使某人开心

(4) amusing *adj.* 好笑的, 有乐趣的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① There are interesting games to keep the children amused (amuse).

② The facial expression of the performer is particularly amusing, thus making the audience amused. (amuse)

③ To the great amusement (amuse) of the other travellers, he told jokes all the way from Nanjing to Shanghai.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 一些学生可能会把假期的大部分时间都花在娱乐上, 从而荒废了他们的学业。

Some students might spend most of their holiday time on amusement, and thus leave their study neglected.

2. entertain *v.* 使快乐

[教材原文] Being a clown doctor means I can help people by **entertaining** them.

当小丑医生意味着我可以用娱乐人们的方式帮助他们。

[归纳拓展]

(1) entertain sb. to sth. 用某物招待某人

entertain sb. with sth. 用某物使某人快乐

(2) entertainment *n.* 娱乐, 文娱节目; 招待, 款待
to one's entertainment 使某人高兴的是

(3) entertaining *adj.* 娱乐的; 有趣的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The results suggest that most students would

rather study English in a more entertaining (entertain) way.

② The guide entertained the visitors with many interesting historical stories.

③ I entertained my friends to dinner yesterday evening.

④ I suggest you should keep the balance between your study and entertainment (entertain), such as doing sports, listening to music and so on.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之通知) 见多识广的导游将**为您讲述**关于纪念碑和公园的**最有趣的故事**。

Knowledgeable guides will entertain you with the most interesting stories about memorials and parks.

3. cheer up (使) 高兴起来, (使) 振作起来

[教材原文] On a typical day, we spend our time **cheering up** patients, their families, and more often than not, the hospital staff, too!

我们一天的工作内容通常是**为病人、病人家属, 甚至是医院的工作人员带来快乐!**

[归纳拓展]

(1) cheer *v.* 欢呼, 喝彩, 加油 *n.* 欢呼声, 喝彩声

cheer on 为……加油

(2) cheers *interj.* 干杯

(3) cheerful *adj.* 令人愉快的, 舒心的

(4) cheerfully *adv.* 高兴地, 欢快地

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① I do hope she can cheer up and accept the challenge of life bravely!

② The hummingbird (蜂鸟) hovered cheerfully (cheer) and lowered to stand on my shoulder.

③ I'm making a real effort to be cheerful (cheer) every day.

④ As the football match was in progress, we kept cheering him on.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之慰问信) **振作起来!** 当你对它微笑时, 它也会**对你微笑**。

Cheer up! When you smile in front of it, it will also smile at you.

4. employer *n.* 雇用者, 雇主

[教材原文] **Employer** The Healthy Humour Foundation
雇主 健康幽默基金会

[归纳拓展]

(1) employ v. 雇用; 使用

employ sb. as... 雇用某人当……

employ sb. to do sth. 雇用某人做某事

be employed in (doing) sth. 从事/忙于(做)某事

(2) employee n. 雇员

(3) employment n. 职业; 就业

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Jean was employed by the company as a computer programmer.② They usually employ casual labourers to pick (pick) the fruit.③ (2023·全国甲卷) Carson proves that a simple literary form that has been passed down through the ages can still be employed (employ) today to draw attention to important truths.④ This employee (employ) was dismissed for laziness.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之申请信) 如果我在这个暑假被雇用, 我会尽我最大的努力成为对雇主最有价值的人。

If I am employed this summer holiday, I'll try my best to be the most valuable to the employer.

5. It + be + adj. + that...

[教材原文] After all, **it really is true that** "laughter is the best medicine".

毕竟, “笑是最佳灵药”, 这一句千真万确。

[归纳拓展]

it 代替主语从句的常见句型:

(1) It + be + adj. (strange, important, necessary, possible, clear, obvious...) that...

(2) It + be + n. (a pity, a shame, an honour, a wonder...) that...

(3) It + be + 动词-ed 形式 (said, thought, believed, hoped, reported...) that...

(4) It happens/seems/appears/occurs to sb. that...

名师点拨

在 “It is/was strange/important/necessary/natural/essential/... that...” 及 “It is/was suggested/ordered/required/desired/... that...” 句型中, that 从句中的谓语动词要用 “should + 动词原形”, 其中 should 可以省略。

[即学即练]

(1) 句型转换

① People believe that he will surely complete the task on time.

→ It is believed that he will surely complete the task on time.

② He seemed to have heard of the story.

→ It seemed that he had heard of the story.

(2) 写作微练

① (2023·全国乙卷应用文写作之投稿) **重要的是**, 我们应该掌握一些基本的生活技能, 为我们未来的生活做好准备。It is important that we should master some basic living skills to prepare us for our future life.② (2024·新课标 I 卷应用文写作之活动分享) **对我来说, 被大自然包围是一件美妙的事情, 这不仅激发了我的创造力, 也让我从学校生活的忙碌和喧嚣中得到了急需的休息。**It was wonderful for me to be surrounded by nature, which not only sparked my creativity but also offered me a much-needed break from the usual hustle and bustle of school life.

多义词汇 专练

1. entertain: A. v. 使快乐

B. v. 招待, 款待

C. v. 心存, 怀有(想法、希望、感觉等)

① Barbecues are a favourite way of **entertaining** friends.B② Could you **entertain** the children for an hour?A③ Never **entertain** the idea that you could get paid for nothing.C

2. examine: A. v. 审查; 考查

B. v. 考, 测验(某人)

C. v. (仔细)检查

① These ideas will be **examined** in more detail in Chapter 10.A② The doctor **examined** her but found nothing wrong.C③ The students will be **examined** in all subjects at the end of the term.B

3. spot: A. n. 地点 B. n. 污点; 斑点

C. v. 认出

① All apples with soft **spots** were rejected.B② She **spotted** her friend in the crowd.C③ Let's meet at this **spot** tomorrow.A

Unit 1 课后素养评价(二)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 单句语法填空

- I had never seen Ann in such a good mood before.
- To my amusement (amuse), he should forget the birthday of his own.
- At the weekend, for entertainment (entertain) I could see friends, visit my grandparents, read books or play sport.
- If you have a complaint (complain) about your holiday, please inform us in writing.
- Absorbed in painting, John didn't notice evening approaching (approach).
- Since I'm here, I'd like to try a typical (type) dish of this country.
- Speaking on the phone requires concentration (concentrate) and takes a driver's attention from the road.
- It's not a good idea to miss meals and replace them with/by snacks.

II. 短语填空

do the trick; in pain; fall over; more often than not; concentrate on; work closely with; be known as; cheer up

- I wrote that song just to cheer myself up.
- I'm writing to call on parents to work closely with schools to ensure the best possible future for the children.
- Located in the northeast of Italy, Venice is known as "The Floating City".
- It's high time that you concentrated on your work at hand!
- When the little girl fell over, I gave her a toy to keep her from crying.
- If your friends are too busy to meet for lunch, a short phone call can do the trick.
- During foggy weather trains run behind schedule more often than not.
- He was crying out in pain on the ground when the ambulance arrived.

III. 完成句子

- You need to spend some time thinking about this exercise and what it means.
你需要花点时间来想想这个练习和它意味着什么。
- It was in this factory that my father used to work.
我的父亲过去就是在这家工厂工作的。
- There is five times as much coffee in this glass as

in that one.

这个玻璃杯里的咖啡是那个玻璃杯里的五倍。

- Take a deep breath and relax yourself instead of focusing on what brings you stress, and you will fall asleep soon.
深呼吸,放松自己,而不是专注于给你带来压力的事情,你很快就会睡着。
- It is important that you (should) arrive on time.
你准时到达很重要。

IV. 完形填空

The Secret of Happiness

An old man walked slowly into a restaurant with his cane (拐杖). His 1 overcoat and worn-out shoes made him stand out (突出) from the usual Saturday morning breakfast crowd.

A young waitress named Mary watched him move towards a 2 by the window. Mary ran over to him, and said, "Here, sir. Let me give you a hand with that 3."

Without 4 a word, he smiled and nodded a thank-you. She pulled the chair away from the table and helped him get seated 5. In a soft, clear 6 he said, "Thank you, Miss. And thank you for your 7."

"You're welcome, sir," she responded. "I'll be 8 in a moment, and if you need anything in the meantime, just wave at me!"

After he had finished a(n) 9 meal, Mary helped him up from his chair, 10 him his cane, and walked with him to the front door. Holding the door open for him, she said, "Come back and see us, sir!" The old man 11 around and smiled.

When Mary went to clean his table, she was 12 to find a business card, a one-hundred-dollar bill and a 13 which read, "Dear Mary, I respect you very much, and you respect yourself too. It shows the way you treat others. You have found the secret of 14! Your kind gestures will shine through those who meet you."

Actually the man she had served was the 15 of the restaurant. That was the first time that she or any of his employees had seen him.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了年轻的女服务员帮助了一位行动不便的老人就餐,后来发现这位老人就是店里的老板。

1. A. clean B. old
C. nice D. funny
B 根据题空所在句句中的“worn-out shoes made him stand out (突出)”可知,破旧的鞋让他看起来格外显眼,因此老人的衣服也应该是旧的。故选 B。
2. A. room B. waiter
C. table D. girl
C 根据常识可知,老人进入餐厅应该是走向桌子。故选 C。
3. A. chair B. dish
C. desk D. menu
A 老人行动不便, Mary 跑过去应该是帮助老人坐下来,因此这里是指帮他放好椅子。故选 A。
4. A. saying B. speaking
C. reading D. telling
A 老人没说一句话,微笑着点了点头以表感谢。without saying a word 为固定搭配,意为“一句话也没说”。故选 A。
5. A. sadly B. quietly
C. gradually D. safely
D 句意: Mary 把椅子挪开,帮助老人安全地坐上去。故选 D。
6. A. language B. sound
C. attitude D. voice
D voice 一般指人的声音,说话、唱歌的嗓音。此处是指老人说话的声音很轻柔、清晰。故选 D。
7. A. attention B. kindness
C. invitation D. cooperation
B 上文提到 Mary 帮助老人入座,此处老人应该是感谢她的善良。故选 B。

8. A. ready B. busy
C. back D. fine
C Mary 说如有什么需要,老人可以向她招手,她便过来。故选 C。
9. A. cheap B. expensive
C. terrible D. delicious
D 结合上下文,关于这顿饭是贵还是便宜无从得知,但老人享用后没有抱怨,因此应是美味的。故选 D。
10. A. showed B. handed
C. lent D. took
B Mary 扶老人站起来,递给他拐杖。故选 B。
11. A. turned B. walked
C. looked D. moved
A 句意:老人转过身来并对 Mary 笑了一下。故选 A。
12. A. excited B. worried
C. disappointed D. surprised
D 下文提到 Mary 并不知道桌上会有卡片和钞票,因此是感到惊讶。故选 D。
13. A. note B. tip
C. message D. title
A 根据下文内容可知,老人留了一张名片、一张钞票和一张便条。故选 A。
14. A. unkindness B. unselfishness
C. happiness D. helpfulness
C 根据文章标题——快乐的秘诀可知选 C。
15. A. customer B. owner
C. partner D. host
B 根据下文中的“his employees”可知,老人应该是这家餐厅的老板。故选 B。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Understand the similarities and differences between defining attributive clauses and non-defining attributive clauses, and use non-defining attributive clauses correctly in writing.
2. Pay attention to pragmatic functions, learn to tell humorous stories and make comments in English, and be able to use the expressions in real life.
3. Learn English idioms to express “laughter” and use them correctly in context.
4. Think about how to maintain a healthy and optimistic attitude in difficult situations and develop a positive attitude towards life.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体部分的汉语意思

1. You **deserve** a rest after all that hard work. 应得
2. He put on a **long face** when he lost his money. 愁眉苦脸
3. If I wear this ugly cap to the party, I'll be a **laughing stock**. 笑料, 笑柄

4. The man is willing to do anything to make his wife **crack a smile**. 露出笑容
5. A **practical joke** is a trick that is intended to embarrass someone or make them look ridiculous. 恶作剧
6. They **grinned** with pleasure when they heard our news. 露齿而笑; 咧着嘴笑

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
essential <i>adj.</i> 极其重要的, 必不可少的	essentially <i>adv.</i> 本质上, 根本上
impress <i>v.</i> 使钦佩, 使留下深刻印象	impression <i>n.</i> 印象; 感觉 impressive <i>adj.</i> 令人印象深刻的, 令人钦佩的
familiar <i>adj.</i> 熟悉的	familiarise <i>v.</i> 使熟悉 familiarity <i>n.</i> 熟悉, 通晓
summarise <i>v.</i> 总结	summary <i>n.</i> 总结, 摘要
chemical <i>n.</i> 化学物; 化学制品 <i>adj.</i> 化学的	chemist <i>n.</i> 化学家 chemistry <i>n.</i> 化学

III. 补全短语

1. take away 带走; 拿走

2. make sense 有意义; 讲得通

3. put up 建造, 搭建

4. be pleased with 对……满意

5. look up at 向上看

6. play tricks/jokes on 开……的玩笑; 捉弄

7. get it 明白; 理解

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: the way to do sth.

But there are ways to maintain a healthy mind even during times of difficulty.

但是, 即使在困难时期, 也有办法保持健康的心态。

2. 句型公式: what 引导宾语从句

Not quite sure what he means, Watson thinks Holmes is joking, which he finds annoying at this time of night.

华生不太明白福尔摩斯在说什么, 他觉得福尔摩斯在开玩笑, 这让他晚上的这个时候觉得很烦。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. deserve *v.* 应得, 应受到

[教材原文] We all **deserve** a second chance, I guess.

我认为, 我们都应该再有一次机会。

[归纳拓展]

(1) deserve to do sth. 应该/值得做某事(主语通常为人, 指所发生的事与主语相称)

... deserve doing = ... deserve to be done 值得被做, 应该做.....

deserve + *n.* (attention/consideration/admiration/praise/blame/punishment)

值得(关注/考虑/钦佩/表扬/责备/惩罚)

(2) deserved *adj.* 应得的, 理所当然的; 该受的

名师点拨 ■■■■

deserve 后接 doing, 用主动形式表示被动意义, 等于后接不定式的被动式。有相同用法的动词还有 need, want, require 等。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① He deserved to win (win) the medal in the Olympic Games because he had made enough preparations for the game.

② She is a responsible writer, and she deserves respecting/to be respected (respect).

(2) 一句多译

保持开放的心态, 因为每个人的想法都值得考虑。

① Keep an open mind, because everyone's ideas deserve consideration.

② Keep an open mind, because everyone's ideas deserve considering.

③ Keep an open mind, because everyone's ideas deserve to be considered.

(3) 写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信) 我向你们推荐一本值得一读的书。

I recommend a book to you that deserves reading/to be read.

2. “make + 宾语 + 宾语补足语”结构

[教材原文] This will activate chemicals in your brain to **make you feel happier**.

这会激活你大脑中的化学物质, 让你感觉更快乐。

[归纳拓展]

(1) make + *n.* / *pron.* + do sth. (该结构用于被动语态时, 被省略的不定式符号 to 要还原)

(2) make + *n.* / *pron.* + done (过去分词作宾语补足语, 表示被动关系)

(3) make + *n.* / *pron.* + *adj.* (形容词作宾语补足语, 表示宾语的状态)

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Children should be made to grasp (grasp) the importance of saving water.

② He couldn't make himself heard (hear) with the noise of the traffic.

③ She put on earphones to make her attention devoted (devote) to reading.

(2)写作微练

①(2023·浙江1月卷应用文写作之报道)为了让我们了解更多不同的植物,组织者带我们去了附近的一个植物园,那里有五颜六色、与众不同的植物。
To make us learn more about diverse plants, the organisers led us to a nearby botanic garden,

which presented us with colourful and distinctive plants.

②(2023·浙江1月卷应用文写作之报道)我挥舞着双手,冲向那只鸟,对它大喊大叫,想引起它的注意。
Hands waving, I dashed towards the bird, yelling to make myself noticed.

语法研习课

非限制性定语从句

语法感知

- ① I walk through the doors into the waiting area, **where** there's a familiar atmosphere of boredom and tension.
 - ② People sit uncomfortably on plastic chairs, looking through old magazines, **all of which** have been read hundreds of times previously.
 - ③ In the middle of this particular scene I spot a small girl **whose** ankle is twice its normal size.
 - ④ I speak with the on-duty nurse, **who** tells me that Lara's parents rushed her to the hospital...
 - ⑤ Scientific studies show that laughter produces chemicals to make people feel better, **which** means clown doctors can be helpful.
1. 句③和其他句子之间的区别是没有逗号,是限制性定语从句。
 2. 句①②④⑤的从句用逗号和先行词隔开了,是非限制性定语从句,是对先行词的补充说明,它们的关系不太密切,没有它,主句也能独立存在。

语法精讲

一、非限制性定语从句的作用

非限制性定语从句只是对主句内容或先行词的描述、解释或补充说明。没有它,也不会影响主句意思的完整性;非限制性定语从句和主句的关系不太密切,它与先行词之间常用逗号隔开。需要注意的是,that 和 why 不能引导非限制性定语从句。

二、关系代词引导的非限制性定语从句

1. **which** 指物,在定语从句中作主语或宾语。
China Daily attracts a worldwide readership, **which** shows that more and more people all over the world want to learn about China.
《中国日报》有着全球的读者群,这说明全球越来越多的人想要了解中国。
2. **who** 指人,在定语从句中作主语或宾语。
(2023·全国甲卷) Head Chef David Thompson, **who** received a Michelin star for his London-based Thai restaurant of the same name opened this branch in the metropolitan Hotel in 2010,

3. **whom** 指人,在定语从句中作宾语,一般不能省略。
Peter, **whom** you met in London, is going to Paris next week.
你在伦敦见过的那个彼得,下周将要去巴黎。
4. **whose** 既可指人,也可指物,在定语从句中作定语。
先行词指人时,“**whose + n.**”相当于“**the + n. + of whom**”;先行词指物时,“**whose + n.**”相当于“**the + n. + of which**”。
The books on the desk, **whose** covers are shiny, are prizes for us.
桌上那些封面闪亮的书是为我们准备的奖品。
5. **as** 既可指人,也可指物,在定语从句中可以作主语或宾语。
As we all know, smoking is harmful to people's health.
众所周知,吸烟对人们的健康有害。

名师点拨

as/which 引导非限制性定语从句时的区别:

项目	as	which
指代	引导的从句只能指代整个主句的内容	引导的从句既可指代整个主句的内容,又可指代主句的一部分
位置	可位于主句之前、之中或之后	引导的从句不能位于主句之前
意义	正如	这,那

She is always working hard, **as** everyone can see.
正如大家所看到的那样,她一直努力工作。
As everyone can see, she is honest.
她的诚实是大家有目共睹的。
The air quality in the city, **as** is shown in the report, has improved over the past two months.
正如报告所显示的那样,在过去的两个月里,这座城

市的空气质量已有所改善。

The book, **which** I bought yesterday, is very instructive.

这本书是我昨天买的,它很有教育意义。

Tom was always late for school, **which** made his teacher very angry.

汤姆上学总是迟到,这让他的老师很生气。

三、关系副词引导的非限制性定语从句

当先行词指时间或地点,且在定语从句中作状语时,用 when, where 引导非限制性定语从句, why 不引导非限制性定语从句,但可用 for which 代替。

We will put off the picnic in the park until next week, **when** the weather may be better.

我们将把在公园的野餐推迟到下周,届时天气可能会更好。

Opposite is St Paul's Cathedral, **where** you can hear some lovely music.

对面是圣保罗大教堂,在那里你可以听到一些美妙的音乐。

四、“介词+关系代词”引导的非限制性定语从句

在“介词+关系代词”中,关系代词用 whom 指人,用 which 指物。

Scientists have advanced many theories about why human beings cry tears, **none of which** has been proved.

就人类为什么哭出眼泪,科学家提出了许多理论,但没有一项理论得到过证明。

Many young people, **most of whom** were well-educated, headed for remote regions to chase their dreams.

很多年轻人去了偏远地区追求自己的梦想,他们中大部分都受过良好的教育。

五、限制性定语从句与非限制性定语从句的区别

1. 引导词不同。关系代词 that 和关系副词 why 均不可以引导非限制性定语从句。

2. 非限制性定语从句与主句关系不太密切,中间用逗号隔开,译成汉语时,通常译成两句话;而限制性定语从句常与主句一起译成一句话。

I have two foreign teachers, both of **whom** are from America.

我有两个外教,他们都来自美国。

The foreign teacher **who** comes from America teaches us literature.

美国来的那位外教教我们文学。

3. 非限制性定语从句的引导词无论在从句中作什么成分,均不可省略;而在限制性定语从句中,作宾语的关系代词可省略。

This is the man (**that/who/whom**) we are talking about.

这就是我们正谈论的那个人。

This is the man, **whom** we talked about just now. 这就是那个人,我们刚才谈论过的。

4. 在限制性定语从句中,指人时,作宾语的 whom 可以用 who 或 that 代替,但在非限制性定语从句中不可以代替。

He is the very person **whom/who/that** we referred to.

他正是我们提到的那个人。

语法冲关

I. 单句语法填空

- (2023·全国甲卷) Yet, the form of the fable still has values today, as Rachel Carson says in *A Fable for Tomorrow*.
- (2023·全国甲卷) She even played some recordings of their singing, which was fun.
- They came to China in the 1970s, when China was not open to the outside world.
- As is known to everybody, the moon travels around the earth once every month.
- English is a language shared by several diverse cultures, each of which uses it differently.
- She gave another piece of advice, which I think is of great help to the research work.
- She showed the visitors around the museum, whose construction had taken more than three years.
- Julie enjoyed reading when young. She grew up in a key middle school in her city, where her parents both taught Chinese.
- My aunt, whom you met in the supermarket, has gone to London on business.
- John invited about 40 people to his wedding, most of whom are family members.

II. 完成句子

- The boy, whose father is an engineer, studies very hard.
那个小男孩学习很努力,他的父亲是一位工程师。
- These apple trees, which I planted three years ago, have not borne any fruit.
这些苹果树是我三年前栽的,还没有结过果实。
- The textile mill has over 8,000 workers and staff, eighty percent of whom are women.
这家纺织厂有八千多名职工,女职工占百分之八十。
- Many children go to a day care centre, where they can learn and play games.
很多孩子上日间托儿所,在那里他们可以学习和做游戏。

Unit 1 课后素养评价 (三)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

put up; essential; take away; make sense; look up at; come true

1. He dreams of becoming a pilot and I believe his dream will come true next year.
2. They're putting up new hotels in order to boost (促进) tourism in the area.
3. It makes sense to keep such information on file for reference.
4. It's essential that our pilots are given the best possible training.
5. I was given some pills to take away the pain.
6. The rich man gets up on the lifeguard tower and all his friends look up at him.

II. 单句语法填空

1. He is working hard, which will make him pass the final exam.
2. When walking down the street, I came across David, whom I hadn't seen for years.
3. Charles Smith, who is my former teacher, retired last year.
4. As is known to everybody, China is a beautiful country with a long history.
5. Mr King, whose legs were badly hurt, was quickly taken to hospital.
6. He will put off the outing until next week, when he will be free.
7. He went to America in 1945, where and when he was noticed by a famous film director.
8. When I first came to England, I can't make myself understood (understand).
9. It is those who are willing to give rather than receive that deserve respecting/to be respected (respect).
10. His trip to India made a strong impression (impress) on him.

III. 阅读理解

Have you heard of Robert Bateman? He worked late into the evening of March 31, 1992. He studied his painting of three lions. Bateman decided to add some finishing touches. As he turned away from the canvas, he smiled, imagining the reaction of his staff the next morning. What an April Fools' joke! The next day, when his assistants came to the studio, they were shocked. What had the famous artist done to his masterpiece? The lions had bat ears!

World-famous wildlife artist Robert Bateman

lives in British Columbia, Canada. On working days, he might be found hiking in the mountains, sketching birds and animals. Bateman spends his days observing, studying, and painting wildlife.

As a boy, Bateman explored the woods and fields around his home in Toronto, Ontario. By the 1970s, he was well-known for his realistic paintings of the natural world.

When he's not in the woods or mountains, Bateman can be found at home in front of his easel (画架). He still gets a thrill out of seeing an eagle. Sometimes, Bateman does not even have to leave home to find an eagle. They come to him. Eagles rest on a dead tree that Bateman "planted" in rock in front of his house.

Bateman's most exciting place to find subjects to paint is in Africa. "Every day in Africa is thrilling," he says. "There are places in Africa that look like the Garden of Eden (伊甸园)."

As for the bat ears on the lions, Bateman painted them on with watercolour paints. After everyone had a good laugh, he simply washed the ears away.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了世界著名的野生动物艺术家 Robert Bateman 的一生,文中既对他专注于绘画的人生做了记录,又特地介绍了他给狮子画上蝙蝠耳朵的轶事,向读者展现了一位上进又不失幽默的画家形象。

1. Why did Bateman add bat ears to the lion?

- A. Because he was dissatisfied with his painting.
- B. Because he wanted to joke with his staff members.
- C. Because he would like to make his painting more attractive.
- D. Because he was eager to have a better study on his painting.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 "... he smiled, imagining the reaction of his staff the next morning. What an April Fools' joke!" 可知,他给狮子画上蝙蝠耳朵,是想要跟画室里的工作人员开玩笑。故选 B。

2. Why does Bateman hike on the mountain?

- A. To look for fun.
- B. To research and paint wildlife.
- C. To take care of wildlife.
- D. To search for new species of wildlife.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“he might be found hiking in the mountains, sketching birds and animals. Bateman spends his days observing, studying, and painting wildlife”可知,他去山上徒步的目的是研究野生动物,并为其作画。故选 B。

3. What can we learn about Bateman?

- A. He lived in the UK many years ago.
- B. He spends quite a lot of time in hunting eagles.
- C. His paintings do not look like real things in life.
- D. He is particularly fond of living in Africa.

D 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“Bateman’s most exciting place to find subjects to paint is in Africa.”可知,他尤其喜欢待在非洲。故选 D。

4. Which words can describe Bateman?

- A. Crazy and cruel.
- B. Naughty and unkind.
- C. Humorous and hard-working.
- D. Imaginative and impractical.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“... he smiled, imagining the reaction of his staff the next morning. What an April Fools’ joke!”可知,他给狮子画上蝙蝠耳朵,准备给画室工作人员送上“愚人节玩笑”,由此可看出他是个有点小幽默的画家;根据第二段中的“Bateman spends his days observing, studying, and painting wildlife.”可知,他是个努力上进的画家。故选 C。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Analyse the structure of the text and understand the importance of humour.
2. Analyse the cases of Mark Twain’s and Wang Zengqi’s humorous ways in their works and lives and learn their wisdom of tackling problems in life.
3. Appreciate the two masters’ open-minded outlook towards life and form a positive and healthy attitude towards life.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If you achieve **fame**, you become very well-known. 名声
2. His father used to be a **barber**. 理发师
3. A **tale** is a story, often involving magic or exciting events. 故事
4. He was asked to judge a **literary** competition. 文学的
5. Are you trying to **flatter** me? 讨好
6. A **brand** of a product is the version of it that is made by one particular manufacturer. 品牌
7. Every morning the man **shaves** himself with this electric razor (刮胡刀). 刮脸, 刮胡子
8. Most of us believe that Jack is a clever **fellow** indeed. 男人; 家伙

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>remark</u> <i>n.</i> 言论; 意见, 评论	<u>remarkable</u> <i>adj.</i> 非凡的, 卓越的
	<u>remarkably</u> <i>adv.</i> 不寻常地, 惊人地
<u>interaction</u> <i>n.</i> 交流	<u>interact</u> <i>v.</i> 互动, 相互影响

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>emotive</u> <i>adj.</i> 使情绪激动的	<u>emotion</u> <i>n.</i> 情绪, 感情
	<u>emotional</u> <i>adj.</i> 感情上的, 情绪激动的
<u>cruel</u> <i>adj.</i> 残忍的	<u>cruelty</u> <i>n.</i> 凶残, 残忍
<u>conclude</u> <i>v.</i> 作出……结论, 推断出; 结束, 终止	<u>conclusion</u> <i>n.</i> 结论; 结束
<u>gentle</u> <i>adj.</i> 和蔼友善的, 温和的, 温柔的	<u>gently</u> <i>adv.</i> 温和地, 温柔地
<u>composer</u> <i>n.</i> 作曲家	<u>compose</u> <i>v.</i> 作曲
	<u>composition</u> <i>n.</i> 作曲; 作品; 作文; 成分
<u>complicated</u> <i>adj.</i> 难处理的; 难懂的	<u>complicate</u> <i>v.</i> 使更复杂
	<u>complication</u> <i>n.</i> 使复杂化的问题(情况)

III. 补全短语

1. in particular 尤其, 特别
2. be full of 充满
3. throw light on 使……显得清楚; 阐明……; 照亮

4. brand of 某种类型的
5. start with 以……开始
6. cross out 删去; 注销

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: “be to do”结构

Like Twain, but on the other side of the world, the Chinese writer Wang Zengqi was soon to become famous for his own unique brand of humour.

但在世界的另一边, 和马克·吐温一样, 中国作家汪曾祺很快因为他独特的幽默风格而出名。

2. 句型公式: not only... but also...

While these same jokes might not be as funny to us now as they were then, their authors understood that humour could not only entertain but also throw new light on sensitive or emotive issues.

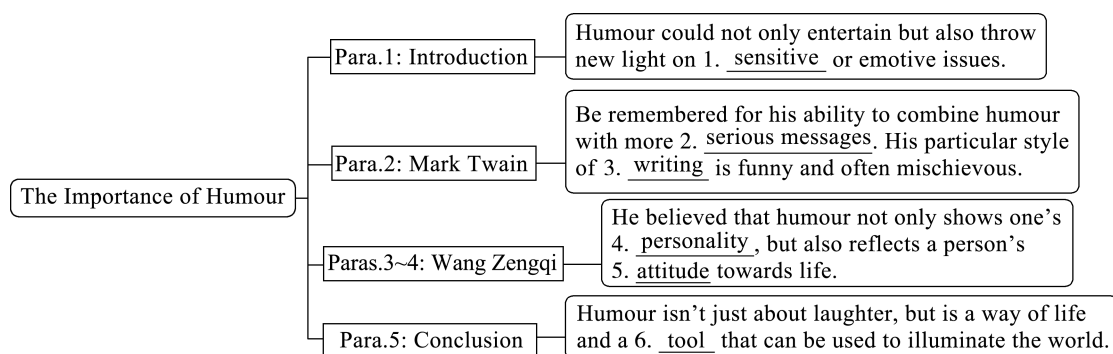
虽然这些相同的笑话现在对我们而言可能不如当时那么有趣, 但是它们的作者明白, 幽默不仅是一种娱乐的方式, 而且能使人对敏感问题或有争议的问题产生新的认识。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What can we know about Mark Twain from the text?
 - A. He thinks highly of humour.
 - B. He thinks everyone can become a writer.
 - C. He is the most humorous writer in the world.
 - D. He doesn't think humour is important in life.
2. What kind of person was Wang Zengqi from the introduction?
 - A. Clever and kind.
 - B. Witty and brave.
 - C. Humorous and wise.
 - D. Considerate and generous.
3. Which of the following is TRUE according to the text?
 - A. Humour is just about laughter.
 - B. Humour plays an important role in our life.
 - C. There wasn't any humour until modern times.
 - D. Humour is the most important part of human

behaviour.

4. What's the text mainly about?

- A. The life of Mark Twain.
- B. The importance of humour.
- C. Why humour makes sense in our life.
- D. Wang Zengqi's contributions to Chinese literature.

答案: 1~4 ACBB

○ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Closer to modern times, someone who is remembered for his ability to combine humour with more serious messages is American writer Mark Twain.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。who 引导定语从句, 修饰先行词 someone; to combine humour with more serious messages 是不定式短语作定语, 修饰 ability。

[尝试翻译] 到了近现代, 美国作家马克·吐温以擅长用幽默的方式表达严肃的内容而著称。

2. When Twain replied that he didn't, the barber told him that if he wanted to go to the event he would have to stand, as there were no seats left in the theatre.

[句子分析] 本句是一个复杂的主从复合句。When 引导时间状语从句, 该从句中 that 引导宾语从句; 主句中 that 也引导宾语从句, 该从句中 if 引导条件状语从句, as 引导原因状语从句。

[尝试翻译] 当马克·吐温说没有时, 理发师告诉他, 如果他想去看演讲就只能站着了, 因为剧院里没有座位了。

3. Both Twain and Wang understood that humour isn't just about laughter, but is a way of life and a tool that can be used to illuminate the world.

[句子分析] 第一个 that 引导宾语从句, not just..., but... 意为“不仅……, 而且……”。

[尝试翻译] 幽默不是只能带来笑声, 它还是一种生活方式, 是一种可以用来阐明世界的工具, 马克·吐温和汪曾祺都明白这一点。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following question

How can a sense of humour help you in your daily life? Give an example.

It can deal with our problems in a simple and easy way. For example, when my parents quarrel, I can deal with their problem by entertaining them with a funny story.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. remark *n.* 言论; 意见, 评论 *v.* 谈论, 评论

[教材原文] But he is equally well known for his witty **remarks** in his everyday interactions with people.

但是他同样因为在和人们日常交往中说话幽默而闻名。

[归纳拓展]

(1) make a remark/remarks on/about...

对……作出评论

(2) remark on/upon 对……作出评论

remark that... 说……, 评论说……

(3) remarkable *adj.* 非凡的, 不寻常的, 值得注意的

be remarkable for 以……著称/引人注目

(4) remarkably *adv.* 不寻常地, 突出地

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Ellen later regretted making remarks on/about his private affairs.

② People often remark on/upon how alike John and Malcolm look.

③ However, we all witness that preschool children are remarkably (remarkable) bad at hiding.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之保护动物) 合作帮助这只潜鸟无疑是我们做过的最了不起的事情。

Cooperating to help this loon is undoubtedly the most

remarkable thing we have ever done.

2. conclude *v.* 作出……结论, 推断出; 结束, 终止

[教材原文] In his essay “On Humour”, Wang used fewer than 600 characters to introduce several humorous examples of famous people, **concluding** that...

在他的散文《谈幽默》中, 汪曾祺用不到 600 字的篇幅, 通过列举几位名人的幽默趣事, 得出结论……

[归纳拓展]

(1) conclude from... 从……中得出结论
conclude... with... 以……结束……

(2) conclusion *n.* 结论; 结束

come to/arrive at/draw/reach a conclusion 得出结论

in conclusion (= to conclude) 最后, 总之

bring... to a conclusion 结束……

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① He concluded his speech with a famous saying, “Where there is a will, there is a way.”

② In conclusion, I believe that you can benefit a lot from the Chinese classical music concert.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之发言稿) 我从自己的经历中得出结论: “没有付出就没有收获。”

I concluded from my own experience, “No pains, no gains.”

②(应用文写作之建议信)综上所述,散步是一种廉价、安全、有趣而又随时可以开展的运动方式。

In conclusion, walking is a cheap, safe, enjoyable, and readily available form of exercise.

3. not only... but also... 不但……而且……

[教材原文] While these same jokes might not be as funny to us now as they were then, their authors understood that humour could **not only** entertain **but also** throw new light on sensitive or emotive issues.

虽然这些相同的笑话现在对我们而言可能不如当时那么有趣,但是它们的作者明白,幽默不仅是一种娱乐的方式,而且能使人对敏感问题或有争议的问题产生新的认识。

[句式分析] 本句是主从复合句,句中 While 引导让步状语从句,意为“虽然,尽管”;主句中并列连词 not only... but also... 连接两个并列谓语。

[归纳拓展]

(1) not only... but also... 中的 also 可与 but 分开或省略。

(2) 若连接两个句子,且 not only 置于句首时,not only 后面的句子要用部分倒装,但 but also 后的句子仍用正常语序。

(3) 若连接两个主语,谓语动词的单复数形式遵循“就近一致”原则。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① I like not only apples but also bananas.

② Not only you but also she has (have) to attend the ceremony today.

③ Not only does the speaking course intend to help you gain a large vocabulary, but it also helps you have a command of daily topics in a short time.

(2) 写作微练

(2023·全国乙卷应用文写作之投稿)学习苏绣是有意义的,因为它不仅给我提供了一种新的实用技能,而且让我对中国传统工艺有了很好的了解。

Learning Suzhou embroidery was meaningful as not only did it offer me a new practical skill but also it gave me a good insight into traditional Chinese crafts.

多义词汇 专练

- The exhibition contains nothing that is worthy of **remark**. C
A. *n.* 评论 B. *v.* 说起
C. *n.* 引人注目;显耀
- They were **branded** as liars and cheaters. A
A. *v.* 给……冠以恶名 B. *v.* 打烙印
C. *v.* 给(产品)设计品牌
- She has a good reputation among her **fellows**. B
A. *n.* 同类
B. *n.* 同辈;同事
C. *n.* (学院的)董事

Unit 1 课后素养评价(四)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

- He was in low spirits, so he hadn't shaved (刮脸) for a few days.
- Her father advised her to keep her distance from that fellow (家伙).
- He was such a cruel (残忍的) man that he showed no mercy to others.
- I knew very well that the problem was more complicated (难处理的) than he supposed.

- He deserves his status as one of the most popular composers (作曲家) in Western music history.

II. 单句语法填空

- While crossing (cross) the road, you must be careful.
- If you feel too out of shape, begin your exercise programme gently (gentle) and gradually.
- Larry had concluded (conclude) that he had no choice but to accept Paul's words as the truth.
- There is an interaction (interact) between the lecturer and listeners after the lecture.

III. 短语填空

brand of; throw light on; in particular; fall behind; be regarded as

1. To be promoted or to fall behind is not a matter of salary but even more a matter of self-respect.
2. She has her very own brand of humour.
3. I think a lot of people, women in particular, steer clear of these sensitive issues.
4. Only by reporting in this way can a news medium be regarded as responsible to society.
5. I believe the teacher's explanation will throw light on this puzzling problem.

IV. 补全句子

1. 使她高兴的是她赢了一场如此重要的比赛。(主语从句)

What made her happy was that she won such an important match.

2. 我们都知道,海洋不仅为我们提供足够的食物,还保持着自然界的平衡。(not only... but also...)

As we all know, not only does the ocean offer us sufficient food, but also it maintains the balance of nature.

3. 通过我多年的学校生活,我明白了如果我们要想改变生活,从小事做起是至关重要的。(be to do)

Through my years of school life, I've learned that if we are to make a difference in life, it's vital that we should begin with small things.

4. 当轮到 he 发表演讲时,他走到了麦克风前,紧张而尴尬。(形容词作状语)

When it was his turn to deliver his speech, he walked towards the microphone, nervous and embarrassed.

5. 虽然这些图标的形状不同,但是它们的大小和颜色很相似。(while)

While these icons have different shapes, they are of similar size and colour.

V. 语法填空

Who is smarter? A human being or artificial intelligence (AI)? The question **1. swept** (sweep) across the world a few years ago when AlphaGo defeated the best player in the world. So, what comes next?

Some people are worried, saying that the rapid development of artificial intelligence could mean the end **2. of** the human race. So are we really about to live

in the world **3. shown** (show) in the movies?

"Not quite," answered John Markoff of a famous magazine, **4. who** is optimistic about the future. "We think that, for the human being, things like sight and balance, are natural **5. and** ordinary in our life. Also, we humans are better at making **6. adjustments** (adjust) to the surroundings. We have a long way to go before AI can **7. truly** (true) begin to be similar to the human brain, even though the technology can be great."

"Our fate (命运) is in our own **8. hands** (hand)," he added. "Since technology depends on the value of **9. its** (it) creators, we can use technology **10. to improve** (improve) the world."

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华,你的笔友 Nick 非常敬仰袁隆平院士,写信想请你介绍袁隆平。请你根据所提给信息给 Nick 回信。

袁隆平,中国农业科学家,“杂交水稻之父”。

出生地:北京

出生日期:1930年9月7日

毕业院校:1953年毕业于西南农学院(今西南大学, Southwest University)

外貌:有着像千百万中国农民一样瘦小但强壮的身体

兴趣:喜欢拉小提琴、游泳和阅读

成就:1973年,克服困难栽培出第一株杂交水稻

影响:他实现目标的坚持精神深深影响人们

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯;

3. 信的开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇:农业的 agricultural; 杂交水稻 hybrid rice

Dear Nick,

I am writing to introduce Yuan Longping, a famous Chinese agricultural scientist, to you.

Acknowledged as the "Father of Hybrid Rice", Yuan Longping, who was born in Beijing on September 7, 1930, had a slim but strong body like millions of Chinese farmers. He graduated from Southwest University in 1953. In 1973, he overcame

a number of difficulties and developed the first hybrid rice. In his spare time, he was fond of playing the violin, swimming and reading.

Although he had passed away, his spirit of insisting on achieving objectives had a deep effect on people.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

My parents and I had been planning my brother's birthday party since the beginning of March. Johnny would be six years old in two days. My mum was going to bake her special chocolate cake with white icing. As I watched her, I wondered what I could do to make my brother's birthday special.

I knew my parents had already bought a present for me to give to Johnny, but I wanted to buy him something I had chosen myself and with the money I had saved. After giving it some thought, I wanted to buy him the paint-by-number kit (数字涂色小套装) I had seen at the store around the corner.

I decided to empty my coin jar and see how much money I had saved. However, I was disappointed to find there was much less than I had imagined. "Oh, no, I only have about three dollars," I muttered to myself. The set cost more than I had saved.

Suddenly a "great" idea occurred to me. I slid into my parents' bedroom where my dad kept loose change on top of the dresser. I stood on my tiptoes and saw some dimes, nickels, and a few quarters. I carefully counted out what I needed to make up the difference. I was sure Dad wouldn't mind just this once, I thought.

However, I was soon overcome by guilt. Even though there was no one else in the bedroom, I felt like I was being watched. Mum was always telling us

about the importance of honesty. Maybe my plan wasn't such a great idea after all, I thought. I jingled the change around in my pocket while wondering what to do.

I grabbed my jacket from the closet and headed towards the door. "Where are you going, honey?" Mum asked. "Oh, just up to the corner store," I replied. "Well, don't stay out too long, and Daddy will be home soon." "Okay, Mum." I ran out of our house.

Once I got to the store, I took the paint-by-number kit from the shelf.

"Can I help you, young lady?" the salesclerk asked.

"No. I'm just looking, thank you," I said.

"That's a really nice paint kit. We sell a lot of them and, as you can see, that's the last one," she said.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

I nodded my head in agreement with my mind racing. But finally, I decided to place the paint-by-number kit back on the shelf and headed home. Luckily, once I got home, Mum was busy talking on the phone and Dad wasn't back home yet, so I was able to slip past the kitchen without being noticed. I went to my parents' room to return the coins I had taken. I arranged them into a neat stack—just like they were before—and sighed with relief, knowing I had done the right thing.

I would just have to wait until I saved the extra money I needed. The salesclerk had even agreed that she would hold the paint set behind the counter for me until I had enough money to pay for it. I figured I could earn it by doing odd jobs around the house. Then I wasn't able to buy the paint kit until two weeks later, but it seemed extra special when I was finally able to lay my money on the counter. I smiled as I raced home knowing the paint kit would be the perfect present for Johnny.

迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作——喜剧演员简介

写作指导

本单元的写作任务是介绍一位喜剧演员,属于写人的记叙文。写作时可以从人物简介、代表作品、人物形象、表演风格和人物评价几个方面来写,特别要交代清楚该喜剧演员受人们欢迎的原因,即他/她的舞台表演风格和方式。

典题示例

请根据下表提供的信息,写一篇 80 词左右的英语短文,介绍罗温·艾金森(憨豆先生)。

人物	罗温·艾金森(Rowan Atkinson),英国著名的喜剧演员,1955年1月6日出生于英格兰,毕业于牛津大学。
荧幕形象	他所扮演的憨豆先生风靡世界;他的荧幕形象有点憨,但是他通过这个角色告诉人们对生活要乐观。
表演方式	通过呈现给观众丰富的肢体动作和变化多端的表情,英国式的幽默被表现得淋漓尽致。
评价	出色的演技为他赢得了许多奖项,他被誉为继查理·卓别林(Charlie Chaplin)之后的又一位喜剧大师。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	一般过去时和一般现在时
人称	第三人称
要点	1. 人物简介和表演风格 2. 人物评价

Step 2: 要点补全

① Rowan Atkinson is a distinguished British comedian (一位著名的英国喜剧演员)。

② He is also known as (也作为……而出名) Mr Bean.

③ His on-screen persona is a bit silly, but he makes use of (利用) it to tell people to be optimistic about life (对生活乐观)。

④ Through a variety of rich body movements (各种各样的丰富的肢体动作) and varied expressions presented to the audience, the English humour can be expressed incisively and vividly (被表达得淋漓尽致)。

⑤ His excellent acting has won him many awards (为他赢得了很多奖项)。

⑥ He was honoured as (被誉为) another master of comedy after Charlie Chaplin.

Step 3: 句式升级

① 用非谓语动词合并 Step 2 中的①②句。

Rowan Atkinson, also known as Mr Bean, is a distinguished British comedian.

② 用 and 合并 Step 2 中的⑤⑥句。

His excellent acting has won him many awards and he was honoured as another master of comedy after Charlie Chaplin.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Rowan Atkinson, also known as Mr Bean, is a distinguished British comedian. He was born in England on January 6, 1955 and graduated from the University of Oxford. His on-screen persona is a bit silly, but he makes use of it to tell people to be optimistic about life. Through a variety of rich body movements and varied expressions presented to the audience, the English humour can be expressed incisively and vividly.

His excellent acting has won him many awards and he was honoured as another master of comedy after Charlie Chaplin.

学以致用

假定你是李华,你的英国笔友 Eric 正在学习中国相声,他想请你为他介绍一位相声演员。请根据提示信息给他回信,向他介绍著名的相声演员马三立。

生卒年月	1914. 9. 25—2003. 2. 11
经历及贡献	1. 小时候因家境贫困,辍学学习相声; 2. 1930 年开始登台演出; 3. 一生创作了很多优秀的相声作品。
社会评价	独特的艺术风格推动了相声艺术的发展, 是当代的幽默大师。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;
2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

参考词汇:相声 crosstalk

Dear Eric,

I'm glad to hear that you're interested in Chinese crosstalk and I'm writing to introduce Ma Sanli, one of the most famous Chinese performing artists of crosstalk.

Ma Sanli was born on September 25, 1914 and died on February 11, 2003. At an early age, he dropped out of school to learn crosstalk because of the poverty of his family. It was in 1930 that he started to perform on stage. During his whole life, he created a large number of excellent works, many of which are still popular among people now. His unique style has a positive effect on the development of Chinese crosstalk and he is considered as a master of humour. You can appreciate his works on the Chinese artist website.

Wish you great progress in your learning of Chinese crosstalk.

Yours,
Li Hua

 Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

I looked around at the other patients waiting to see the doctor. Maybe they all had more romantic plans for the evening on this special day, but for now the group seemed anti-social. Three people had their heads down, staring at cellphones. Another was absorbed in a magazine. The receptionist tapped at her computer. Everyone was in their own little world.

But I couldn't judge them for it. I would probably be buried in my cellphone too, if I hadn't forgotten to charge it before I left home. It would have been nice to strike up a conversation to pass the time on this day, a day of love and friendship. Instead I sat patiently in my plastic chair as a couple of new people took distant seats.

"Roberta? The doctor's ready for you," the nurse called. At least I'll have some kind of human connection, I thought.

My checkup went well. I breezed out of the office to my little Honda in a space right out front. I got in and turned the key. Nothing. Oh, no. Not again. I'd sent the car to the garage several times already for this very problem and thought it had finally been fixed.

I reached for my cellphone to call AAA—then remembered. It was dead, like my car. I would have to use the phone inside. A few people glanced up when I came back into the waiting room, then quickly went back to what they were doing. I went straight to the reception desk, but the receptionist was not there. So I turned back to the people in the waiting room.

"I wouldn't normally do this," I said to the group, hoping that I sounded apologetic. Several people turned towards me to listen. "But my car won't start..."

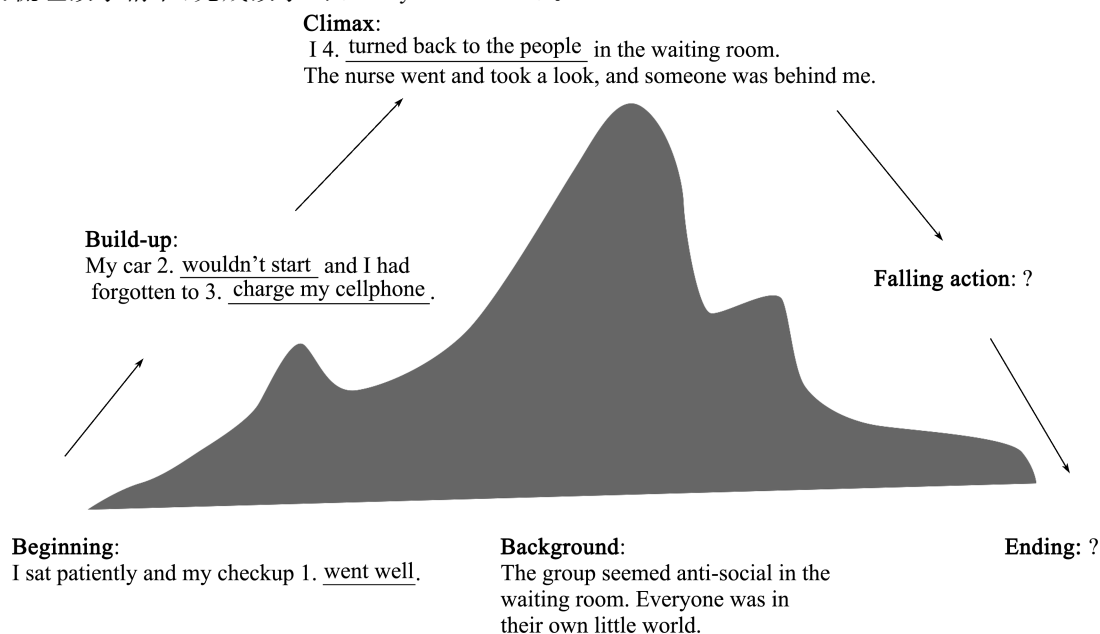
The nurse popped her head into the room. "You in trouble, Roberta?" she said. "I'll go and take a look." I followed the nurse outside. As I passed through the door. I felt someone was behind me.

任务一:阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The article mainly talks about that the author saw the doctor on a special day, and noticed most people were staring at their cellphones without caring about him. After checkup, the author found that his car was wrong and his cellphone was dead; and he had to turn to people in the waiting room for help.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山 (Story Mountain)。



任务三：回答下面的问题，并根据段落开头提示语，构思、完善故事发展的情节。

Paragraph 1: I turned to see all the other patients following me. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. How did I feel to see the scene? <u>A bit puzzled.</u> 2. Why did they follow me and what did they do? <u>They followed me to help me. One checked the engine, another fetched the tool from his car and began to twist it. The others just volunteered to take his turn.</u> 3. What did I do at last? <u>I expressed my gratitude and tried my car.</u>
Paragraph 2: I said a quick prayer and turned the key. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. What happened to the car? <u>The car came back to life, its engine working well.</u> 2. What was my feeling? <u>No beautiful words could describe my earnest gratitude to the group seeming anti-social minutes before.</u> 3. What did I do before heading for home? <u>Waving goodbye to those lovely and helpful people, I headed for home with great delight and satisfaction.</u> 4. What was my insight? <u>Indeed, it wasn't an ordinary day, but a day full of love and friendship, which would inspire me to provide necessary help to those in need.</u>

任务四：根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

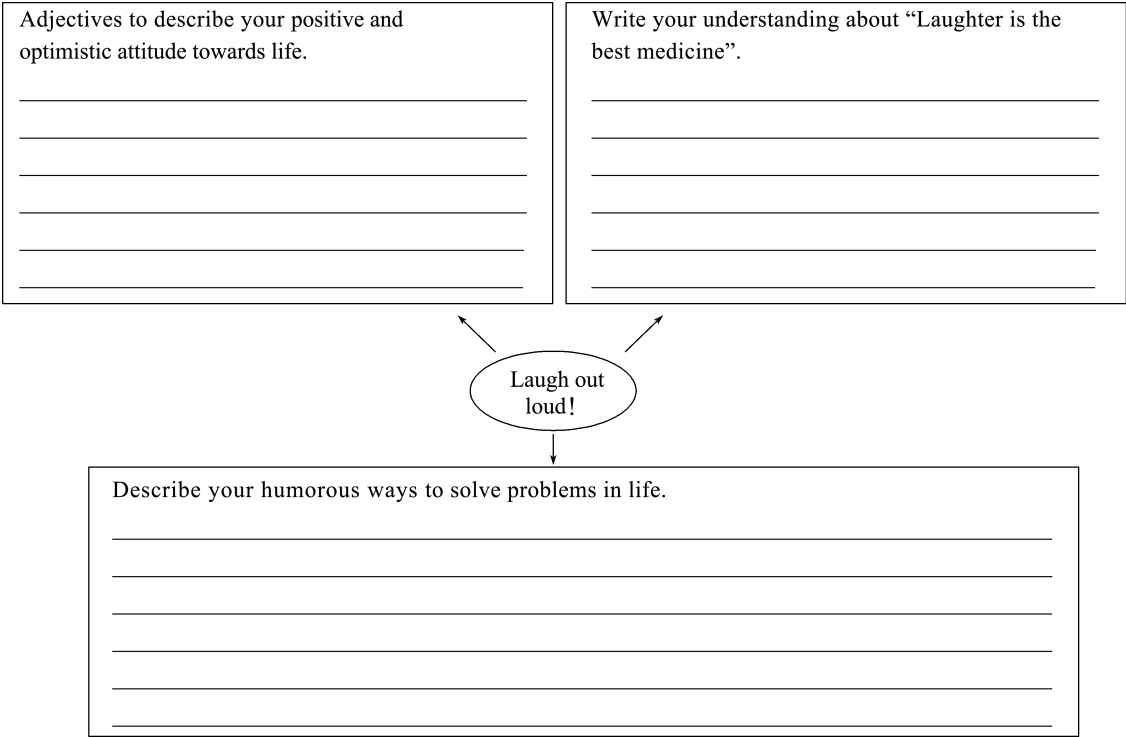
I turned to see all the other patients following me. A bit puzzled, I went to my car and slid into the driver's seat. One of them called, "Pop your hood!" So I pressed the button. Several others bent forward, most probably leaning in to check the engine. "The screw is loose," one assured me. "Trust me. I used to be a mechanic." Having fetched the tool from his car, he began to twist it. It was not long before he straightened up to rest, rubbing his back. Unexpectedly, the other patients just volunteered to take his turn despite their own health condition. When the "mechanic" gave a thumbs-up, everyone called out together, "Try it now!"

I said a quick prayer and turned the key. The engine turned over immediately. A cheer went up. Several hands shut the hood. "Don't make any stops on the way home," the "mechanic" said. "Keep the car running till the battery gets a good charge." I backed my car out of the space, then paused to wave at the crowd of people who'd saved the day. My Honda never stalled again. It turns out that my waiting room team had done a better job than my garage ever did. I guess that's just what happens when people come together.

★ ★ ★
重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容，完成思维导图。



答案：略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章，完成后面的题目。

In the early years of televised news, Americans turned to the serious faces of newsmen as trusted sources for news of the important events in America and around the world, broadcast with controlled voices. The rise of comedy-news programmes raised concerns over the combination of entertainment and news. But could this combination actually help inform the public?

A study from the Annenberg School for Communication at the University of Pennsylvania and the School of Communication at Ohio State University found that, when compared to non-humorous news clips (片段), viewers are not only more likely to share humorously presented news but are also more likely to remember the content from these clips.

“It is really important for young people to engage with news to be informed about public issues,” says senior author Emily Falk, Professor of Communication, Psychology, and Marketing at Annenberg. “We wanted to test whether humour might make news more socially related, and therefore encourage young people to remember it and share it.”

The researchers invited young adults (18—34 years old) to watch a variety of news clips, which they designed to vary, so that some ended with jokes and others did not. In addition to collecting data on participants’ brain activity using fMRI technology, the researchers did a memory test to find out how much information participants remembered after watching the clips. The researchers also asked participants to answer questions about how likely they would be to share the news clips with others.

Participants were more likely to remember information when it was presented in a humorous rather than

non-humorous way and were more willing to share the information online.

“Our findings show that humour stimulates activity in brain regions, improves memory for news facts, and increases the desire to share information with others,” says lead author Coronel, Assistant Professor of Communication at OSU. “This is very significant because entertainment-based media has become an important source of news, especially for young adults.”

1. What can we learn about early American viewers according to the first paragraph?

- A. They showed great interest in entertainment news.
- B. They paid more attention to international news.
- C. They enjoyed comedy programmes very much.
- D. They preferred serious newsmen.

2. What did the study find?

- A. Humour makes news more reliable and professional.
- B. Humour helps keep young adults informed about news.
- C. Young adults are more likely to share news with each other.
- D. Young adults are used to watching news clips on the Internet.

3. What is Paragraph 4 mainly about?

- A. How the study was carried out.
- B. Why the study was different.
- C. The importance of the study.
- D. The results of the study.

4. What does Coronel say about the study?

- A. It has encouraged more young adults to major in journalism.
- B. It has offered new ways to receive news for young adults.
- C. It supports the importance of light-hearted news.
- D. It will raise concerns over the news industry.

答案: 1~4 DBAC

单元评估(一)

I. 阅读理解

A

Fantastic Fall Festivals You Won't Want to Miss **Seymour Apple Festival**

Admission to the Seymour Apple Festival is free and so is the entertainment! More than 15,000 people from all over the region come out to take part in the activities, ranging from drawings, vendor booths, food, apple contests, bike-decorating contests, and more.

Marionville Apple Festival

The popular Marionville Apple Festival is home to countless activities and events. The carnival, pony rides, and games will keep the kids busy, while adults will enjoy watching the pie-eating contest and browsing dozens of craft vendor booths.

Humansville Fall Festival

The Humansville Fall Festival may be hosted by a small town, but that doesn't mean it's lacking big fun. Perfect for all ages, this fall festival is celebrating its 70th year and will provide three full days of fun. This year's festival will feature live music from fantastic local musicians, which will definitely make it different from the ones in other years. You'll also find fun carnival rides, talented artisans selling their goods and an amazing parade to wrap up the event on Saturday.

Southside Fall Festival

The Southside Fall Festival is perfect for family celebrations, with an alcohol-free environment and free admission. Enjoy a colourful parade and float contest, delicious food vendors, live music,

karaoke, and more.

Fall Into Arts Festival

Make sure you bring the kids along for this festival that celebrates all things creative. The Fall Into Arts Festival features a host of kid-friendly activities like a lego build, sand art, bubble stations, chalk the sidewalk, a jump house, and more. Parents will have plenty to do as well, with an excellent variety of artists, festival food, a mini film festival, and much more.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了五个秋季的节日。

1. Which festivals are free of charge?

- A. Southside Fall Festival and Fall Into Arts Festival.
- B. Seymour Apple Festival and Southside Fall Festival.
- C. Humansville Fall Festival and Fall Into Arts Festival.
- D. Seymour Apple Festival and Marionville Apple Festival.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Seymour Apple Festival** 部分中的第一句“Admission to the Seymour Apple Festival is free and so is the entertainment!”可知,西摩苹果节的门票是免费的,娱乐也是免费的!另外,根据 **Southside Fall Festival** 部分中的第一句“The Southside Fall Festival is perfect for family celebrations, with an alcohol-free environment and free admission.”可知,此节日也是免费入场。故选 B。

2. What makes Humansville Fall Festival special this year?

- A. Fun activities on Saturday.
- B. The duration of the festival.
- C. The area of the hosting town.
- D. Musicians' live performance.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Humansville Fall Festival** 部分中的第三句“This year's festival will feature live music from fantastic local musicians, which will definitely make it different from the ones in other years.”可知,今年的音乐节将以当地优秀音乐家的现场表演为特色,使它有别于往年。故选 D。

3. By whom is Fall Into Arts Festival is specially welcomed?

- A. Movie lovers.

B. Modern artists.

C. Visitors of all ages.

D. Families with kids.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Fall Into Arts Festival** 部分中的内容可知,秋季艺术节既有许多孩子喜爱的活动,也有为父母准备的活动,故特别受有孩子的家庭欢迎。故选 D。

B

What's the difference between shame and guilt? These are emotions that we often mix up, but it turns out they're quite different. When people feel shame, they feel bad about themselves: “I'm a bad person for having done this.” When people feel guilty, they feel bad not about themselves, but about a specific behaviour: “I did a bad thing.” And it's a subtle distinction, but it turns out that it leads to very different motivations.

When people feel shame about “Who I am because I did a bad thing, I'm a horrible person”, there's a sense of shrinking and being small, a sense of worthlessness and powerlessness. And when people feel shame, they want to hide. They want to sink into the floor and disappear. They minimise. They often blame other people. But what they typically don't do is try to make things better.

When people feel guilty about a specific behaviour—“I feel bad that I did that”—they're focused on the behaviour and the effects on other people, and that seems to push people in a much more constructive direction. People who feel guilty about a behaviour without feeling shame about themselves are more likely to apologise, in some way, and try to repair the harm that was done.

I think that just knowing the difference between the two is not enough. If you can identify when you feel shame and sort of do some double-checking, you know, “Is it really fair for me to feel like a bad person because I lost my temper with my kids today? Does that mean I'm a horrible parent? Or am I generally a good parent, but this was a bad day, and I did a bad thing and let me address that, reconnect with my child and think about ways to avoid that going forward,” instead of falling into shame, shame, shame. I think shame is such a selfish emotion. It's all about me. It's not about the person I hurt. It's, “Me, me, me, me, I'm a

horrible person,” which takes the focus off of the person you’ve harmed.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。作者结合自己的经历讨论了羞愧和内疚这两种情绪的区别。

4. What are shame and guilt thought of?

- A. They are easy to figure out.
- B. They lead to different behaviour.
- C. They are called bad emotions.
- D. They are seen confusing things.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“And it’s a subtle distinction, but it turns out that it leads to very different motivations.”并结合第二、三段对感到羞愧和内疚的人的行为对比可知,羞愧和内疚导致了不同的行为。故选 B。

5. What will people do when they feel shame?

- A. They dare to face anything.
- B. They refuse to make things better.
- C. They feel bad about specific behaviour.
- D. They tend to blame themselves.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“And when people feel shame, they want to hide. They want to sink into the floor and disappear. They minimise. They often blame other people. But what they typically don’t do is try to make things better.”可知,当人们感到羞愧时,他们拒绝让事情变得更好。故选 B。

6. What does the third paragraph mainly talk about?

- A. Results of feeling guilty.
- B. Ways of feeling guilty.
- C. Causes of feeling guilty.
- D. Reflections of feeling guilty.

A 段落大意题。根据第三段的内容,特别是“When people feel guilty about a specific behaviour—‘I feel bad that I did that’—they’re focused on the behaviour and the effects on other people, and that seems to push people in a much more constructive direction.”可知,该段主要讲的是感到内疚的结果。故选 A。

7. What is the author’s attitude to shame?

- A. Favourable.
- B. Tolerant.
- C. Opposed.
- D. Unclear.

C 观点态度题。根据最后一段中的“I think shame is such a selfish emotion. It’s all about me. It’s not about the person I hurt.”可知,作者对羞愧持反对态度。故选 C。

C

Wax (蜡) paper can’t be recycled with other paper items because the wax coating interferes with the recycling process. However, there are still plenty of different options to dispose of your wax paper in an environmentally friendly way.

Wax paper is parchment paper that’s been coated with a thin layer of wax on each side. This makes it resistant to wetness and provides a non-stick surface. The majority of wax paper is coated in a food-safe wax, which is made using vegetable oil. Some brands of wax paper also use soybean oil.

The coating in wax paper is water-resistant, and paper needs to be torn with water as one of the first steps in recycling. This makes it unsuitable to be processed alongside most other paper waste. It’s also often covered with additional oils from foods, which are not accepted by recycling facilities.

While it can’t be recycled, the good news is that some wax paper can be composted at home. If you use wax paper made with vegetable or soybean oil, it can be added in small quantities to your compost. The wax is quite hard for the microbes (微生物) in compost to break down, so rip your wax paper into small pieces and add it to your compost a little at a time. Wax paper should biodegrade at around the same rate as leaf mulch. If you do use wax paper, the best sort to buy is one with unbleached, natural paper, and a wax coating made using vegetable or soybean oil.

Reusing an item as many times as possible is always a good, environmentally friendly option, especially if it can’t be recycled afterward. Rather than throw away your wax paper after one use, you can sometimes use it multiple times to extend its useful life.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了什么是蜡纸,蜡纸不能和其他纸质物品一起回收的原因及如何重复使用蜡纸。

8. What does the author intend to show in Paragraph 2?

- A. What exactly wax paper is.
- B. How functional wax paper is.
- C. Why wax paper can’t be recycled.
- D. How we can dispose wax paper.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段前两句可推知,作者在第二段主要解释了什么是蜡纸。故选 A。

9. What does the underlined word “rip” probably mean in the fourth paragraph?

- A. Make. B. Press.
C. Shake. D. Tear.

D 词义猜测题。根据画线词前的“The wax is quite hard for the microbes (微生物) in compost to break down”可知,蜡很硬,使得堆肥中的微生物不容易分解它,因此把蜡纸撕成碎片,每次少放一点。由此推知,画线词 rip 意为“撕碎”。故选 D。

10. What may be talked about in the following paragraph?

- A. Alternatives to wax paper.
B. Ideas for reusing wax paper.
C. Items wrapped with wax paper.
D. Ways to choose wax paper.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段最后一句可推知,文章接下来的段落可能会讲一些重复使用蜡纸的想法。故选 B。

11. What is probably the best title for the text?

- A. Deal with Wax Paper in Environmentally Friendly Ways
B. The Importance of Wax Paper's Being Recycled
C. Is Wax Paper Environmentally Friendly?
D. What Can Be Used Instead of Wax Paper?

A 标题归纳题。通读全文可知,文章的主要内容是用环保的方式来处理蜡纸。故选 A。

D

Think back to when you were in a classroom, and the teacher set a difficult problem. Which of the two following answers is closer to the way you reacted?

A: Oh no, this is too hard for me. I'm not even going to seriously try.

B: Ah, this is quite difficult but I like to push myself. Even if I don't get the answer right, maybe I'll learn something in the attempt.

The psychologist Carol Dweck of Stanford University gave a group of children problems that were slightly too hard. One group reacted positively, said they loved challenge and understood that their abilities could be developed. She says they had a “growth mindset”. But another group felt that their intelligence was being judged and they had failed. They had a “fixed mindset” and were unable to imagine improving.

Professor Dweck believes that, for years, children have been praised for their intelligence or

talent, but this makes them sensitive to failure. They want to please by getting high grades, without interest in learning. The solution is to praise the process that children are engaged in: making an effort, using learning methods and improving. This way they will become better and achieve more.

Psychologists have been testing these theories. Students were taught that if they left their comfort zone and learned something new and difficult, they will be more intelligent. These students made faster progress than a control group. In another study, unsuccessful school children were using growth mindset techniques for a year. The results were astonishing. They came top in a regional test, beating children from much more advanced background. These children had previously felt that making an effort was a sign of being stupid, but they came to see it as the key to learning.

So, back to our original question. If you answered B, well done—you already have a growth mindset. If A, don't worry, everyone is capable of becoming better with a little effort and self-awareness.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了成长型思维模式与固定型思维模式在学习过程中的表现、背后的心理因素以及如何培养学生养成成长型思维模式。心理学家通过实验的方法也确定通过成长型思维模式训练,学生的进步会很明显。

12. What is the purpose of the author mentioning the two answers at the beginning?

- A. To give an example.
B. To teach how to react.
C. To draw a conclusion.
D. To introduce the topic.

D 推理判断题。根据文章结构可知,文章开头提到两种回答方式是让读者能够直观地感受到什么是成长型思维模式,什么是固定型思维模式。由此推知,目的是介绍本文话题。故选 D。

13. Which aspect should be praised according to Professor Dweck?

- A. Talent. B. High grades.
C. Being hard-working. D. Achievement.

C 细节理解题。根据倒数第三段第三句可知,解决同学们害怕失败的方法是表扬孩子参与的过程,例如很努力、使用了学习到的方法和有进步等。也就是说应该表扬孩子努力的过程。故选 C。

14. What makes the students with fixed mindset fail?

- A. Lacking imagination.
- B. Negative attitudes.
- C. Being poor judgement.
- D. Low intelligence.

B 推理判断题。根据倒数第四段最后两句可知,固定型思维的人认为他们的智力正在被考验并且他们已经失败了,他们无法想象进步。并且根据倒数第二段中的研究可知,当学业不好的学生经过一年成长型思维的培训,结果是惊人的,也就是说不是学生的能力不行,而是他们消极的思维方式使得他们的学习成绩不好。故选 B。

15. What does the underlined word “it” in the last but one paragraph refer to?

- A. Making an effort.
- B. The regional test.
- C. The background.
- D. The comfort zone.

A 代词指代题。but 前后是两个并列的分句,前一分句意为“这些小孩之前认为努力是傻的标志”,后一分句中的“they came to see”说明的是现在的情况,现在他们把努力看作是学习的关键。所以前后两个分句中宾语一致,it 指代 making an effort。故选 A。

II. 七选五

How would you feel if a colleague suggested you take a comedy class to improve your sense of humour? I felt stressed. 16

Yet according to Jennifer Aaker and Naomi Bagdonas, humour is not something you are born with or without. 17 What's more, finding our funny sides makes us appear more competent and confident, strengthens relationships, unlocks creativity, and makes us more likable. It helps in any life situation. 18

I turned to Aaker and Bagdonas and they agreed to teach me how to find my funny bones. In our first call, we discuss the common misconceptions that stop many of us in our comedy tracks. The first, Aaker says, is the belief that humour has no place in certain situations, especially at work. 19 But 98% of the top executives say they prefer employees with a sense of humour and 84% of bosses believe those employees do better work.

They are so convinced of the power of humour that they also advocate its ability to help people avoid

difficult situations. 20 Research shows that people who watch a funny video before trying to solve a puzzle are twice as likely to be successful and when we do make mistakes, learning to laugh at them can have a positive impact on our psychology. It takes off the pressure and if you show colleagues that you aren't afraid to laugh at your own mistakes, they'll feel safer owning up to theirs.

- A. Rather, it can be developed gradually.
- B. We worry about not being taken seriously.
- C. Humour has been proved to increase creativity.
- D. Some people just aren't funny and I'm one of them.
- E. This explains why people eagerly sign up for the humour course.
- F. Every joke follows the fundamental structure of the setup and punch line.
- G. If you feel uncomfortable making the jokes, leave them to someone else.

答案:16~20 DAEBG

III. 完形填空

89-year-old Gloria Porter was lying in hospital. She couldn't leave her ward. So to 21 boredom, she would often stare outside her window to watch construction workers building the new front entrance to the hospital. She wasn't expecting one of the 22 to wave to her. She couldn't help but wave back at the kind 23. This was only the start of a special 24 between the two.

Jeff Reick knew Porter was 25, so he decided to send a kind 26 to her by finding some chalk and writing “Get Well” on one of the beams (梁) facing her 27. “I just thought that was 28,” Porter said. “So I should do something to 29 that.”

When Porter saw construction workers working high above the ground one cold, windy day, she grew 30. She wrote “Stay Safe” on a piece of paper, which she then 31 on the window for the workers to see. “When I saw ‘Stay Safe’ on a piece of paper, I 32 and said to my coworkers, ‘Did you see that?’” Reick said.

The hospital staff took photos of that and 33 them on social media. The simple acts of kindness 34 and many people were employed in similar acts, including one woman who delivered 35 pizza to the construction workers.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了一位老人和一位建筑工人之间通过简单的文字互相关怀的温暖故事,这个故事最终也感染了其他人。

21. A. make for B. put off
C. figure out D. escape from
D 她常常盯着窗外,看建筑工人修建医院的新前门的目的是要打发无聊的时间。
22. A. workers B. nurses
C. doctors D. patients
A 根据上文中的“construction workers”可知,向她挥手的是其中的一个工人(workers)。
23. A. job B. inspiration
C. gesture D. favour
C 根据上文中的“wave to her”可知,这是一种手势(gesture)。
24. A. business B. connection
C. difference D. trouble
B 根据下文中的“writing ‘Get Well’”“wrote ‘Stay Safe’”可知,之后他们又通过文字进行了联系(connection)。
25. A. lonely B. upset
C. ill D. poor
C 根据上文中的“89-year-old Gloria Porter was lying in hospital.”可知,89岁的Gloria Porter躺在医院里,所以Jeff Reick知道Porter生病了(ill)。
26. A. letter B. message
C. note D. warning
B Jeff Reick在面对窗户的一根横梁上写“早日康复”以此想向她传达慰问的信息(message)。
27. A. window B. entrance
C. wall D. door
A 根据下文中的“on the window”可知,Jeff Reick是在Porter病房窗户(window)的对面的一根横梁上写“康复”这两个词的。
28. A. impolite B. necessary
C. familiar D. precious
D Jeff Reick能够主动向Porter表达善意,在Porter看来就是非常宝贵的(precious)。
29. A. record B. return
C. recover D. remember
B 根据下文可知,她在一张纸上写下“注意安全”,并把这张纸贴在窗户上给工人们看。这就是一种回报(return)。
30. A. puzzled B. worried
C. thrilled D. annoyed

B 高空作业是很危险的,所以Porter很担忧(worried)工人们的安全。

31. A. knocked B. installed
C. placed D. drew
C 贴(placed)在窗户上工人们才能看得见,看得清楚。
32. A. came down B. broke down
C. showed up D. turned around
D 根据下文中的“said to my coworkers”可知,Jeff Reick是转身(turned around)对工友说的。
33. A. shared B. found
C. mentioned D. deleted
A 根据下文中的“on social media”可知,照片被分享(shared)到了社交媒体上。
34. A. happened B. succeeded
C. spread D. formed
C 简单的善举流传开来(spread),才会有更多的人知道,于是很多人也做了相似的善举。
35. A. expensive B. free
C. ordinary D. cheap
B 既然是善举,那么这位女士送的一定是免费的(free)比萨饼。

IV. 语法填空

Whoever has ever been to a Chinese restaurant may have experienced **36. a** unique set of utensils (餐具). Instead of a fork, you may have been handed two long **37. sticks** (stick). What are we talking about? Chopsticks, of course! Experts believe they originated in China. Chopsticks **38. have been** (be) around for over 5,000 years. For example, a pair of bronze chopsticks from 1200 BC has been found in China. Experts believe the earliest chopsticks were likely used to stir a fire or serve food during **39. cooking** (cook).

Chopsticks you get in a Chinese restaurant are **40. usually** (usual) made of wood. However, they are also commonly made of bamboo. You can also find chopsticks **41. made** (make) out of metal and bone. In China, chopsticks are called *kuaizi*, **42. which** is a word made up of characters meaning quick and “bamboo”. The English word “chopsticks” may come **43. from** a common phrase that means “quickly chop”.

Chopsticks **44. are meant** (mean) to be useful but difficult to handle. They are held by the main hand and used to pick up food. It takes a bit of

practice **45. to feel** (feel) comfortable when you use chopsticks to eat. With a little work, you'll be eating with chopsticks in no time.

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华, 你的英国朋友 Jack 正在参与策划校园“中国文化节”, 来信请你推荐一些活动项目。现请你给他回复一封邮件, 内容包括:

1. 活动项目名称;
2. 推荐理由;
3. 预祝活动成功。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节, 以使行文连贯。

参考词汇: 中国文化节 Chinese Culture Festival; 非物质文化遗产 Intangible Cultural Heritage

Dear Jack,

Knowing that you are a member of designers of your school's Chinese Culture Festival, I am more than glad to give you some tips for the performance.

First, it will be very attractive to prepare some special dishes of China, so your friends will know better about the culture of Chinese food. Besides, students and teachers dressed in traditional costumes may also be a wonderful sight. What's the most important is that you'd better spare some areas for our Intangible Cultural Heritage, such as paper-cutting, kite flying, which must be amazing to everyone present.

Hope everything goes well!

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Jack, a clerk at the local bank, was wandering alone on the street. It was a cold, silent winter night. His mind was on his wife Linda, who had been in a car accident two months ago and was now lying in a hospital bed, waiting for more money for her operation. Jack had sold everything he had, and he had tried his best to borrow money from all the people and banks he could. But the real world is cruel.

A lot of money was still needed. To Jack, it would mean a great deal of suffering to see his wife die without any help. "I have only one choice left,"

Jack said to himself. Then he went to the bank, his workplace, again. For several days, he observed the bank and planned a theft.

The next day, he went to work as usual. Everything seemed normal; he joked with his workmates and helped his clients as he always did. But no one noticed that he had brought a bigger suitcase to work, instead of the small one he always carried. At 5:00 pm, the bank closed, and the clerks and the guards had all gone home. However, at that moment, Jack was in the bathroom, and the guards didn't notice him, of course. When the noises coming from the street were replaced by silence and everything turned dark, Jack came out from the bathroom. He first cut the lines of the alarms and monitors with tools from his new suitcase.

He was all too familiar with the equipment since he had been working there for 8 years and had been studying the security system for the past 30 days. Using a special key and some other tools, he then easily opened the doors of the safes. The bank's security system wasn't very good, which allowed Jack to take a lot of money. Several minutes later, Jack left the bank with a heavy bag filled with money.

注意: 续写词数应为 150 左右。

After Jack had been away from the bank for a while, the alarms began to ring. The police arrived at the bank very quickly, only to find no one there. The next day was a really special day for the town, which was filled with newspapers and TV reporters covering the strange theft. The clerks at the bank were busy discussing the case, of course, including Jack. The police could only promise to catch the thieves as soon as possible, even though no clues had been found yet.

But the most unlucky man was the manager of the bank, an old man. He seemed to be the only person to blame and was removed from his position. At last, with enough money for her operation, Jack's wife was saved. However, Jack felt guilty towards the manager of the bank. He could not forget what he had done to the old man. His guilt deepened as time went by. Finally, he turned himself in to the police and accepted his punishment.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and self, whose topic is the spirit of going forward bravely and never giving up. This unit introduces outstanding figures in different fields such as J.K. Rowling, J.D. Salinger, Brontë sisters and Helen Keller, tells us about the difficulties they encounter in their lives and how they face the difficulties, meet the challenges, and ultimately succeed, aims to guide students in their spirit, cultivate their perseverance and quality of not to give up in the face of setbacks. And by the contrast with them, let students learn to be grateful, know how to cherish what they own and establish a positive and correct attitude towards life.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能正确使用与“积极精神、永不放弃”主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	学习动名词和不定式作宾语的用法,学会在写作中正确使用动名词和不定式作宾语。
		语篇	1. 阅读论说文,了解夹叙夹议类文章的文体特征,分析其写作意图、语篇结构及语言特点; 2. 阅读散文,明确散文的主要写作目的以及语篇结构特征。
		语用	根据交际场合的正式程度、行事方式以及与交际对象的情感距离,选择委婉的语言形式,理解和表达拒绝,达到预期的交际效果。
	语言技能	听	能听懂“保持乐观的人生态度”的英语习语。
		说	能就优秀人物如何获得成功的相关话题进行讨论,并能恰当使用所学词汇、句型描述名人的人生经历。
		读	能读懂与人生经历、人物品质及人生态度相关话题的文章内容,能理解诗歌的大意和主题,并初步赏析诗歌。
		写	1. 能了解描写经历的文体特点和内容要素,并恰当使用所学词汇与表达描述和介绍人物生平,讲述人物故事及自身经历; 2. 通过观看视频,发现并归纳促使优秀人物走向成功的共性原因; 3. 能正确运用动名词和不定式描述人物的自身经历。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	能通过运用各种学习策略,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,激发学习英语的兴趣,提高分析和解决问题的能力,提高自己的理解能力和表达能力。
文化意识	1. 了解不同文化背景下人们面对挫折时的优秀品质,如身残志坚、乐观向上、坚持不懈、勇往直前、永不放弃等; 2. 理解和学习中外优秀人物的精神品质,树立在学习生活中刻苦努力、坚持不懈的人生观与价值观,树立面对困境不妥协、面对失败不放弃的积极的人生态度。
思维品质	能通过比较、分析并联系自身实际,有逻辑地与他人分享亲身经历,实现知识和思维能力的拓展与迁移,能多维度地看待事物,将困境看作是新的机遇和挑战,树立“勇往直前、永不放弃”的人生态度。

◊ 必备知识

必背 单词	debt, pace, inform, rarely, rejection, nevertheless, persevere, criticism, classic, guarantee, delighted, outcome, worthwhile, blanket, enthusiastic, contest, upset, elect, blessing, appreciative, worthy, mere, gentleness, companionship, outline, dawn, permanent, delight, embarrassed
重点 表达	regret to do, take for example, have... in common, stick... on, along the lines of, turn... down, a total of, within the pages of, play a part, be stricken blind and deaf, appreciative of, worthy of note, probe into, go about, close in on, descend upon, give one hint to, survive on, all too often, say in one's ear
重点 知识	1. not... until... 2. as if 引导方式状语从句
单元 语法	动名词和不定式作宾语
单元 写作	个人经历

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Identify the type of writing and the main idea of the text by skimming.
2. Clarify the character's discovery process and the textual structure of the whole text.
3. Talk about the qualities that the character exhibited and reflect on the spirit of scientific exploration.

自主式预习

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. debt *n.* 债务;欠款
2. pace *n.* 速度;进度
3. inform *v.* 通知,告知
4. rarely *adv.* 很少,难得
5. rejection *n.* 拒绝,否决
6. guarantee *v.* 保证;确保
7. delighted *adj.* 愉快的,高兴的
8. nevertheless *adv.* 然而,不过
9. criticism *n.* 批评;指责
10. classic *n.* 名著;经典作品
11. outcome *n.* 结果,后果
12. a total of 总共,总计
13. play a part 扮演角色;起作用
14. regret to do 遗憾地做……
15. take for example 以……为例
16. have... in common 有……共同之处

17. turn... down 减少;关小,调低;拒绝

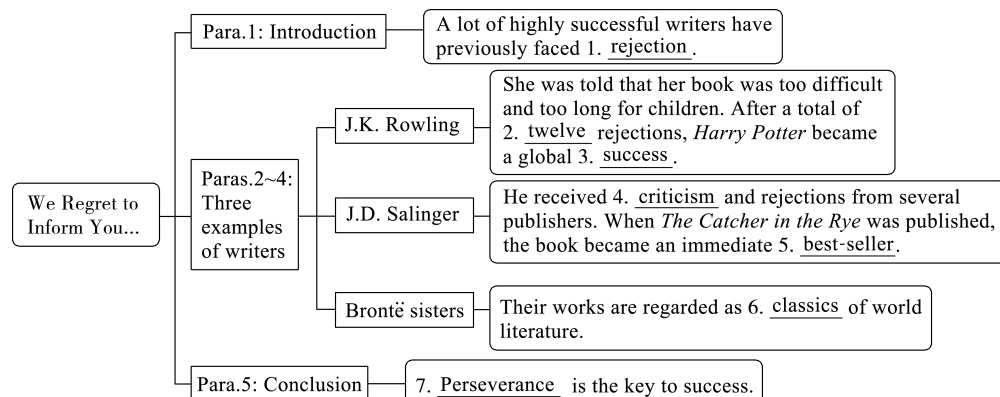
(二)阅读词汇

1. persevere *v.* 锲而不舍,坚持不懈
2. endurance *n.* (忍)耐力
3. dread *v.* 畏惧,惧怕
4. overnight *adv.* 突然,一下子
5. manuscript *n.* 手稿,底稿
6. rye *n.* 黑麦
7. best-seller *n.* 畅销书;畅销产品
8. Victorian *adj.* 英国维多利亚(女王)时代的
9. laureate *n.* 重要奖项获得者
10. along the lines of 类似这样;在……方向上
11. within the pages of 在……页内
12. stick... on 把……贴上
13. turn... inside out 把……翻过来
14. stick out 伸出
15. all too often 时常;经常

任务型课堂

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Why does the author begin the text with the sentence "We regret to inform you..."?
A. To introduce a politician's speech.
B. To tell us how to respond to a writer.
C. To introduce the topic for discussion.
D. To attract readers.
- Why does every writer feel cold when he or she reads the publisher's last sentence?
A. They put a lot of effort into their work.
B. They have no time to play.
C. Their letter is returned.
D. They want to succeed overnight.
- Why did J.K. Rowling think she had something in common with her favourite writers?
A. They were poor.
B. They had been rejected.
C. They received a total of twelve rejections.
D. They received comments from publishers.
- What's the dream of three sisters from Victorian England?
A. Becoming men.
B. Becoming publishers.
C. Seeing their books published.
D. Writing a book of poems.
- Which word can be used to describe J.K. Rowling and J.D. Salinger?
A. Generous. B. Determined.
C. Cautious. D. Serious.

答案: 1~5 CABCB

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- After a total of twelve rejections, one publisher eventually agreed to print 500 copies of her first

book, and as we know, *Harry Potter* became a global success, with over 400 million books sold and translated into more than seventy different languages.

[句子分析]本句是一个由 and 连接的并列句。在第二个并列分句中, as we know 是 as 引导的非限制性定语从句; with over 400 million... languages 是 with 复合结构作状语, books 与 sell 和 translate 之间为逻辑上的动宾关系。

[尝试翻译]在收到十二封拒稿信后,终于有一家出版商同意将她的第一本书印刷五百册。我们都知道,《哈利·波特》后来在全球大获成功,销量超过四亿册,被翻译成了七十多种不同的语言。

- In fact, it is within the pages of *Jane Eyre* that we can find these words: "I honour endurance, perseverance, industry, talent; because these are the means by which men achieve great ends..."

[句子分析]本句是一个强调句型,强调的是地点状语 within the pages of *Jane Eyre*。

[尝试翻译]事实上,这正印证了我们在《简·爱》中读到的这些话:"我崇尚忍耐、坚毅、勤奋、天赋;因为只有依靠这些,人们才能实现宏大的目标……"

- Keep trying and eventually you will read the words "We are delighted to inform you..."

[句子分析]本句是一个由 and 连接的并列句。使用了"祈使句+and+陈述句"结构。

[尝试翻译]坚持下去,最终你会收到这样的回复:"我们很高兴地通知您……"

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- What is the key to success according to the text?
Perseverance is the key to success.
- Can you write a suitable title for the text? And give your reasons.
Never Give Up Your Dreams; Having a dream is the possibility of success. Never give up and keep up, and we will succeed some day. (回答合理即可)

Unit 2 课后素养评价(五)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

High engagement, high return. That's the advice from education experts at the University of South Australia for teachers looking to improve student outcomes.

Filming and assessing (评估) the content of classrooms across South Australia and Victoria, researchers found in a new study that nearly 70% of

student tasks involved superficial learning—simple questions and answers, taking notes, or listening to teachers—rather than activities that engage students on a deeper level. Less than a third of teachers are engaging students in complicated learning, limiting student opportunities for critical thinking and problem solving.

UniSA researcher, Dr Stephenson, highlights

teachers need more support to plan interactive and constructive lessons that promote deep learning. “The greater the engagement, the deeper the learning. Deep learning requires the organisation of knowledge into conceptual structures, which improves information memory and learning outcomes. It also supports the development of innovative thinking. Even small changes to teachers’ existing lesson plans and teaching methods can vastly increase student engagement and overall results,” he says.

“At a base level, teachers should consider how they can adjust their existing classroom activities so that more tasks are on the deeper end of learning. Take for example, watching a video. Students can silently watch a video (which is ‘passive’); watch a video and take notes using the presenter’s words (which is ‘active’); write questions that occur for them while watching the video (which is ‘constructive’); or watch a video and discuss it with another student to generate different ideas (which is ‘interactive’). Interactive engagement in classrooms motivates students to develop deeper understanding. They’re making judgments, suggesting and commenting on arguments and opinions, and working out solutions to problems,” Dr Stephenson says.

Interestingly, many teachers seem not to know or fully appreciate the importance of how their lesson tasks can stimulate different modes of student engagement. “Even changing class activities from ‘active’ to ‘constructive’ can go a long way towards improving student leaning,” Dr Stephenson says. “Teachers should undertake professional development to transform their thinking towards practices that support deeper-learning and better outcomes for students.”

【语篇解读】文章介绍了教师教学成功的秘诀:高参与度才有高回报。教师应该进行专业发展,升级教学策略。

1. What does the underlined word “superficial” in Paragraph 2 mean?
A. Shallow. B. Productive.
C. Confusing. D. Challenging.
A 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在的句子可知,破折号后的内容对 superficial 学习进行了解释,与让学生进行更深层次的活动对比,画线词意为“shallow (浅的)”。故选 A。
2. What are most student in-class tasks like according to the study?
A. They make classes lively and fun.
B. They achieve no desired results.
C. They contribute to students’ deep thinking.

D. They stop students from concentration.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“researchers found in a new study that nearly 70% of student tasks involved superficial learning—simple questions and answers, taking notes, or listening to teachers—rather than...”可知,根据研究,大多数学生的课堂任务没有取得预期的结果。故选 B。

3. If students attend a lesson about Western and Eastern cultures, which activity works best?
A. A group debate.
B. A film screening.
C. A reading contest.
D. A retelling exercise.
A 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“discuss it with another student to generate different ideas (which is ‘interactive’). Interactive engagement in classrooms motivates students to develop deeper understanding. They’re making judgments, ...”可知,如果学生参加有关西方和东方文化的课程,进行小组辩论活动效果最好。故选 A。
4. What does Dr Stephenson suggest teachers do for better student outcomes?
A. Increase class activities.
B. Interact with students more often.
C. Upgrade teaching strategies.
D. Engage students in more self-study.
C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“Teachers should undertake professional development to transform their thinking towards practices that support deeper-learning and better outcomes for students.”可知,斯蒂芬森博士建议教师升级教学策略,这样才能取得更好的学生成果评价。故选 C。

II. 七选五

You don’t need to be a world-class mountaineer to stand out in a job interview. Here’s my advice on how to nail the most common interview question.

Most people are so eager to show off what they’ve been involved in. Don’t worry, and there will be time for that. The interviewer has reviewed your resume and will ask you plenty about your expertise. “Tell me about yourself” is a question you’re certain to be asked at any job interview. 1 However, sharing something that shows who you really are beyond a piece of paper is a good idea. It will allow the interviewer to know something about your life outside of work.

Everyone has something interesting to share about themselves. I've heard people talk about everything from being a world-class sushi chef to an ice carver. 2 For example, you participate in competitive sports, you're an accomplished (技艺高超的) pianist and you're writing your first detective novel. If the information showcases a unique aspect of yourself, especially if you can link it to what you can bring to your next job, then go for it.

Another way to think about the question is: "What makes you get up every morning?" The person also wants to know what your sense of passion and purpose is. That volunteer work on a farm cooperative in South America, for example, shows you have a global perspective. 3 It doesn't matter how big or small the accomplishment is, as long as it shows you're struggling to improve yourself. When people are motivated by contributing to something bigger than themselves, they get more satisfaction.

4 Relax, be yourself and tell the truth. Don't approach the interview like you're trying out for Broadway. It's more than obvious when someone is trying to memorise their lines and "play the part". Also, if you overstate what you've done or fully invent a story about yourself, you'll be exposed. 5

- Take a risk to get personal.
- Showing honesty is one of the most important things.
- Running your first 10 kilometres shows you like a challenge.
- And then everything you say about yourself will be questioned.
- It's also important to tell it in a way that makes you memorable.
- Too many people respond to it by giving a recital of their resume.
- "Tell me about yourself" is an invitation for you to share brief information.

答案: 1~5 FECBD

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务目标

- Learn about the masterpieces of three writers and the frustration they were faced with and their reaction.
- Identify the structure and type of the text, and learn to express your own ideas about an inspiring person.
- Master the language points by sentence analysis and apply them to writing.
- Learn from the three writers, develop a positive attitude towards life and cultivate the spirit of perseverance.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- Many people experience difficulty in paying off their **debts**. 债务
- The **pace** of something is the speed at which it happens or is done. 速度
- We are waiting to hear the final **outcome** of the negotiations. 结果
- He holds an important position in the company; **nevertheless**, I don't quite trust him. 然而
- I **dread** to think what would happen if there really was a fire here. 畏惧, 惧怕
- The **manuscript** had already been sent off to the printer. 手稿, 底稿
- We cannot **guarantee** the punctual arrival of trains in foggy weather. 保证

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>inform</u> v. 通知, 告知	information n. 信息
<u>dread</u> v. 畏惧, 惧怕	dreadful adj. 可怕的, 令人畏惧的
<u>rarely</u> adv. 很少, 难得	rare adj. 稀有的, 罕见的
<u>rejection</u> n. 拒绝, 否决	reject v. 反对, 拒绝
<u>persevere</u> v. 锲而不舍, 坚持不懈	perseverance n. 毅力; 韧性; 不屈不挠的精神
<u>delighted</u> adj. 愉快的, 高兴的	delight n. 愉快, 高兴
<u>endurance</u> n. (忍) 耐力	endure v. 容忍, 忍耐; 持续

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>criticism</u> <i>n.</i> 批评;指责	<u>critic</u> <i>n.</i> 批评家;评论家
	<u>critical</u> <i>adj.</i> 批判的;挑剔的
	<u>criticise</u> <i>v.</i> 批评;批判
<u>classic</u> <i>n.</i> 名著;经典作品	<u>classical</u> <i>adj.</i> 古典的

III. 补全短语

- 1. regret to do 遗憾地做……
- 2. a total of 总共,总计
- 3. take for example 举个例子
- 4. have... in common 有……共同之处
- 5. turn... down 减少;关小,调低;拒绝
- 6. stick to 坚持
- 7. stick... on 把……贴上
- 8. play a part 扮演……角色;起作用
- 9. turn... inside out 把……翻过来
- 10. all too often 时常;经常

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式: not... until...
“I wasn't going to give up until every single publisher turned me down, but I often feared that would happen,” she later posted.
她后来写道:“我是不会放弃的,除非所有出版商都拒绝我,但我常常担心这真的会发生。”
- 2. 句型公式: a time when(定语从句)
This, however, was a time when women were not encouraged to become writers.
然而,这是一个不鼓励女性成为作家的时代。
- 3. 句型公式: 强调句型
In fact, it is within the pages of *Jane Eyre* that we can find these words...
事实上,这正印证了我们在《简·爱》中读到的这些话……
- 4. 句型公式: it seems that...
So, it seems that talent alone isn't enough to guarantee success.
因此,仅靠天赋似乎不足以保证成功。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. have... in common with 和……有共同之处

[教材原文] When she received her first rejection letter, she decided that it meant she now **had** something **in common with** her favourite writers, and stuck it on her kitchen wall.

当她收到第一封拒稿信时,她决定把这看作是自己与最喜欢的作家之间有了共同点,并把信贴在了厨房的墙上。

[归纳拓展]

(1) have little/nothing/something/a lot in common (with...) (与……)几乎无/无/有/有很多共同之处

in common with... 和……一样

(2) common sense 常识

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① If I have something in common with my aunt, that's our smiles.

② In common with other middle-aged people, I like jogging in the morning.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之求助信) 我与室友, 或与目前遇到的其他任何人, 都没有什么共同之处。

I don't have much/have nothing in common with my roommate or anyone else I've met so far.

2. guarantee *v.* 保证; 确保 *n.* 保证; 担保; 保修单

[教材原文] So, it seems that talent alone isn't enough to **guarantee** success.

因此, 仅靠天赋似乎不足以保证成功。

[归纳拓展]

(1) guarantee sb. sth. 保证某人某事
guarantee to do sth./that... 保证/担保做某事; 确保……

be guaranteed to do sth. 肯定会做某事

(2) give sb. a guarantee (that)... 向某人保证……

under guarantee 在保修期内

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① We guarantee to deliver (deliver) your goods within a week.

② Your watch will be repaired free of charge if it's still under guarantee.

③ If we try to keep it a secret, she is guaranteed to find (find) out.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之劝告信) 不管你想要怎么对待你的生活, 我向你保证你都得接受教育, 才能实现自己的梦想。

No matter what you want to do with your life, I give you a guarantee that you'll need an education to realise your dream.

3. delighted *adj.* 愉快的, 高兴的

[教材原文] Keep trying and eventually you will read the words “We are **delighted** to inform you...”

坚持下去, 最终你会收到这样的回复: “我们很高兴地通知您……”

[归纳拓展]

(1) be delighted to do sth. 乐意/很高兴做某事

be delighted that... 乐意/高兴……

be delighted at/by/with 对……感到高兴

(2) delight *n.* [U] 快乐; 高兴 [C] 使人高兴的事, 乐事 *v.* 使高兴; 使愉快

to one's delight (= to the delight of sb.) 令某人高兴的是

wild with delight 欣喜若狂

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① We're delighted (delight) that you're coming to work with us.

② I am delighted to receive (receive) an email from you. As for the party on July 1st, I shall be pleased to attend.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之发言稿) 令我高兴的是, 我从几百位申请者中被选出来参加开幕式。

To my delight, I was chosen from hundreds of applicants to attend the opening ceremony. (delight *n.*)

4. not... until... 直到……才……

[教材原文] “I **wasn't** going to give up **until** every single publisher turned me down, but I often feared that would happen,” she later posted.

她后来写道: “我是不会放弃的, 除非所有出版商都拒绝我, 但我常常担心这真的会发生。”

[句式分析] 引号内句子是 but 连接的并列句, but 前的分句为主从复合句, 主句为 I wasn't going to give up, 从句为 until every single publisher turned me down。该主从复合句为 “not... until...” 结构, 意为 “直到……才……”。在 but 后的分句中, feared 后为宾语从句。

[归纳拓展]

(1) not... until... 意为 “直到……才……”, 即表示主句的动作到 until 所表示的时间才开始, 主句的谓语动词用非延续性动词。

(2) 当 not until 位于句首时, 主句要用部分倒装。

(3) not until 可用于强调句型, 其构成为 “It is/was not until... that...”。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Keesh waited calmly until the shouting died down.

② We didn't realise the love we have for our families is important until we went through real hardship.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 作为青少年, 只有当我们能够勇敢地面对困难时, 我们才会变得足够成熟。

① As teenagers, it is not until we are able to face difficulties bravely that we become mature enough. (用强调句型)

② As teenagers, not until we are able to face difficulties bravely do we become mature enough. (用倒装句)

多义词汇 专练

1. **pace**: A. *n.* 速度 B. *n.* 步幅, 迈出的一步

C. *v.* 来回踱步

① He found John **pacing** around the house, unable to sleep. C

② The computer will give students the opportunity to learn at their own **pace**. A

③ She took two **paces** forward. B

2. **guarantee**: A. *n.* 保证

B. *n.* 保修期

C. *v.* 保障

D. *v.* 肯定……必然发生

① I can **guarantee** the children will start being naughty as soon as they have to go to bed. D

② He gave me a **guarantee** that it would never happen again. A

③ Basic human rights, including freedom of speech, are now **guaranteed**. C

④ The television comes with a year's **guarantee**. B

3. She displayed the **classic** symptoms of depression. A

A. *adj.* 典型的

B. *adj.* 传统的

C. *adj.* 最优秀的

Unit 2 课后素养评价 (六)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 单句语法填空

1. Rarely (rare) have I seen such a beautiful sunset.

2. The boy is crying. Your rejection (reject) broke his little heart.

3. I was delighted (delight) at the news of her wedding.

4. This afternoon I will go to get my camera repaired (repair).

5. We'll keep you informed (inform) of the programme's progress.
6. I regret to tell (tell) you that you didn't pass the exam.
7. This job can be done only with perseverance (persevere).
8. Our director criticised (criticism) Julia for her mistakes.
9. Students study at their own pace and the teachers seldom set tests.
10. He didn't want to be in debt because his restaurant was no longer popular.

II. 短语填空

take... for example; turn down; play a part in; go wrong; have... in common with; a total of

1. Don't worry. If anything goes wrong, I'll take responsibility for it.
2. As is known to all, geography also plays a part in making dialects.
3. You got 47 points on the written examination and 18 on the oral, making a total of 65.
4. They have much in common with each other, so they become friends.
5. I thanked him for the offer but turned it down.
6. Take myself for example. I wanted to read English novels to improve my English and thus I made a plan to read ten pages of a novel every day.

III. 完成句子

1. As you know, if you do the same thing over and over again, you begin to do it automatically.
正如你所知道的,如果你一遍又一遍地做同样的事情,你就会开始自动地去做。
2. It was his son's winning first prize in the competition that made him feel so delighted.
是他的儿子在这次比赛中获得了一等奖让他感到这么高兴。
3. Nevertheless, I did not realise how much time I had wasted until I failed in the exam.
然而,直到考试不及格我才意识到已经浪费了许多时间。
4. There was a time when each teacher spent an hour, one day a week, testing pupils in every subject.
曾经,每个老师每周都有一天花上一小时的时间对学生的每门功课进行测试。
5. It seemed that he didn't regret to refuse to help them.
似乎,他对拒绝帮助他们不感到抱歉。

IV. 完形填空

I work as a waiter at a hotel. Last night an elderly white, seemingly 1 couple came into the restaurant and my co-worker 2 them. We usually do our own 3, but we were so busy last night that we helped each other out. At one point the elderly couple 4 to me that they were ready to order. I usually find it 5 when people make

their order in such a high-sounding manner, but once I 6 their order I understood why.

The husband began ordering and started stuttering (口吃). It was 7 that he had a speech disorder. I could tell the wife had told her husband very 8 what she wanted as a way for him to practise speaking. It took some time for him to order and 9 she was sitting there and she looked so 10 despite her husband's frequent stuttering.

The whole thing brought me to tears, making me realise that a huge part of love is acceptance, tolerance and support. She 11 have made the order and made things much easier for her husband to avoid the stares from other tables, but she didn't. 12, she supported him and was 13 to see him complete the order. I assumed these wealthy people had everything going well for them. But it just 14 me that all of us have our problems. I 15 took their gesture of wanting to order as bad manners, but they did it because he really wanted to get the order right. What a true love!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇夹叙夹议文。文章主要记叙了作为服务员的作者一次在餐厅接待一对看起来很富有的老夫妻的故事。最初作者觉得他们招呼作者点餐的方式很粗鲁,最后发现这是妻子为了锻炼口吃的丈夫而采取的训练方式。这件事让作者明白,爱很大一部分是接纳、包容和扶持,也让作者意识到每个人都有不顺心的事。

1. A. confident B. wealthy
C. ordinary D. energetic
B 根据最后一段中的“these wealthy people had everything going well”可知,这对夫妻看起来很富有。故选 B。
2. A. hugged B. supported
C. seated D. waved
C 老夫妻来吃饭,同事为他们安排了座位。此处 seat 表示“领……就座”。故选 C。
3. A. tables B. cleaning
C. favour D. dishes
A 根据上文“I work as a waiter at a hotel.”可知,作者是服务员,因此此处是指他们负责自己的那几桌(tables)客人。故选 A。
4. A. signalled B. whistled
C. explained D. applied
A 根据下文“that they were ready to order”可知,那对老夫妻向“我”示意,他们准备点餐了。此处 signal 表示“打手势,示意”。故选 A。
5. A. risky B. absurd
C. rude D. difficult
C 根据最后一段中的“took... as bad manners”可知,作者认为人们以如此高调的方式点餐是不礼貌的。故选 C。

6. A. delivered B. glanced
C. changed D. took
D 根据下文“their order I understood why”可知,作者接受了他们的点餐才明白他们为什么要这么高调。故选 D。
7. A. important B. well-known
C. unlikely D. evident
D 根据上文丈夫点餐时结巴可知,很明显他说话有障碍。故选 D。
8. A. particularly B. frankly
C. casually D. regularly
A 根据下文“what she wanted as a way for him to practise speaking”可知,妻子之前就特别告诉了丈夫自己想吃什么,只是想让丈夫点餐,以此作为一种练习说话的方式。故选 A。
9. A. at times B. of course
C. by accident D. in the meantime
D 丈夫在一边结结巴巴地点餐时,妻子一直在旁边看着丈夫。in the meantime 相当于 meanwhile, 表示“在此期间,同时”。故选 D。
10. A. content B. nervous
C. aggressive D. awkward
A 根据上文内容可知,妻子是特意让丈夫点餐来锻炼他的说话能力,因此,虽然丈夫说话结巴,但是她却很满意。故选 A。

11. A. must B. needn't
C. could D. should
C 此处为 could have done 结构,表示“本来可以做某事(却没有)”。故选 C。
12. A. Rather B. Otherwise
C. Instead D. Therefore
C 妻子本来可以更省事,自己点餐,还可以避免他人用异样的眼光看着他们,但是相反(Instead),她支持丈夫点餐,并且很自豪地看着他点完餐。故选 C。
13. A. determined B. bound
C. proud D. encouraged
C 根据上文“she supported him”可知,妻子支持丈夫,因此,看他完成了点餐,妻子感到自豪。故选 C。
14. A. warned B. hurt
C. inspired D. reminded
D 根据下文“all of us have our problems”可知,老夫妻点餐的事情提醒了(reminded)作者每个人都有自己不顺心的事情。故选 D。
15. A. initially B. secretly
C. naturally D. generally
A 根据下文“took their gesture of wanting to order as bad manners”可知,作者最初(initially)觉得他们那样招呼自己点餐的方式是很粗鲁的。故选 A。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Discover the usage and difference between gerunds and infinitives as objects, and apply them in real contexts.
2. Use English idioms to express positive or negative attitudes, find more similar idioms, and understand the meanings of these English idioms.
3. Pay attention to pragmatic functions, learn to express concern and comfort for others, and be able to apply relevant expressions learned in real life.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I wrapped the baby (up) in a **blanket**. 毯子,毛毯
2. She was **upset** to know that her application for the position was refused. 心烦意乱的,烦恼的
3. A **contest** is a competition or game that people try to win. 比赛,竞赛

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>worthwhile</u> <i>adj.</i> 重要的;值得做的	<u>worth</u> <i>n.</i> 价值;意义
	<u>worthy</u> <i>adj.</i> 值得尊敬的;值得赞赏的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>enthusiastic</u> <i>adj.</i> 热心的,热衷的	<u>enthusiasm</u> <i>n.</i> 热情,热心
<u>elect</u> <i>v.</i> 选举,推选	<u>election</u> <i>n.</i> 选择;选举

III. 补全短语

1. be made up of 由……组成
2. ups and downs 起起伏伏
3. have an effect on 对……有影响
4. contribute to 对……做出贡献

5. aim at 旨在
6. at first 起初
7. run for 竞选

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:so... that...

On the fourth day, I was so tired that I even didn't want to get out of bed.

到了第四天,我累得连床都不想下。

2. 句型公式:with 复合结构

With life being made up of ups and downs, it is not always easy to maintain a good and enthusiastic attitude.

生活总是起起落落,要保持一种良好而热情的态度并不总是容易的。

3. 句型公式:动词-ing 形式作主语

Nevertheless, looking on the bright side is the best thing that we can do for ourselves as well as for others.

然而,看到光明的一面是我们为自己和他人做的最好的事情。

4. 句型公式:if 条件句中的虚拟语气

If she had, the school would have been well-known. 如果她这么做了,学校就会出名了。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. worthwhile adj. 重要的;值得做的

[教材原文] Even though being a camper has its challenges, I feel it is **worthwhile**.

虽然作为一个野营者有它的挑战,但是我觉得它是值得的。

[归纳拓展]

(1) It's worthwhile $\begin{cases} \text{to do...} \\ \text{doing...} \end{cases}$ 做……是值得的。

(2) worth n. 价值;意义

be worth + n. 值得……,值……

be (well) worth doing... (非常)值得做……(主动形式可表示被动意义)

(3) worthy adj. 值得尊敬的;值得赞赏的

be worthy $\begin{cases} \text{of being done} \\ \text{to be done} \\ \text{of + n.} \end{cases}$ 值得做……

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① It is worthwhile to spend/spending (spend) two hours reading the book.

② There are many places of interest in China, the Great Wall in particular, which are well worth visiting (visit).

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信) 为了让我们的生活环境变得更加美好而做的努力是值得的。

① It is worthwhile making/to make an effort to make our living environment better. (worthwhile)

② An effort is worth making to make our living environment better. (worth)

③ An effort is worthy to be made/of being made to make our living environment better. (worthy)

2. enthusiastic adj. 热心的, 热衷的

[教材原文] someone who is extremely **enthusiastic**

and enjoys working extremely hard

一个极度热情并喜欢努力工作的人

[归纳拓展]

(1) be enthusiastic about 非常喜欢……

be enthusiastic to do sth. 非常喜欢做某事

(2) enthusiasm n. 热情, 热心

(3) enthusiastically adv. 热情地, 热心地

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① We explained our plans and he was very enthusiastic (enthusiasm) about them.

② His friends were enthusiastic to help (help) him out, but he refused.

③ She worked enthusiastically (enthusiastic) to interest the young in music.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之个人观点) 当你对自己所做的事情充满热情, 你就可以感受到这种积极的能量。

When you are enthusiastic about what you do, you can feel this positive energy.

3. elect v. 选举, 推选

[教材原文] You ran for Head of the Student Committee but weren't **elected**.

你竞选学生会主席但没有被选上。

[归纳拓展]

(1) elect to do... 选择/决定做……

elect sb. (to be/as)... 选举某人为……

(2) election n. 选择; 选举

名师点拨

在“elect sb. + 职务”结构中, 总统、市长等独一无二的职位前不用加任何冠词。

We **elected him mayor** of our city.

我们选他当我们市的市长。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① You can elect to delete (delete) the message or save it.

② Who do you think will win the election (elect)?

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之申请信) 如果当选学校广播站的英语播音员, 我将把提高节目质量当成我的职责。

If I am elected as the English broadcaster of the school radio station, I will make it my duty to improve the quality of programmes.

多义词汇 专练

upset: A. *adj.* 心烦意乱的, 烦恼的

B. *v.* 弄翻, 打翻 C. *v.* 打乱

D. *v.* 使生气, 使烦恼

① What made him **upset** was that he only got criticism from others. A

② The sudden change of the weather **upset** our plan to go to the entertainment park. C

③ He stood up suddenly, **upsetting** the soup. B

④ It **upset** her that she wasn't informed timely. D

语法研习课

动名词和不定式作宾语

语法感知

① You may have spent years **giving up** your weekends and free time to write your life's work...

② Rowling had spent years **surviving on** little money, spending all her time writing.

③ J. D. Salinger started writing short stories in high school, but later struggled **to get** his works published.

④ J. D. Salinger refused **to give up**.

1. 句①②中动词 spent 后面的动名词作宾语。

2. 句③④中 struggled 和 refused 后面的不定式作宾语。

语法精讲

一、动名词作宾语

1. 常见的只能用动名词作宾语的动词有: admit (承认)、appreciate (欣赏)、consider (考虑)、mention (提及)、delay (耽误)、enjoy (喜欢)、finish (完成)、imagine (想象)、miss (错过)、practise (练习)、resist (抵抗)、risk (冒险)、advise/suggest (建议)、mind (介意)、avoid (避免)、allow (允许)。

I'm **considering going** abroad for further study.
我在考虑出国深造。

We should **avoid making** the same mistake.
我们应该避免犯同样的错误。

He got well-prepared for the job interview, for he couldn't **risk losing** the good opportunity.

他为这次工作面试做了充分准备, 因为他不能冒失去这次好机会的风险。

2. 在英语中有些动词短语也常跟动名词作宾语, 常见

的有: be good at (擅长)、be fond of (喜欢)、be worth (值)、devote to (致力于)、feel like (想要)、give up (放弃)、have trouble/difficulty (in) (做某事有困难)、look forward to (期望)、pay attention to (注意)、put off (推迟)、be/get used to (习惯于)、insist on (坚持) 等。

I'm **looking forward to hearing** from you.

我盼望着收到你的来信。

二、不定式作宾语

1. 常见的不定式作宾语的动词有: agree (同意)、offer (提出)、intend/plan (打算, 计划)、demand (要求)、promise (答应)、help (帮忙)、prepare (准备)、decide (决定)、refuse (拒绝)、choose (选择)、wish/hope/want/expect (希望, 想要)、fail (不能)、pretend (假装)、manage (设法做到)、determine (决心)、beg (恳求, 祈求)、arrange (安排, 准备)、threaten (威胁)、claim (声称)、aim (以……为目标)、hesitate (犹豫不决) 等。

We **agreed to meet** here but so far she hasn't turned up yet.

我们约好在此地见面, 但是她到现在还没有露面。

They **managed to finish** the work on time.

他们设法按时完成了工作。

2. “疑问词+不定式”结构作宾语。

“疑问词 (who, which, when, where, how, what 等)+不定式”结构在句中起名词作用, 可充当主语、表语、宾语。

可以接“疑问词+不定式”结构作宾语的动词有: teach、remember、forget、decide、wonder、show、learn、consider、know 等。

He **taught** me **how to cook**.

他教我如何做饭。

Have you **decided where to spend** your holiday?

你决定去哪里度假了吗?

3. it 可以充当形式宾语,真正的宾语是不定式,可以用于该句型的动词有 consider、make、feel、find、think 等。

He **feels it his duty to help** others.

他觉得帮助别人是他的职责。

He **found it hard to learn** maths well.

他发现学好数学很难。

三、动名词作宾语与不定式作宾语的用法区别

1. 可接动名词和不定式作宾语但意义不同的动词(短语):

{ remember doing sth. 记得曾经做过某事

{ remember to do sth. 记住去做某事

{ forget doing sth. 忘记已经做过某事

{ forget to do sth. 忘记去做某事

{ stop doing sth. 停止正在做的事

{ stop to do sth. 停下来做另外一件事

{ mean doing sth. 意味着做某事

{ mean to do sth. 打算做某事

{ regret doing sth. 后悔已经做过某事

{ regret to do sth. 遗憾要做某事

{ try doing sth. 试着做某事

{ try to do sth. 努力做某事

{ go on doing sth. 继续做同一件事

{ go on to do sth. 完成一件事,接着做另一件事

{ can't help doing sth. 禁不住做某事

{ can't help (to) do sth. 不能帮着做某事

At the amusing performance, the audience **couldn't help laughing**.

看到这滑稽的表演,观众们不禁笑了起来。

I'm busy studying, so I **can't help (to) do** the housework.

我忙着学习,所以我不能帮忙做家务劳动。

—**Remember to return** the bat to me.

—But I **remember having returned** it to you.

——记得把球拍还给我。

——可是我记得已经还给你了。

—That would **mean wasting** a lot of labour.

—Really? I don't **mean to waste** any labour.

——那将意味着浪费许多劳动力。

——是吗? 我没打算浪费劳动力。

2. 可接动名词和不定式作宾语且意义差别不大的动词:

(1) hate、love、like、prefer 等动词后接不定式和动名词作宾语时,意义虽相同,内涵却有些区别——接不定式作宾语时,多表示一次性的、具体的动作;接动名词作宾语时,多表示习惯性的、一般性的动作。

I like swimming, but I don't **like to swim** here.

我喜欢游泳,但是我不喜欢在这里游泳。

(2) begin、start、continue 等少数几个动词后接动名词或不定式作宾语时意义基本相同。但如果 begin、start 等用于进行时态,或其主语是物而非人时,须用不定式。

Tom **began to learn/learning** how to use a computer last year.

汤姆去年开始学习如何使用电脑。

She **was starting to do** her homework.

她正开始做家庭作业。

(3) need、want、require 作“需要”讲,句子的主语为物,且句子的主语和谓语动词后的非谓语动词之间是被动关系时,这些动词后面可接动名词的主动式,也可接不定式的被动式。

The windows **need cleaning**.

= The windows **need to be cleaned**.

窗户需要擦了。

语法冲关

I. 用所给动词的适当形式填空

- Missing the train means waiting (wait) for another hour.
- After finishing her homework, my sister went on to do (do) some housework.
- Try knocking (knock) at the back door and see whether he is in or not.
- We've had a good start, but more work needs doing/to be done (do) to achieve the final success.
- He finished reading (read) the book yesterday.
- I promise to do (do) everything I can to help you.
- (2023 · 全国乙卷) As a photographer, I have spent the last two years recording (record) everything I discovered.
- She works very hard and hopes to go (go) to college.
- We must keep practising (practise) speaking English.

10. My sister is fond of drawing (draw) while I'm interested in collecting (collect) stamps.

II. 完成句子

- He has got used to living in the countryside.
他已习惯住在乡下了。
- The teacher showed us how to read a book.
老师指点我们怎样读书。
- Remember to tell him the news.
记得告诉他这个消息。
- I decided to go to the countryside on vacation.
我决定去农村度假。
- He tried to avoid answering my questions.
他试图避免回答我的问题。

Unit 2 课后素养评价 (七)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

contest; enthusiastic; elect; have a good effect on; contribute to

- Simple pleasures, such as a walk on a sunny day, can have a good effect on our mood.
- The headmaster was more than glad to know that many young teachers were enthusiastic about the project.
- His three sons also contribute to the family business.
- The upcoming Chinese speech contest is a good chance for foreigners to improve their oral Chinese.
- Mr Black had been elected president of the company.

II. 单句语法填空

- It's no good learning English without speaking (speak) English.
- I found it difficult for me to express (express) myself in English.
- I forgot to bring (bring) a pen. Could you lend me one?
- As a result of the serious flood, two thirds of the buildings in the area need repairing/to be repaired (repair).
- With the help of the teacher, we succeeded in finishing (finish) the work.
- With a contest to take (take) part in, I have to train really hard this month.
- Do you think it is worthwhile spending/to spend (spend) so much money carrying out this project?
- I find it no use advising (advise) him to go with us.
- According to the survey, most of the students are enthusiastic to participate (participate) in various social activities.

III. 阅读理解

Most of us are aware of the "Is the glass half full or half empty?" test. If you pick the former, you're an "optimist"; otherwise, you're a "pessimist".

It's not a black-or-white test, but it can measure how one sees life.

According to psychologist Lissy Ann Puno, most of us grow up wanting to be an optimist—a person who can see the good in any situation and can stay hopeful when facing challenges. For some people, though, life happens and they start to see the glass half-empty instead. Pessimists tend to see the wrong in every situation, and blame external factors and circumstances when things aren't going their way.

Being continuously fed with bad news and disappointments can turn optimistic children into adults who are critical of almost everything. For some, the shift becomes easier, being raised by pessimistic parents. Others still remain optimistic, thanks to growing up in a positive household.

"This is why developing optimism in young children is crucial for their development as adults," Lissy Ann said. If adopted at an early age, this powerful personality quality can help children grow into strong adults capable of handling life's circumstances with confidence, courage, and hope. What parent wouldn't want that for their children?

"Children are seen as natural optimists," Lissy Ann said. They come into this world with unbiased (无偏见的) eyes and a pure heart that hasn't been influenced by social expectations, life experiences, severe mental shock, or authority figures yet. Whether a child grows up to be optimistic or not is part genetic and part environmental. "Childhood experiences, parent-child connection, or authority figures will all have some influence," she said. Although optimism (or the lack of it) could be passed down genetically, it can also be taught.

【语篇解读】文章讲述了每个人都想成为一个乐观主义者,但是生活有时会让人悲观,所以培养幼儿的乐观情绪对他们成年后的发展很重要。

- What do people who see the glass half-empty refer to in Paragraph 2?

- A. People who become pessimistic.
- B. People who learn the truth about life.
- C. People who see different sides of things.
- D. People hold onto hope in difficult times.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段中的 *though* 可知，前后是转折关系；上文提到大多数人都希望成为乐观主义者，然而，有些人是悲观主义者。由此可推知，那些看到杯子是半空的人是悲观主义者。故选 A。

2. What is Paragraph 3 mainly about?
- A. Factors that affect children’s attitude to life.
 - B. The negative influence of parents over children’s growth.
 - C. The pattern of children’s mental transformation.
 - D. Circumstances that improve children’s personality.
- A 段落大意题。根据第三段的内容可知，本段主要介绍了影响儿童生活态度的因素。故选 A。
3. Why is it important for children to be optimistic according to Paragraph 4?

- A. It leads them to future success.
- B. It enables them to be wise in adulthood.
- C. It makes them mentally strong in adulthood.
- D. It helps them meet their parents’ expectations.

C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的““This is why developing optimism... with confidence, courage, and hope.”可知，对孩子来说，保持乐观很重要是因为这会让他们在成年后变得精神强大。故选 C。

4. What can be inferred from the last paragraph?
- A. Children are more optimistic than adults.
 - B. Genetic factors decide how children see life.
 - C. Optimism strengthens parent-child connection.
 - D. Proper guidance helps raise optimistic children.
- D 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“Whether a child grows up to be optimistic... it can also be taught.”可知，适当的教育指导有助于培养乐观的孩子。故选 D。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

- 1. Understand the article and clearly describe Helen Keller’s three-day wishes.
- 2. On the basis of understanding, feel the theme of the article, so as to deepen the understanding of the meaning of the unit theme, and have a positive attitude towards life in the face of difficulties and do not give up in the face of failure.
- 3. Describe the process and feelings of experiencing the difficulties in the life of people with disabilities, so as to learn to be grateful, cherish the good life more, and have a correct attitude towards life.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. Parents should encourage kids to have interactions with their fellows in order to develop their awareness of **companionship**. 友谊
- 2. The **outline** of something is its general shape, especially when it cannot be clearly seen. 轮廓
- 3. **Dawn** is the time of day when light first appears in the sky, just before the sun rises. 黎明, 破晓
- 4. The **revelation** of something is the act of making it known. 展现, 显示
- 5. The campaign we took part in last year has a **permanent** effect on my two little kids. 长久的, 永久的
- 6. Bad emotion **descended** when he got the rejection from the company again. 降临, 来临
- 7. The word “**mighty**” is used to describe something that is very large or powerful. 强有力的, 雄伟的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>blessing</u> <i>n.</i> 幸事, 幸运	bless <i>v.</i> 保佑, 祈福
<u>appreciative</u> <i>adj.</i> 感激的	appreciate <i>v.</i> 鉴赏; 感激; 意识到
	appreciation <i>n.</i> 感激; 欣赏; 赞美
<u>worthy</u> <i>adj.</i> 值得尊敬的; 值得赞赏的	worth <i>n.</i> 价值
	worthwhile <i>adj.</i> 重要的; 值得做的
<u>mere</u> <i>adj.</i> 仅仅, 只不过	merely <i>adv.</i> 仅仅, 只不过

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
delight <i>n.</i> 使人高兴的事, 乐事; 快乐, 高兴 <i>v.</i> 使高兴, 使愉快	delighted <i>adj.</i> 愉快的, 高兴的
	delightful <i>adj.</i> 令人愉快的, 讨人喜欢的
embarrassed <i>adj.</i> 难堪的, 尴尬的	embarrassing <i>adj.</i> 令人尴尬的, 使人难堪的
	embarrassment <i>n.</i> 窘迫; 尴尬
gentleness <i>n.</i> 和蔼, 温和	gentle <i>adj.</i> 和蔼的; 温和的
	gently <i>adv.</i> 和蔼地; 温和地

III. 补全短语

- now and then 时而, 不时
- be applied to 应用于
- care about 关心, 在乎; 介意
- be aware of 知道, 了解
- end up 结束; 终结
- be appreciative of 感激……
- worthy of 值得……的

8. probe into 探究, 探索9. close in on 围住; 接近10. descend upon 突然到达; 袭击(突然降临)11. give one hint to 给……一个忠告12. go about 着手; 从事; 干

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: make sb./sth. + *adj.*

Darkness would make him more appreciative of sight; silence would teach him the joys of sound.
黑暗会使人更加珍惜视力; 寂静能教会人享受声音的美妙。

2. 句型公式: “only+状语”置于句首引起的倒装

Only when darkness had again descended upon me should I realize how much I had left unseen.
只有当黑暗再次降临时, 我才意识到, 我还有那么多没有看到。

3. 句型公式: as if 从句(虚拟语气)

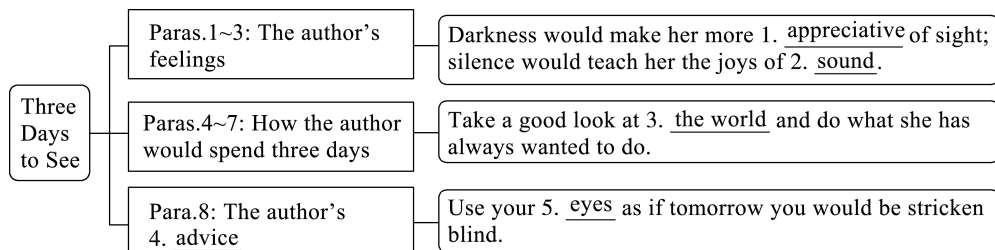
Use your eyes as if tomorrow you would be stricken blind.
要像明天即将失明一样去使用你的眼睛。

任务型课堂

Part 1 课文理解

○文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What's the author's reaction after hearing her friend's words: nothing in particular?
A. Frightened. B. Unbelievable.
C. Excited. D. Indifferent.
- How would darkness make one feel?
A. Proud of himself.
B. Grateful for scenery.
C. Worthy of hard work.
D. Pleased with health.
- Why wouldn't the author be able to sleep on the first night?
A. Because she would be disappointed.
B. Because she would be tired.

C. Because she would be excited.

D. Because she would be alone.

4. Which word cannot be used to describe the author?

- A. Determined. B. Pessimistic.
C. Optimistic. D. Positive.

答案: 1~4 BBCB

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. And I have imagined what I should most like to see if I were given the use of my eyes, say for just three days.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。what 引导宾语从句, 该从句包含 if 引导的条件状语从句, if 从句使用了虚拟语气, 表示与现在事实相反。

[尝试翻译]我想象过,如果我能被恩赐恢复视觉,哪怕只有三天,我最希望看到什么。

2. I do not know what it is to see into the heart of a friend through that “window of the soul”, the eye.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。what 引导宾语从句,并在从句中作表语;it 是形式主语,to see into... eye 是真正的主语,the eye 是“window of the soul”的同位语。

[尝试翻译]我无法理解通过“心灵的窗户”——眼睛,看透一个朋友的内心是怎样的感觉。

3. Only when darkness had again descended upon me should I realize how much I had left unseen.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。“only+状语从句”放在句首,主句用部分倒装结构。

[尝试翻译]只有当黑暗再次降临时,我才意识到,我还有那么多没有看到。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- What's the author's purpose in writing the text?
To make readers without disabilities value what they have.
- What should we do when we come across people with disabilities?
We should respect them and try to offer help to them.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. appreciative *adj.* 感激的

[教材原文] Darkness would make him more **appreciative** of sight; silence would teach him the joys of sound.

黑暗会使人更加珍惜视力;寂静能教会人享受声音的美妙。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be appreciative of 赞赏……;感激……

(2) appreciate *v.* 鉴赏;感激;意识到

appreciate + *n./pron./doing* 重视/感激……

I would appreciate it if... 假如……,我将不胜感激。

(3) appreciation *n.* 感激;欣赏;赞美

名师点拨

当 appreciate, hate, dislike, love, like, depend/rely on 等词后接宾语从句时,一般先加 it,再接宾语从句。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① There is a murmur of appreciative (appreciate) laughter.

② I appreciated being given (give) the opportunity to work in the suburb two years ago.

③ Here I sincerely express my appreciation (appreciate) for helping me find the lost suitcase.

(2) 写作微练

(2023·新课标Ⅱ卷应用文写作之建议信)如果您能考虑一下我的建议,我将不胜感激。

I would really appreciate it if you would take my suggestion into consideration.

2. embarrassed *adj.* 难堪的,尴尬的

[教材原文] I felt **embarrassed**, even though no one could see me.

尽管没人看见我,我还是觉得很尴尬。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be/feel embarrassed about/at... 对……感到难为情/不知所措

be/feel embarrassed to do sth. 对做某事感到尴尬

(2) embarrassing *adj.* 令人尴尬的,使人难堪的

(3) embarrass *v.* 使尴尬

(4) embarrassment *n.* 窘迫;尴尬

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① He was embarrassed to admit (admit) making a mistake.

② I was in the embarrassing (embarrass) position of having completely forgotten her name.

③ He could not hide his embarrassment (embarrass) at his children's rudeness.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写)让他感到尴尬的是没有人对他的问题作出回应。

① What made him embarrassed was that no one responded to his question. (embarrassed)

② It embarrassed him that no one responded to his question. (embarrass)

③ To his embarrassment, no one responded to his question. (embarrassment)

3. as if 引导方式状语从句

[教材原文] Hear the music of voices, the song of a

bird, the mighty strains of an orchestra, **as if** you would be stricken deaf tomorrow.

要像明天即将失聪一样,去仔细聆听音乐的旋律、鸟儿的歌唱、交响乐的震撼音符。

[句式分析]本句中 as if 引导方式状语从句,从句中使用了对将来时的虚拟。

[归纳拓展]

(1)as if/as though 意为“好像;似乎;仿佛”,可以引导方式状语从句或表语从句

(2)as if/as though 所引导的从句中的语气及谓语动词形式:

as if/as though	{	陈述语气(真实或极有可能发生的情况)
		虚拟语气 { 虚拟现在:动词的过去式
		(不真实或不可能发生的情况) { 虚拟过去:had+过去分词
		{ 虚拟将来:would/might/could+动词原形

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①He was still running with a smile on his face, as if nothing had happened (happen).

②Works at the exhibition really do reach out to us across the centuries as if time itself were (be) nothing.

(2)写作微练

①(读后续写之细节描写)他表现得好像一点都没有听说过这件事一样。

He acted as if he hadn't heard any of it.

②(读后续写之动作链)他闭上眼睛,张开嘴巴,伸直双腿,吊在那里,仿佛死了似的。

He closed his eyes, opened his mouth, stretched out his legs, and hung there, as if he were dead.

多义词汇 专练

1. **dawn**: A. *n.* 黎明 B. *n.* 开端

C. *v.* 开始;出现

①Peace marked a new **dawn** in the country's history. B

②We arrived in Sydney as **dawn** broke. A

③When the great day **dawned**, the first concern was the weather. C

2. **delight**: A. *n.* 高兴;愉快

B. *n.* 乐事;令人高兴的事

C. *v.* 使高兴;使愉快

①She has created a style of music that has **delighted** audiences all over the world. C

②The children squealed with **delight** when they saw the puppy. A

③Sampling the local cuisine is one of the **delights** of holidaying abroad. B

Unit 2 课后素养评价(八)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

- Our seven student guides also received many appreciative (感激的) comments from our guests.
- Rivers are a blessing (幸事) for an agricultural country.
- Heavy drinking can cause permanent (永久的) damage to the brain.
- There is more to good health than the mere (仅仅) absence of disease.
- She is drawing an outline (轮廓) of her hand in her room.
- We set off at dawn (黎明) so that we could get to the coast before lunchtime.

II. 单句语法填空

- Most people think that the film is well worthy of being seen (see).

- Despite the threat of war, people went about their business as usual.

- This can make them nervous and embarrassed (embarrass) about speaking English in public.

- Do you like any pop music in particular?

- Playing computer games is delightful (delight), but spending too much time on it may do harm.

III. 短语填空

end up; care about; give one hint to; pick up; in particular; now and then; make use of; go about; be applied to

- The man picked up the newspaper and read the passage again.
- While going about the business our manager gives

one hint to us.

3. There is a lot of free time we can make use of to do something more meaningful.
4. After graduation, he went back to the school to visit his English teacher now and then.
5. Joining the firm as a clerk, he got rapid promotion, and ended up as a manager.
6. Little did he care about his own safety, though he was in danger himself.
7. Peter was lying on the sofa doing nothing in particular.
8. It's said that the new technology will be applied to farming soon.

IV. 补全句子

1. 所有的人都把目光盯向我,这使我很尴尬。(make + 宾语 + 宾语补足语)

All the people fixed their eyes on me, which made me feel very embarrassed.

2. 直到他发现这个工作值得做,他才开始感激我们为这些孩子所做的一切。(only 引导的状语从句引起的倒装)

Only when he found the work worthy of doing did he become appreciative of what we had done for the children.

3. 这篇论文探讨了这位被称为“哲学之父”的哲学家的思想发展过程。(who 引导的定语从句)

This paper probes into the developing process of the ideas of this philosopher who is known as the “father of philosophy”.

4. 人们对待他们就好像他们是著名的演员一样。(as if)

People treated them as if they were well-known actors.

5. 黑暗笼罩着他,这让他充分意识到保护眼睛的重要性。(aware of)

Darkness closed in on him, which made him fully aware of the importance of protecting eyes.

V. 语法填空

Armenian musician Astrid Poghosyan, a 28-year-old violinist, **1. currently** (current) works as a leading assistant to the president of the Shanghai Symphony Orchestra, a celebrated orchestra in China's largest city. She takes great pride in the Chinese name she picks for **2. herself** (her), Ma Xingxing. The given name “Xingxing” literally meaning stars **3. is inspired**

(inspire) by her Armenian first name, while the surname “Ma” is taken from Ma Chao, a famous warrior from China's Three Kingdoms Period.

This summer, she has been busy making **4. preparations** (preparation) for a series of in-person and online music events and cultural exchange programmes, **5. including** (include) a music festival in Shanghai and a live-streamed international violin contest. She always puts all her energy into the programmes in **6. which** she is involved, whether they are offline **7. or** online events, as she believes that every little effort will help her realise her music-related dreams. “I believe music knows no borders, and cultural exchanges via music **8. are** (be) especially important,” she said.

“Poghosyan plays a very special role **9. in** our orchestra,” said Zhou Ping, president of the Shanghai Symphony Orchestra. “She has lived in China for a long time and is in love with Chinese culture, and she knows how **10. to use** (use) the advantage of a multicultural background in her work.”

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你的交换生朋友 John 原本打算参加学校组织的“古诗词比赛(the Classical Poetry Competition)”,但是现在因为害怕失败而打算放弃。请你写封信劝说他参加这次活动,内容包括:

1. 写信的目的;
2. 参加比赛的理由;
3. 提供可能的帮助。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;

3. 信的开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear John,

I am surprised to learn you want to give up participating in the Classical Poetry Competition, which will be held by our school.

After all, taking part in the competition is very significant. First, it provides you a chance to recite more poems and experience the charm of Chinese poetry. Second, regardless of the outcome, you will make more friends who have the same interest as you. Besides, I know you are interested in and have learned a lot about Chinese poetry and traditional Chinese

culture. I believe you can get a good result. Lastly, I will provide help for you if you need.

I hope you can consider my advice. Looking forward to your reply.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

White puffs of bread were lined up in front of me, with the sea of mayonnaise (蛋黄酱) spread over them. How many times had I done this? How many more times would I be forced to do it? My dad would soon be leaving to feed the homeless.

My father and several volunteers gathered every day in the park to feed the hungry.

Luckily, I didn't have to go there. It was enough trouble just to get everything ready. I really didn't understand why my father bothered with it. I couldn't wait for him to leave. I looked forward to a whole Saturday by myself. I planned to watch some television, talk with my friends on the phone, and maybe do some shopping during the afternoon.

It didn't take long for my plans to change and my happiness to disappear. Dad came in while I was doing the packing and stood behind me.

"I'm going to need your help today. Some of the volunteers that usually help me won't be able to make it."

"Dad, I can't help today," I said. "I have plans." He just gave me the you-should-be-ashamed-of-yourself look.

"Fine," I said angrily.

I finished packing the sandwiches and followed Dad out to the van (货车). I wanted to cry. This was going to be the worst day ever. My dad always drove the van, which also contained clothes, shoes and

small bags filled with personal items.

When we arrived at the park, people were already gathered under a tree waiting for us. We opened the back of the van and pulled out a long cafeteria table and some chairs. I put the table on one side of the van with the food on it, while my dad lined up chairs on the other side for them to sit in.

I couldn't believe so many people were there and all of them were homeless. I was surprised to learn my dad knew most of them by name. He also seemed to know what each one needed, what they had suffered and what landed them on the street.

注意: 续写词数应为 150 左右。

Then, a girl about my age caught my attention. There was dirt on her face and hair. Much to my surprise, she didn't wear shoes. She walked to me and asked in a low voice whether I had some shoes that fitted her. Staring into her blue eyes, I was unable to believe someone in this world could live such a poor life. "Let me check," I replied gently. Looking back into the van, to my excitement, I found a pair of shoes that are the right size for her. Then I handed her the shoes. "Thank you!" she cried happily, with a big smile spreading across her face. After thanking me, she put them on and ran back to the street. I felt warm inside as I watched her leave.

When everyone was gone, we loaded things back into the van. Now I understood why my father did everything he could to help the homeless. I could tell that he loved seeing their smiles of happiness. So did I. I realised I should have been thankful for everything that I have. That day, my dad taught me that there is always someone less fortunate. A difference can be made by an individual who is willing to take the opportunity to help others, even if it means sacrificing something of their own.

★ ★ ★
迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

★ Part 1 应用文写作——个人经历

○写作指导

本单元的写作任务是描写个人经历,属于叙事类记叙文。该类作文以叙述事件为主,通过完整的故事情节和生动形象的语言,使读者在享受故事的同时有所感悟。写作时要注意把记叙文的六要素:时间、地点、人物、事件的起因、经过和结果交代清楚。

○典题示例

假如你是李华,请你就自己克服恐高症(acrophobia)的过程,写一篇英语短文。要点如下:

- 1. 自己有恐高症;
- 2. 记叙一次经历;
- 3. 自己的感悟。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以 <u>一般过去时</u> 为主
人称	<u>第一人称</u>
要点	1. 自己有恐高症 2. 记叙一次经历 3. 自己的感悟

Step 2: 要点补全

- ①I had acrophobia for many years (多年来).
- ②I was afraid to climb to the high place (爬上高的地方).
- ③A few days ago, I went to climb a mountain (去爬山) with some kids.
- ④I was afraid that the kids would be in danger (处于危险中).
- ⑤Slowly, I forgot my fear of heights (恐高).
- ⑥I got to the top of (……的顶部) the mountain.

⑦I suddenly realised that (突然意识到) I had overcome my fear of heights.

⑧I think we can shift our attention (转移我们的注意力).

Step 3: 句式升级

①用 so that 连接 Step 2 中的①②句。

I had acrophobia for many years so that I was afraid to climb to the high place.

②用 when 连接 Step 2 中的⑥⑦句。

When I got to the top of the mountain, I suddenly realised that I had overcome my fear of heights.

Step 4: 连句成篇

I had acrophobia for many years so that I was afraid to climb to the high place.

A few days ago, I went to climb a mountain with some kids. I was afraid that the kids would be in danger. Slowly, I forgot my fear of heights while I was looking after the kids. Before we knew it, we reached the top of the mountain. When I got to the top of the mountain, I suddenly realised that I had overcome my fear of heights.

From this experience, I think we can shift our attention when we want to overcome some difficulties. Maybe things will have unexpected results.

○学以致用

假设你叫李华,你刚结束在加拿大的短期学习回到北京,发现自己从学校图书馆借的书忘记还了。请你根据所给要点写一篇有关此经历的英语短文。要点如下:

- 1. 你很着急;
- 2. 写信道歉,并且把书寄回;
- 3. 自己的感悟。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

Last Sunday, I returned to Beijing after a short-term study in Canada. While I was taking out my stuff, a book caught my eye. It occurred to me that the book was borrowed from the school library. A wave of anxiety flooded me.

Without delay, I wrote a letter, sincerely

expressing my apology. With the letter enclosed, I mailed the book back, hoping it would reach the school library soon.

After everything had been done, I breathed a sigh of relief. Only then did I realise that responsibility is a good quality we should value.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

Surviving Mount Rainier

Bad luck and poor timing left Kart and three climbers stuck on Mount Rainier for several long days. They faced mountain climbing's toughest tests. One man suffered altitude sickness; ice and rockfall rained down at night; cold nights in a tent that got torn left them hypothermic (体温过低的). Calmness, confidence, skill and the courage to continue up the route, despite illness and injury, likely saved their lives.

The climbers set out on a Friday, camping low on the route the first night because they were concerned about rockfall after a climber had recently died in an accident at the route's typical high camp. On Saturday, at about 10,500 feet, one of the climbers became sick from the altitude, which began to slow them down. They needed to keep moving, and they put him in the lead so he could move at a pace he was comfortable with.

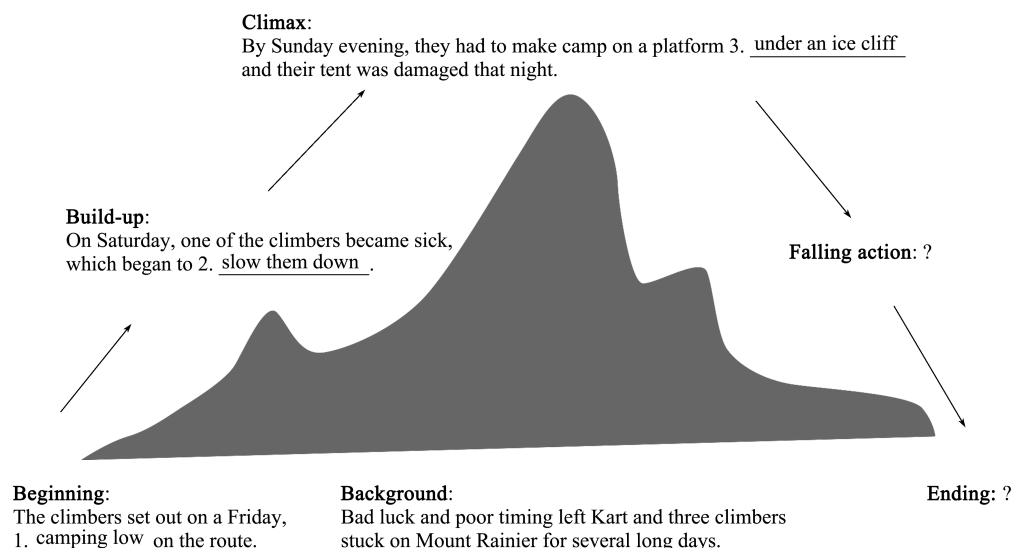
By Sunday evening, the ill climber was exhausted, and they had to make an unplanned camp on steep snow. They were in a bad place—on a platform about the size of a table under an ice cliff. The wind got stronger during the night, ripping the tent and snapping the poles. They tried to secure it by placing their packs and rocks around the edges. Finally, they just stuck their feet between the rocks and held the tent with their bodies. It was a cold night.

任务一: 阅读文章, 回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The article tells the story of Kart and three trapped climbers on Mount Rainier. The story unfolds in time order. They set out on Friday, and on Saturday, altitude sickness slowed them down, forcing them to change their camp site on a table-sized platform under an ice cliff on Sunday. The poor location of the tent and the bad weather caused severe damage to their tent, allowing them to spend a cold night.

任务二: 梳理故事情节, 完成故事山。



任务三:回答下面的问题,并根据段落开头提示语,构思、完善故事发展的情节。

Paragraph 1: On Monday, they managed to call 911 but forgot to ask how to communicate with the rangers before losing signals. _____ _____ _____ _____	1. What did they do next? <u>They stayed where they were and waited the rescue.</u> 2. How did they survive? <u>They tried every means to get food and shared a single bottle of snow melt each day.</u> 3. What difficulties did they probably face? <u>The weather was bad and it was impossible to climb down.</u>
Paragraph 2: On Wednesday, they gathered everything and decided to carry on with their climb. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. What was about their climb? <u>They climbed up slowly and carefully, resting when they were weak.</u> 2. How did their spirits become? <u>They felt scared and their spirits began to sink, and they started to doubt if they could continue.</u> 3. Could they give up? What would the result be? <u>No, they couldn't give up. They got onto the final slope to the summit and they were rescued by a helicopter.</u>

任务四:根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

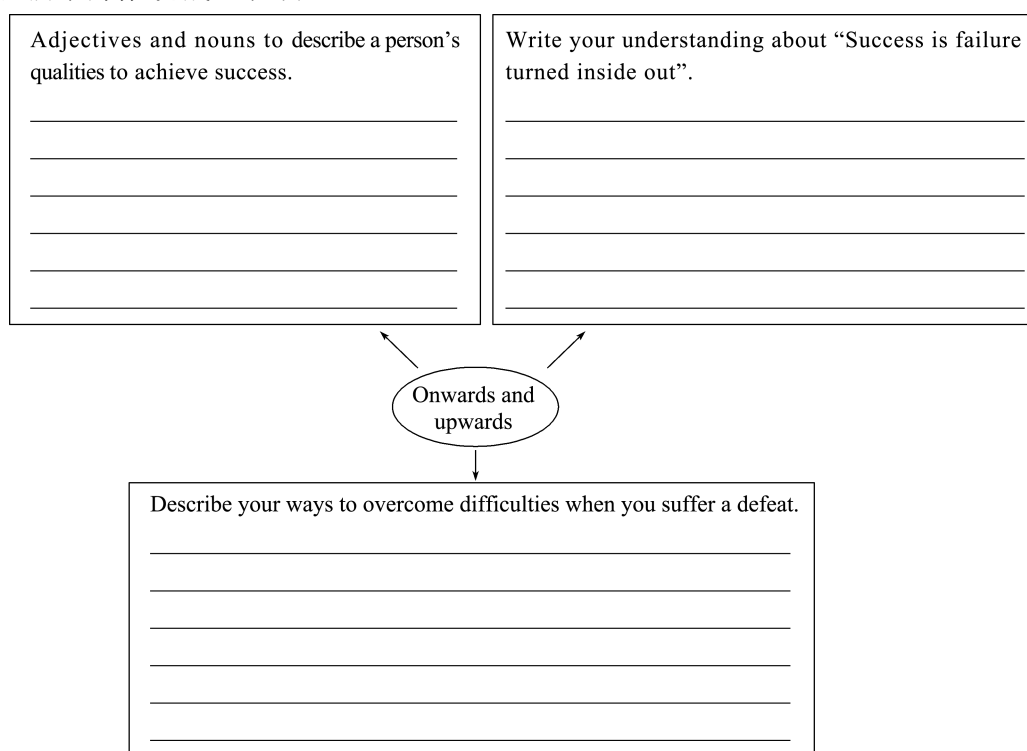
On Monday, they managed to call 911 but forgot to ask how to communicate with the rangers before losing signals. They set up what was left of the tent as best they could and stayed where they were, praying for the early arrival of their salvation. But for several days, they watched beyond all hope as high winds prevented the rangers' attempts at a helicopter rescue. Their food was running out and they shared a single bottle of snow melt each day. Then the icefall buried their tent platform and squeezed them together. It was impossible to climb down.

On Wednesday, they gathered everything and decided to carry on with their climb. They climbed up slowly and carefully, resting when they were weak. It didn't take long before the wind froze them in place. That was the scariest moment. Their spirits began to sink and they started to doubt if they could continue. Kart thought of all the people who loved him, and it really hit him that they must be worried. As he tried to climb again and again, he just kept yelling out to his friends, "We have to get there." As they got onto the final slope to the summit, the weather cleared. Suddenly, a helicopter appeared out of nowhere. They were rescued.

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容，完成思维导图。



答案：略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章，完成后面的题目。

There is a dangerous view in today's society, and it is a restriction to happiness, success, and growth. The view states that human beings are inner fragile (内在脆弱) and that the only way to be happy and successful in life is to protect oneself by avoiding misfortune.

Not only are those statements false, but the actions we take—believing them to be “protective”—also usually limit happiness and even stop personal and professional growth. Take sports as an example. Seldom do those who play the game of life not to lose ever really win.

Rather than fear and try to avoid all misfortune, perhaps we should accept the misfortune and the occasional crises in life and prepare for them. As a muscle grows stronger with stress, so can people, teams, organisations, even communities. Crisis reveals true strength.

Sports psychologists Fletcher and Sarkar have studied Olympic gold medal winners. They conclude, “Indeed, most of the participants argued that if they had not experienced certain types of stressors at specific times, including highly demanding misfortunes, they would not have won their gold medals.”

Psychologists Richard Tedeschi and Lawrence Calhoun created the term “posttraumatic growth”. They describe it as the experience of positive change that occurs as a result of highly challenging life crises. It is shown in a variety of ways, including an increased appreciation for life in general, more meaningful interpersonal relationships, an increased sense of personal strength, changed priorities, and a richer

existential and spiritual life.

The remarkable success stories that can arise after moments of great challenge and failure are countless. Thomas Edison failed thousands of times trying to create a light bulb filament (灯丝) that would light and burn in a consistent manner, but finally created the world's first practical light bulb. There are thousands of other lesser-known people, whose lives are characterised by key moments of great recovery from difficulty. Let us understand that growth arises from challenge and even failure. The myth of fragility and overprotection keeps us all from realising our full potential.

1. What does the “dangerous view” say about people?

- A. People are born shy.
- B. People are afraid of misfortune.
- C. People want wealth.
- D. People are often in need of help.

2. What is the author's opinion about misfortune?

- A. It's a must in life and the more, the better.
- B. It mostly comes from our fragile inner heart.
- C. It's often met by world famous sports stars.
- D. It should be treated with the right attitude.

3. What does the two psychologists' term imply?

- A. A failed life is not worth living at all.
- B. People need always lead a worriless life.
- C. Positive changes will occur after crises.
- D. Try not to express our opinions in public.

答案: 1~3 BDC

单元评估(二)

I. 阅读理解

A

Here are four of the late bloomers (大器晚成者) who made great achievements later in life.

Judi Dench

Although Judi Dench has been a standout in her work for theatre and TV during her entire working career, she only became a household name in her 60s. Judi received seven Oscar nominations (提名) when she was over 60. She won Best Actress in a supporting role in 1999 for *Shakespeare in Love*.

Grandma Moses

Anna Mary Robertson Moses, better known as Grandma Moses, started painting in her 70s. She decided to give painting a go when she could no

longer hold an embroidery needle (刺绣针) due to her illness. Her works were spotted by an art collector, who bought all her paintings and displayed them at the Museum of Modern Art in New York City.

James Parkinson

At the age of 62, James Parkinson identified Parkinson's disease (帕金森病). His *An Essay on the Shaking Palsy* led to our general understanding of the disease today. Although others had previously written about shaking palsy, Parkinson's descriptions were so in-depth that he inspired other medical scientists to study it.

Kathryn Joosten

Kathryn was a nurse and mum, but after her

marriage failed she made up her mind to pursue her dream of being an actress. Close to the age of 60, she threw herself into the industry and achieved success. Since then she has appeared on TV shows. She has also won two Emmy Awards.

【语篇解读】文章介绍了四位大器晚成的人,说明年龄不是通向成功的障碍。

1. Who is the oldest when he/she achieved success?

- A. Kathryn Joosten.
- B. James Parkinson.
- C. Grandma Moses.
- D. Judi Dench.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Grandma Moses** 中的 “Anna Mary Robertson Moses, better known as Grandma Moses, started painting in her 70s.” 并对照其他三人成功时的年龄可知,他们成功时, Grandma Moses 是最年长的。故选 C。

2. What do we know about Kathryn Joosten?

- A. She became an actress after retiring.
- B. She was a well-known nurse at the age of 60.
- C. She gave up her dream for her broken marriage.
- D. She decided to act after her failed marriage.

D 细节理解题。根据 **Kathryn Joosten** 中的 “Kathryn was a nurse and mum, but after her marriage failed she made up her mind to pursue her dream of being an actress.” 可知, Kathryn Joosten 在婚姻失败后决定去当演员。故选 D。

3. What can we conclude from the stories of the four people?

- A. Old people are more likely to succeed.
- B. One is never too old to learn.
- C. Chances favour only the prepared mind.
- D. Age is no barrier to success.

D 推理判断题。通读全文,根据第一段的内容可知,本文介绍了四位大器晚成的人,说明年龄不是成功的障碍。故选 D。

B

Accompanied by her father, using a combination of aid and free climbing and taking advantage of some special equipment and ropes for protection, 10-year-old Selah made it to the top of El Capitan on June 12, 2019 after five days of big wall climbing.

Climbing the challenging and adventurous Nose

route of El Capitan was a labour of love for Selah in more than one way. Her parents, Mike and Joy Schneiter, fell in love with this 3,000-plus-foot huge rock and she has always wanted to feel the way that her parents felt when they were up there together. Selah showed great interest in rock climbing at an early age. She wore her first rock-climbing equipment shortly after she learned to walk. She first dreamed of climbing El Capitan when she was 6 or 7.

El Capitan is a famous mountain-sized rock in Yosemite National Park. Getting to its top is no easy task. It's taller, as reported, than the tallest building in the world—Dubai's Burj Khalifa. El Capitan with its difficult Nose route, which runs more than 3,000 feet high up the centre of the rock's face, is considered one of the world's hardest big wall climbs and has attracted the best climbers over time. But never before had a youngster accomplished it.

Selah's achievement caught national attention. *Outside Magazine* called her the youngest documented person to climb the Nose. Ken Yager, president of the Yosemite Climbing Association, said he also couldn't think of anyone younger who has done it.

Selah is humble about her El Capitan accomplishment. “I'm not necessarily a special kid or anything like that,” she said. “There were a few times when I would be so worn that it would kind of discourage me from holding on. But overall, it was just great to keep plugging away.”

Selah shared this advice for other young climbers dreaming of big walls, “It doesn't take necessarily a super special person to do something like that. You just have to put your mind to it.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 10 岁的 Selah 在父亲的陪同下,借助一些特殊设备和绳索的保护,在爬了 5 天的高墙后,于 2019 年 6 月 12 日登上了埃尔卡皮坦山顶的故事。

4. What do we learn about Selah climbing El Capitan?

- A. She began her climbing on June 5.
- B. She got inspired by her family history.
- C. She managed without any external help.
- D. She was the first female to reach the top.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Her parents, Mike and Joy Schneiter, fell in love with this 3,000-plus-foot huge rock and she has always wanted to feel the way that her parents felt when they were up there together.”可知,Selah 从她的家族史中受到启发。故选 B。

5. What is the purpose of Paragraph 3?

- A. To state El Capitan's height.
- B. To prove El Capitan's popularity.
- C. To introduce El Capitan's location.
- D. To stress the challenge of climbing El Capitan.

D 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“El Capitan with its difficult Nose route, which runs more than 3,000 feet high up the centre of the rock's face, is considered one of the world's hardest big wall climbs and has attracted the best climbers over time. But never before had a youngster accomplished it.”可推知,攀登埃尔卡皮坦是十分艰难的。故选 D。

6. Which of the following best describes Selah?

- A. Determined. B. Generous.
- C. Warm-hearted. D. Fortunate.

A 推理判断题。根据第五段中的“‘There were a few times when I would be so worn that it would kind of discourage me from holding on. But overall, it was just great to keep plugging away.’”可推知,Selah 是一个有决心的人。故选 A。

7. What may be Selah's advice for other young climbers?

- A. Dream big and aim high.
- B. Be committed to your ambition.
- C. Chance favours the prepared mind.
- D. Nothing is impossible for a genius.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“‘It doesn't take necessarily a super special person to do something like that. You just have to put your mind to it.’”可知,Selah 对年轻人的建议是忠诚于自己的雄心抱负。故选 B。

C

Hard work really does pay off. Scientists find that perseverance (坚持不懈) leads to better grades and higher achievements in school.

“Being passionate (热情的) is not enough to ensure academic success,” say researchers, who thought of “courage” as a key to success. This is

also regarded as effort in reaching long-term goals, and determination to continue one's efforts in spite of hardships.

Researchers think that the finding could help create new training to help children develop the skill and help ensure their future success.

Researchers from the Academy of Finland studied more than 2,000 students from Helsinki. They were followed through their academic career from 12 to 16, the sixth grade until the ninth grade in local school years. Researchers found that the factor that best predicts courage was related to goals, with previous academic achievements playing no role in developing the skill.

Professor Katariina Salmela-Aro, who led the study, said, “Courage means a young person is really interested in his or her studies and does not give up easily. A key element of courage is high perseverance when facing difficulties and hardships. The important finding is that these factors are the key to success and well-being. Our study shows the power of courage.”

Professor Salmela-Aro also thinks it is important to develop new practices and qualities to improve courage in teenagers. She added, “Young people should see everyday school work as part of their life in a broader context and establish achievable goals for themselves. Schools must also serve as a place where it is safe to fail and learn to deal with setbacks. One must not be discouraged by setbacks, but draw strength and new energy from them!”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。科学家们发现,坚持不懈会使学生在校取得更好的成绩和更高的成就。

8. What can we learn about the research?

- A. It takes at least three years.
- B. It helps students make progress.
- C. It meets many difficulties.
- D. It follows 2,000 students abroad.

A 细节理解题。根据第四段第二句可知,这项研究至少需要花费三年时间。故选 A。

9. What should students do according to the researchers?

- A. Focus on former grades.
- B. Achieve their dreams.
- C. Try all their best.

D. Forget sadness.

C 推理判断题。根据倒数第二段中的“Courage means... is high perseverance when facing difficulties and hardships.”可知,根据这项研究,学生应该在面对困难时坚持不懈。由此推断,学生应该全力以赴,不要放弃。故选 C。

10. What does the underlined word “setbacks” in the last paragraph mean?

- A. Strengths. B. Difficulties.
C. Weaknesses. D. Efforts.

B 词义猜测题。根据最后一段最后两句可推知, setbacks 是必须面对的,与失败并列,从 setbacks 中能够汲取力量和活力。根据上下文含义并结合选项分析可知,此处 setbacks 的意思为“挫折、困难”,与 difficulties 含义相同。故选 B。

11. Where is the passage probably taken from?

- A. A picture book.
B. A literature book.
C. A geography textbook.
D. An educational magazine.

D 文章出处题。通读全文可知,文章主要介绍了科学家们发现,坚持不懈会使学生在学校取得更好的成绩和更高的成就,由此推断文章可能来自教育杂志。故选 D。

D

I was reading a book while my son watched an old comedy show on TV. Suddenly, I heard someone yell: “Go to your happy place!” These words made me put my book down and ponder all the happy places I have had over the years.

When I was a little boy, my happy place was my mum’s lap while we shared a freshly-made bowl of popcorn. When I was in primary school, my happy place was a tree in the woods where I could sit and watch the leaves turn golden and red in the fall. When I was a teenager, my happy place was my bedroom where I could lie on my bed and listen for hours to my favourite songs on the radio. As a young man, my happy place was an old rocking chair where I could hold my newborn babies in my arms and gently rock them to sleep.

As I got older, though, I realised that the very best happy place of all was deep down within my own soul. It was there that I realised just how much I was loved. It was there that I saw I could love too.

It was there that I learned my happiness was in my own hands and that I could create it, one loving choice at a time.

When you have your own soul as your happy place, then your happy place is wherever you decide to go. When your happy place lives in your heart, then you get to give it to everyone you meet. When your happy place is the very life you live, then you make the world around you a happier place as well. Create your own happy place then. Fill your heart with love. Fill your soul with kindness. Fill your days with joy. Take this glorious gift of life you have been given and live it, one loving choice at a time.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章中作者阐述了自己对于“幸福之地”的理解。

12. What does the underlined word “ponder” in Paragraph 1 mean?

- A. Call at. B. Leave for.
C. Think about. D. Search for.

C 词义猜测题。根据第二段的内容可知,作者回忆了从小时候到现在自己的“幸福之地”。结合画线词所在句可推知,画线词 ponder 指“思考;回忆”,与“think about”表达的意义相同。故选 C。

13. What can we learn about the author’s happy place?

- A. It differed as he grew.
B. It was in others’ hands.
C. It didn’t lie in the depth of his soul.
D. It wasn’t shaped by his surroundings.

A 推理判断题。根据第二段的内容可知,随着年龄的增长,作者的“幸福之地”在变化。故选 A。

14. According to the author, what influences one’s happy place most?

- A. Attitude.
B. Creativity.
C. Kindness.
D. The environment.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段前三句可知,“幸福之地”随着看待角度的不同而变化,即个人的态度影响着“幸福之地”的定义。故选 A。

15. What is the author’s purpose in writing the passage?

- A. To suggest ways to find happy places.

- B. To share his own growing experience.
- C. To stress the importance of happy places.
- D. To illustrate his understanding of happy places.

D 写作意图题。通读全文,尤其是最后一段前三句可知,作者阐述了自己对于“幸福之地”的理解。故选D。

II. 七选五

If you've ever been in a cheerful mood, then met up with a bad-tempered friend, you'll know how infectious emotions can be. Before you know it, you realise that you're feeling down too. 16 When you've been sad, perhaps your friend's liveliness has helped to lighten your mood.

You might wonder who wins out—if you're feeling happy and your friend is feeling sad, do you yield to their sadness or do they catch your happiness? Part of the answer is likely depending on their and your levels of expressiveness and receptiveness.

17 If you smile a lot when you're happy, you're more likely to infect your friend. Likewise, if your friend is impressionable and more prone (有做……倾向的) to copying facial expressions, then they'll be more likely to catch your smiles and start feeling happier.

18 For instance, there's evidence that fear has a smell, and that smelling the sweat of an anxious person can initiate activity in parts of the brain involved in empathy (共情) and processing emotions. In fact, there doesn't need to be any physical contact at all. Researchers have shown that emotions can spread through social media. 19

If and when you encounter an opposite emotion to your own, the experience will likely vary depending on how invested you are in that other person or people. 20 And if you're feeling sad and a bunch of strangers surrounding you were laughing their heads off, you're likely to find it really annoying.

- A. Happily, it can work the other way around too.
- B. This is especially true when we're interacting with someone we care about.
- C. Everyone varies in how emotionally expressive and impressionable they are.
- D. That isn't to say that facial expressions are the

only way for emotions to spread.

- E. These processes have to do with effective communication and mutual understanding.
- F. If you care about them, you'll be more motivated to shift emotionally to match their state.
- G. People exposed to more negative posts are more likely to post something negative themselves.

答案:16~20 ACDGF

III. 完形填空

Nevins had his legs seriously injured in a war. He had 36 operations, had both legs amputated (截掉), and spent several years going to Walter Reed Amy Medical Centre.

The years left him 21 and restless. He was often woken up by bad dreams. He knew he needed 22. To find a way out, he called a friend, Anna Dennis. She told him, “You 23 yoga (瑜伽) in your life.” At first, Nevins laughed at the 24. “That's the stupidest thing I've heard,” Nevins said. But he decided to have a 25.

A yoga instructor, Dennis offered to give him three 26. At his first lesson, he found himself feeling 27 because of his artificial legs. It was painful to balance, and he was angry 28 she kept telling him to press his feet into the ground.

Finally he told her, “29 saying that word! I don't have any feet!” And then, he 30 his artificial legs and threw them aside, a big move because he was 31 for people to see him without them—only his doctors had seen him like that.

“I raised my arms, and it felt as though life was shooting out of my hands. I became a 32 person,” he said.

When the day was over, he couldn't 33 his next lesson. Following what began as a 34 exercise, yoga finally became Nevins's saving grace (可取之处).

Nevins 35 others to find yoga. “All of us are living with wounds,” he said. “Yoga helps you to let go of the things that don't serve you any more.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了一名士兵在战争中失去了双腿,心理也受到创伤。后来,他通过练习瑜伽重拾对生活的信心。

21. A. worried B. proud
C. careless D. moved

A 根据第一段中 Nevins 的不幸遭遇和本句中的“restless”以及下文中的“He was often woken up by bad dreams.”可知, Nevins 很焦虑(worried)。

22. A. praise B. work
C. help D. sleep

C 根据上文的描述以及下文中的“To find a way out, he called a friend”可知, Nevins 需要他人的帮助(help)。

23. A. expect B. need
C. miss D. continue

B 根据语境可推断, Nevins 的朋友说他需要(need)练习瑜伽。

24. A. advice B. decision
C. warming D. result

A 根据下文中的“the stupidest thing”可知, 他觉得朋友的建议(advice)很可笑。

25. A. rest B. job
C. dream D. try

D 根据本句中的“But”以及下文的描述可知, Nevins 决定试试(try)瑜伽。

26. A. suggestions B. choices
C. lessons D. chances

C 下文中的“At his first lesson”和“his next lesson”是提示。

27. A. pleased B. sad
C. surprised D. impolite

B 根据下文中的“It was painful to balance, and he was angry”可知, Nevins 刚开始练瑜伽时感到很沮丧(sad)。

28. A. so B. if
C. though D. because

D “she kept telling him to press his feet into the ground”与“he was angry”之间是因果关系, 故填 because。

29. A. Mind B. Stop
C. Regret D. Consider

B 根据上文中的“he was angry”以及下文中的“I don't have any feet!”可知, 此处表示 Nevins 让瑜伽教练不要(Stop)再说那个字。

30. A. put on B. showed off
C. picked up D. took off

D 根据上文中的“I don't have any feet!”以及本句中的“threw them aside”可推断, Nevins 脱掉(took off)了自己的假肢。

31. A. afraid B. ready
C. happy D. bored

A 根据本句中的“only his doctors had seen him like that”可知, 对 Nevins 来说, 脱掉自己的假肢是个勇敢的举动, 因为他一直害怕(afraid)别人看到自己不戴假肢时的样子。

32. A. popular B. real
C. serious D. new

D 根据上文中的“it felt as though life was shooting out of my hands”可知, 瑜伽让 Nevins 重拾对生活的信心, 仿佛重获新(new)生。

33. A. learn from B. attend
C. wait for D. give

C 根据下文的描述可知, 在第一节瑜伽课结束时, Nevins 迫不及待(couldn't wait for)想上下一节课。

34. A. simple B. different
C. similar D. difficult

D 根据上文中的“At his first lesson, he found himself feeling 27 because of his artificial legs. It was painful to balance”可知, 最初练习瑜伽对 Nevins 来说是很困难的(difficult)一件事。

35. A. required B. encouraged
C. forced D. allowed

B 根据下文中的“Yoga helps you to let go of the things that don't serve you any more.”可知, Nevins 鼓励(encouraged)大家练习瑜伽。

IV. 语法填空

Humans have always looked up at the stars and wanted to learn more about space. **36. Determined** (determine) to find out the secrets of the universe, scientists work hard to make vehicles to carry people into space.

In the mid-20th century, rockets that were **37. powerful** (power) enough to overcome Earth's gravity were developed, making space exploration **38. a** reality. In 1961, Yuri Gagarin became the first human **39. to travel** (travel) into space. Although China's space programmes started later than those of Russia and the US, it has made great progress in a short time. In 2003, Yang Liwei **40. successfully** (success) orbited Earth in the Shenzhou V spacecraft, **41. which** made China the third country in the world that independently sent humans into space. More recently, China **42. has made** (make)

history by landing *Chang'e 4* on the far side of the moon. However, accidents that resulted **43.** in the deaths of the astronauts happened before despite scientists' efforts to make sure nothing went wrong. **44.** But the desire to explore space never faded away. Europe, the US, and China all have plans to explore **45.** planets (planet) like Mars and Jupiter. So the future of space exploration remains bright.

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华, 你的英国朋友 Tom 看到你在社交软件上分享了学校最近举行的主题为“建造绿色家园”的植树活动, 发邮件向你询问有关情况。请你用英语回复邮件, 内容包括:

1. 活动情况简介;
2. 活动的意义。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节, 以使行文连贯。

Dear Tom,

I'm delighted to learn that you are interested in our tree-planting activity.

The activity is held annually with different themes. This year's theme is "Building a green home". The activity was held on March 12, our National Tree Planting Day. Early in the morning, all the teachers and students gathered on the West Hill, where we spent the whole morning digging holes, planting trees and watering trees.

Undoubtedly, we benefit a lot from the activity, which not only brings us the pleasure of labour but also helps us to develop team spirit. Hopefully you can join us next year.

Yours,
Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

My efforts to learn, read, write and speak English have been a significant challenge in my life. When I first came to the United States from Hong Kong, China about 12 years ago, I could barely communicate in English. Today, although I still have much to learn, I realise I have made a good amount of progress in my years abroad.

I grew up in a small village in China, where no one I knew spoke English. I wasn't exposed to English or any other language through books,

magazines or TV. Only when I later went to study in Hong Kong was I exposed to American and Western cultures through movies, music and other media. Although English is common in Hong Kong due to its history, I still couldn't speak, read or write much after graduating from high school.

In my early 20s, I decided to move to New York City and I was determined to make a new life for myself there. However, I didn't want to end up speaking my native language because I knew that learning English was very important if I wanted to be successful in this new country. New York seemed like another world and without speaking much English it was even more difficult to make friends.

I didn't have a teacher at first, so I tried every way I could to learn the language. One way that was very useful was listening to the radio and watching TV, mostly news. I tried to speak like the people I heard on TV. They spoke more clearly and it was easier to understand than the English I heard people speaking in my neighbourhood. I picked up one word at a time, and looked them up in the dictionary. I would also try to write down the words and remember them. I made a goal of learning at least 20 new words every day.

注意: 续写词数应为 150 左右。

After a while I made friends. They were another way I learned English. I would pick up a lot of cool expressions just from spending time with them and listening to them speak. My friends were patient with me and helped me a lot, but I often became discouraged. Seeing I gave up speaking English, they tried to encourage me to speak out. They often invited me to their parties where I was surrounded by the English atmosphere and I was forced to communicate with them in English.

Looking back on the ways I have learned English over the years, I have something to say. It is clear that I am a visual learner—I learn by seeing and looking. I had the most success when reading and using written materials. I enjoyed reading books, newspapers and magazines. Of course, it is also very important to be able to speak and listen. So, I spent lots of time trying to develop these skills, like getting involved in social activities with friends. Therefore, if I could become more and more fluent, so can you!

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, whose topic is the field of sports competitions. Everyone can realise the sporting spirit of “faster, higher and stronger” through their own efforts and strong team spirit. This unit, from different angles, introduces the outstanding athletes or sports teams, including Xu Haifeng, Wayne Gretzky, Yelena Isinbayeva, Stephen Curry, Chinese women’s volleyball team, etc., and tells how they won the games with the spirit of never giving up, unremitting efforts, iron willpower and united team strength, going beyond self to achieve success. Through the study of this unit, students can set higher goals for themselves, and achieve their goals through their own efforts.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	在表达中能正确使用与“运动竞技”主题相关的单词和表达。
		语法	学习动词-ing 形式作主语的用法,学会在写作中正确使用此用法。
		语篇	1. 能围绕本单元的主题语境内容,基于其所提供的人物介绍、新闻报道、语音信息等多模态语篇,综合运用各种语言技能; 2. 能运用本单元所学内容,通过比较、分析,准确获取语篇中与体育精神相关的信息并在此基础上联系自身实际,思考这些体育精神对自己的启发。
		语用	能组织一场趣味运动会,实现知识与思维能力的拓展和迁移,树立不畏艰难、团结协作、不断超越的体育精神。
	语言技能	听	能听懂与体育运动相关的话题,并理解其大意,把握关键细节信息。
		说	能恰当使用所学词汇、句型就与体育运动相关的话题进行讨论,并表达观点。
		读	能读懂与体育运动相关的语篇内容,了解中外优秀运动员的经历和事迹,感知他们的精神品质,深化对本单元主题意义的理解。
		写	能通过描述体育赛事场景,恰当使用所学词汇与表达介绍运动员及其精神品质。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	能通过运用各种学习策略,在自主学习、合作学习与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,激发学习英语的兴趣,提高自己的理解能力和表达能力,最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。
文化意识	了解中外杰出运动员和运动团队,了解他们是如何凭借永不放弃的信念、坚持不懈的努力、钢铁般的意志和团结一致的内聚力赢得比赛、超越自我、走向成功的。
思维品质	能通过比较、分析,准确获取语篇中与体育精神相关的信息,并在此基础上联系自身实际,思考这些体育精神对自己的启发,树立不畏艰难、团结协作、不断超越的体育精神,实现知识与思维能力的拓展和迁移。

◊ 必备知识

必背 单词	association, muddy, shot, bounce, sharpen, teammate, footstep, expectation, philosophy, cheat, remarkable, net, vivid, assign, opponent, surgery, defeat, steely, seize, cooperation, tournament, intense
重点 表达	a far cry from, in all directions, give way, aim at, day in and day out, follow in one's footsteps, carry on, give up, end up, beyond one's expectations, in a row, set out, attach... to..., burst onto, pay off, contribute to, key to, fight one's way, ups and downs
重点 知识	1. 强调句型 2. 不定式作定语 3. “go+形容词”结构
单元 语法	动词-ing 形式作主语
单元 写作	运动记事

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Preliminarily understand the world's three major sports events.
2. Understand the life stories of the three athletes, and learn the sportsmanship from them.
3. Discuss the enlightenment and influence that sports stars bring, understand the knowledge related to sports, and perceive the sportsmanship reflected in the athletes.
4. Guess the content of the text and the writer's intention, based on the title.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. shiny *adj.* 光滑发亮的, 闪光的
2. association *n.* 协会, 社团
3. sharpen *v.* 使提高, 使改进
4. footstep *n.* 脚步声; 足迹
5. expectation *n.* 预料, 预期
6. self-belief *n.* 自信
7. philosophy *n.* 人生哲学
8. shot *n.* 投篮, 射门, 击球
9. follow in one's footsteps 仿效某人; 继承某人(尤指家人)的事业
10. carry on 继续; 坚持
11. attach... to 依附, 附属; 把……贴(系, 粘)在……上
12. give way 倒塌, 向下垮
13. beyond one's expectations 超出某人的预期

14. in a row 连续地

15. set out 打算; 开始; 出发; 阐述; 说明

16. a far cry from 与……大不相同

17. end up 结果为……, 以……结束

18. aim at 瞄准; 目的在于

(二)阅读词汇

1. hoop *n.* (篮球中的)篮圈

2. backboard *n.* 篮板

3. bump *n.* 隆起之处

4. teammate *n.* 队友

5. warrior *n.* 武士, 战士

6. muddy *adj.* 沾满泥的, 泥泞的

7. bounce *v.* (使)弹起, (使)反弹

8. sharpen one's skills 磨炼/提高某人的技能

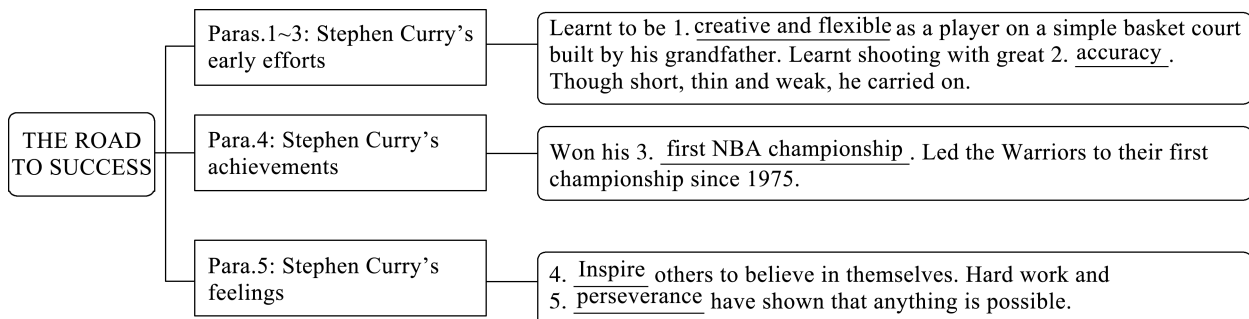
9. living proof 活生生的例子

10. day in and day out 夜以继日地

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- What's the purpose of the text?
 - To tell people why Stephen Curry was doubted by many people.
 - To inform people of Stephen Curry's basketball skills.
 - To inspire people with Stephen Curry's determination to succeed.
 - To tell people how Stephen Curry became successful.
- When Stephen was young, where did he play basketball?
 - In a big stadium.
 - On the playground of his school.
 - On a muddy basketball court.
 - On a shiny basketball court.
- What's Stephen's reaction towards people's doubts?
 - He didn't give up and pursued his dream.
 - He ignored their words totally.
 - He was very disappointed.
 - He hoped to get their support.
- What does Stephen mean by saying "What I wanted to do was just be myself"?
 - You needn't care about others at all.
 - Work hard and never give up, and you will succeed.
 - You should take others' advice as much as possible.
 - Each one should experience some difficulties before achieving success.

答案: 1~4 CCAB

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- Knowing where the ball would go wasn't easy.
[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。Knowing where the ball would go 是动词-ing形式短语作主语。where the ball would go 为 where 引导的宾语从句。
[尝试翻译]能判断球反弹的方向并不容易。
- What I wanted to do was just be myself... I know it inspires a lot of the next generation, a lot of people who love the game of basketball to value the skill of it, value the fact that you can work every single day to get better.
[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。What 引导主语从句,并在从句中作宾语;who 引导定语从句,修饰先行词 people;that 引导同位语从句,具体解释 fact 的内容,只起连接作用。
[尝试翻译]我只想做我自己……我知道这激励着很多后辈、很多热爱篮球比赛的人,让他们认识到技术的重要性,认识到人可以通过每天不断的努力而变得更好。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- What kind of person do you think Stephen was?
Confident, hard-working and determined.
- Can you think of any other famous basketball players? Which of their qualities inspires you?
Michael Jordan. He is definitely one of the most motivated and persistent players. (回答合理即可)

Unit 3 课后素养评价 (九)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

During World War II, William Powell served in Europe as a soldier in the US Army. Golf was his hobby. He played at some of the most popular courses in Scotland. However, upon his return home, William Powell was discouraged to find that he wasn't allowed to play golf at local courses because he was an African American. William Powell took a unique approach to solving his problem. He built his own golf course.

William Powell began the construction of the Clearview Golf Course in 1946. He moved rocks and spread grass seeds to build a golf course in Canton, Ohio. He convinced two African American doctors

to invest in the course and continued to build it for the next year and a half. William Powell built it without the help of a designer. He did it while working at night as a security guard. In 1948, the Clearview Golf Course opened, and the business is still popular today.

In 1967, William Powell's daughter, Renee, became a professional golfer on the Ladies Professional Golf Association (LPGA) tour. Now, she serves as Head Professional at her father's golf course. In 2001, the Clearview Golf Course was one of the 15 golf courses listed on the National Register of Historic Places. It's the only course owned, built, designed and run by African Americans. The Clearview

Golf Course not only serves as a challenge to experienced golfers, but also provides an enjoyable round for those players who are new to the game.

In 2009, the Professional Golfers' Association of America (PGA of America) honoured William Powell with a Distinguished Service Award. William Powell, who was 92 years old, accepted the award politely. "I have had so many special things happen to me, because the golf sees no colour," he said.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章按照时间顺序,介绍了 William Powell 对高尔夫球的卓越贡献。

1. Why was William Powell refused to play golf at local courses?

- A. He was a bad golfer.
- B. He was a black man.
- C. He was a retired soldier.
- D. He was a poor guard.

B 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“that he wasn't allowed to play golf at local courses because he was an African American”可知, William Powell 不被允许在当地的高尔夫球场打球,是因为他是非裔美国人(黑人)。故选 B。

2. Which one is RIGHT about the Clearview Golf Course?

- A. It was built with the help of a designer.
- B. It was built during World War II.
- C. It was invested in by two doctors.
- D. It only serves experienced golfers.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“He convinced two African American doctors to invest in the course”可知, William Powell 建造 Clearview Golf Course 获得了两位医生的投资支持。故选 C。

3. What can we learn about William Powell from the passage?

- A. He died at the age of 92.
- B. His contribution to golf is recognised.
- C. He built a golf course for black people only.
- D. He was a native American.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“In 2009, the Professional Golfers' Association of America (PGA of America) honoured William Powell with a Distinguished Service Award.”可知, William Powell 对高尔夫球的贡献是有目共睹的。故选 B。

4. How is the passage mainly developed?

- A. By time order.
- B. By comparing facts.
- C. By space order.
- D. By providing examples.

A 推理判断题。根据文中的“During World War II” “in 1946” “In 1948” “In 1967” “In 2001” “In 2009”等时间信息可知,文章是通过时间顺序展开

的。故选 A。

II. 七选五

Workout fads (狂热) come and go, but virtually no other exercise programme is as lasting as yoga (瑜伽). It originated from India and it's been around for more than 5,000 years. 1

2 Yoga does more than burn calories and tone muscles. It's a total mind-body workout that combines strengthening and stretching poses with deep breathing and meditation or relaxation. Research shows yoga can help manage stress, improve the mood, and enhance the quality of sleep. In addition, yoga has been shown to increase flexibility, improve balance and increase strength.

3 All these types, from the peaceful hatha to the high-intensity power yoga, take your workout to a level of mind-body connection.

People of all ages and fitness levels can do the most basic yoga poses and stretches. You can do yoga anywhere, indoors or out. You'll need to use a yoga mat to keep you from sliding around in standing poses, and to cushion you while in seated and lying positions. 4 It includes a yoga ball for balance, a yoga block or two, and straps to help you reach for your feet or link your hands behind your back.

Even though there are many instructional books and videos on yoga, it is well worth investing in some classes with a good instructor who can show you how to do the postures. But if you don't live near a studio, or you're the on-the-go type who struggles to make time for a regular class, doing yoga at home can help you fit the practice into your life. 5 Simply choose the time and the length of the session that works for you, and get your “om” on at home.

- A. Yoga is a great way to strengthen your body.
- B. Other optional equipment may also be needed.
- C. There are more than 100 different forms of yoga.
- D. Now it is a popular practice throughout the world.
- E. Therefore, yoga facilities are necessities for your exercise.
- F. Yoga has long been praised for its physical and spiritual benefits.
- G. You don't have to wait for a specific class time or commit to a class.

答案: 1~5 DFCBG

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—
Language points

学习任务目标

- 1. Identify the structure and type of the text, and master the writing and language features of news reports.
- 2. Master the language points by sentence analysis and apply them to writing.
- 3. Learn from Stephen’s experience and realise that the road to success isn’t easy and that we should fight for dreams.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- 1. The heavy rain made the streets so **muddy** that people, horses, and carts got stuck. 泥泞的
- 2. Taylor scored with a low **shot** into the corner of the net. 射球
- 3. The ball **bounced** twice before he could reach it. 弹起

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>shiny</u> <i>adj.</i> 光滑发亮的, 闪光的	shine <i>v.</i> 发光, 发亮 <i>n.</i> 光亮, 光泽
<u>association</u> <i>n.</i> 协会, 社团	associate <i>v.</i> 联想; 联系
	associative <i>adj.</i> 有关联的; 相关的; 有联系的
<u>sharpen</u> <i>v.</i> 使提高, 使改进	sharp <i>adj.</i> 锋利的, 锐利的; 尖的
	sharply <i>adv.</i> 尖刻地; 严厉地; 猛烈地
<u>expectation</u> <i>n.</i> 预料, 预期	expect <i>v.</i> 预料, 预期; 期待, 期望
	expected <i>adj.</i> 预料的, 预期的
<u>philosophy</u> <i>n.</i> 人生哲学	philosopher <i>n.</i> 哲学家
	philosophical/philosophic <i>adj.</i> 哲学的; 达观的

III. 补全短语

- 1. a far cry from 与……大不相同
- 2. attach... to... 依附, 附属; 把……贴(系, 粘)

在……上

- 3. follow in one’s footsteps 仿效某人; 继承某人(尤指家人)的事业
- 4. day in and day out 夜以继日地
- 5. carry on 继续; 坚持
- 6. beyond one’s expectations 超出某人的预期
- 7. end up 结果为……, 以……结束
- 8. aim at 瞄准; 目的在于
- 9. in a row 连续地
- 10. set out 打算; 开始; 出发; 阐述, 说明
- 11. give way 倒塌, 向下垮

IV. 补全句子

- 1. 句型公式: 强调句型
... it was along this road that Stephen’s grandfather built a simple basket by attaching a piece of plastic to a telephone pole.
……正是在这条路上, 斯蒂芬的祖父在电线杆上贴了一块塑料, 做成了一个简易的篮筐。
- 2. 句型公式: 动词-ing 形式作主语
Knowing where the ball would go wasn’t easy.
能判断球反弹的方向并不容易。
- 3. 句型公式: “too... to...” 结构
Despite his father’s successful career, Stephen was thought by many people, including his high school teammates and coaches, to be too short, too thin and too weak to follow in his father’s footsteps.
尽管父亲的职业生涯很成功, 但是斯蒂芬的高中队友和教练等很多人都认为他太矮、太瘦弱, 无法延续他父亲的荣耀。

任务型课堂

1. association *n.* 协会, 社团

[教材原文] A far cry from the bright lights and shiny courts of the National Basketball **Association** (NBA), it was along this road that Stephen’s grandfather built a simple basket by attaching a

piece of plastic to a telephone pole.
这与美国职业篮球联赛(NBA)赛场上明亮的灯光和闪亮的球场相去甚远。正是在这条路上, 斯蒂芬的祖父在电线杆上贴了一块塑料, 做成了一个简易的篮筐。

[归纳拓展]

(1) in association with 与……联合/合作;(事物)与……在一起

(2) associate *v.* 联想;联系

associate... with... 把……和……联系起来

(3) associated *adj.* 有关联的;相关的;有联系的

be associated with 与……有关

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① (2023·浙江1月卷) Thanks to Beijing's long history as the capital of China, almost every hutong has its stories, and some are even associated with historic events.

② (2023·全国乙卷听力) Once in a while I meet friends there and I spend a lot of time organizing activities in different clubs or associations (associate).

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之个人观点) 如果总把幸福和有钱联想到一起, 你就不会得到真正的幸福。

If you always associate happiness with richness, you will not get true happiness.

2. attach... to... 依附, 附属; 把……贴(系, 粘)在……上

[教材原文]... it was along this road that Stephen's grandfather built a simple basket by **attaching** a piece of plastic **to** a telephone pole.

……正是在这条路上, 斯蒂芬的祖父在电线杆上贴了一块塑料, 做成了一个简易的篮筐。

[归纳拓展]

(1) attach importance/significance to... 重视, 认为……重要/有意义

(2) attached *adj.* 依恋的; 附属的

be attached to... 依恋; 爱慕; 附属的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① On receiving a box of chocolates with a card attached to it, saying "Happy birthday!", she jumped with great joy.

② After graduation, he has been working in a hospital attached (attach) to the medical college nearby.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之传统文化介绍) 众所周知, 中国人非常重视良好的餐桌礼仪。

As is known to all, Chinese people attach great significance to good table manners.

3. carry on 继续; 坚持

[教材原文] But Stephen **carried on**.

但斯蒂芬还是坚持了下来。

[归纳拓展]

carry on (with) sth. 继续某事

carry on doing sth. 继续做某事

carry out 实行; 贯彻; 执行; 实现

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The meal over, the managers went back to the meeting room to carry on their discussion.

② It was a struggle for them to carry on with the research without so much money.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之发言稿) 我们永远不会忘记他们。我们将继续他们的工作。

We will never forget them, and we will carry on with their work.

② (应用文写作之建议信) 政府应该采取严格的措施执行垃圾分类政策。

The government should take strict measures to carry out garbage sorting policy.

4. expectation *n.* 预料, 预期

[教材原文] He performed beyond everyone's **expectations** with his accurate shooting and continuous efforts.

精准的投篮和不断的努力使他的表现超出了所有人的预期。

[归纳拓展]

(1) beyond one's expectations 超出某人的预期

live up to/meet one's expectations 不负某人所望

(2) expect *v.* 预料, 预期; 期待, 期望

expect to do sth. 期望做某事

(3) expected *adj.* 预料的, 预期的

unexpected *adj.* 出乎意料的, 始料不及的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Hearing the unexpected (expect) news, he froze and couldn't move an inch.

② All passengers on board are expected to fasten (fasten) the seat belts when the plane takes off and lands.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之申请信) 我真的很想得到这个宝贵的机会, 我相信我能达到你的期望。

I really want to obtain this precious opportunity and I am sure that I can live up to/meet your expectations.

② (应用文写作之体育报道) 在巴黎奥运会上, 他表现得出乎意料。

At the Paris Olympics, he performed beyond expectations.

5. 强调句型

[教材原文]... **it was** along this road **that** Stephen's grandfather built a simple basket by attaching a piece of plastic to a telephone pole.

……正是在这条路上,斯蒂芬的祖父在电线杆上贴了一块塑料,做成了一个简易的篮筐。

[归纳拓展]

强调句型是用来对句中某一成分加以强调的,其一般句型为“It is/was+被强调部分+that/who+其他成分”。

需要注意的几点:

(1)强调句型和其他句型最明显的区别:强调句型的判断标志是去掉 it is/was 和 that,适当调整后仍然是个完整的句子。

(2)此句型不可强调谓语动词,如要强调谓语动词,可在动词前加 do、does 或 did。

(3)not... until...的强调句型:It is/was not until... that+其他成分。

(4)该句型可以强调 because 引导的原因状语从句,但不能强调 as、since 等引导的原因状语从句。

(5)如果强调的是主语或宾语且是指人时,则可用 who 或 that;如果被强调的部分是其他成分,那么用 that。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①It was yesterday that we had an English examination.

②It was with the help of the local guide that the mountain climber was rescued.

(2)写作微练

①(2024·新课标全国 I 卷应用文写作之活动分享)正是这种与大自然接触的经历激发了我的创造力。

It was the experience of connecting with nature that sparked my creativity.

②(应用文写作之人物介绍)正是老师无私的帮助和激励人心的话使我下定决心努力学习。

It was the teacher's selfless help and inspiring words that made me determine to study hard.

多义词汇 专练

1. **shot**: A. *n.* 注射 B. *n.* 射手

C. *n.* 投篮;射门

D. *n.* 照片;电影的连续镜头

①He was not a particularly good **shot** because of his eyesight. B

②You have to get three **shots** of the vaccine over a period of six months. A

③He had only one **shot** at goal. C

④I decided to try for a more natural **shot** of a fox peering from the bushes. D

2. **sharpen**: A. *v.* 削尖;磨尖 B. *v.* 变得清晰

C. *v.* 提高

①The outline of the trees **sharpened** as it grew lighter. B

②Anne **sharpened** her pencil and took out her homework. A

③She's doing an evening course to **sharpen** her business skills. C

3. In the dark, I **bumped** into a chair unfortunately.

A

A. *v.* (无意地)碰;撞

B. *v.* 颠簸行进

C. *v.* 把(某人)调换到(另一群体或位置)

4. He **bounced** across the room to greet his friends, grinning from ear to ear. B

A. *v.* (使)弹起,反弹

B. *v.* 蹦蹦跳跳地去

C. *v.* 使(上下晃动)

Unit 3 课后素养评价(十)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 单句语法填空

1. Their lives are a far cry from his own poor childhood.

2. If poisonous chemicals get into food, they can kill living (live) things.

3. Read these leaflets from the Sports Association (associate), and compare them with his/her daily routine.

4. In the lack of proof (prove), the police could not take action against the suspect.

5. He started to sharpen (sharp) his knife.

6. The room where there is a machine is a workshop.

7. It was so good to feel accepted for what I'm good at.

8. The beauty of the West Lake in spring was beyond his expectation(s) (expect).

II. 短语填空

give up; in a row; attach... to; set out; give way; a far cry from; carry on; follow in one's footsteps

1. If you work hard, the life in your future is a far cry from what's now.

2. The father is extremely proud that his son

followed in his footsteps and became a doctor.

3. He has achieved what he set out to do three years ago.
4. I attach great importance to this research.
5. The Coast Guard had given up all hope of finding the two divers alive.
6. He has been late for work three days in a row, which makes his boss angry.
7. Though she was very tired, she carried on swimming.
8. This overpass (立交桥) gave way during the earthquake that happened last week.

III. 完成句子

1. It was an old bike that John bought yesterday in the marketplace.
约翰昨天在集市上买的是一辆旧自行车。
2. The well-known player spends more than eight hours practising on the court every day.
这位著名的运动员每天在球场练习八个多小时。
3. The clock had hardly struck twelve when they realised that it was too late to catch the last train.
钟刚敲十二点,他们就意识到赶不上末班火车了。
4. Praised by the neighbours, he became the pride of his parents.
受到邻居们的表扬,他成了父母的骄傲。
5. They have done what they can to help her.
他们已经竭尽所能去帮助她了。

IV. 完形填空

After having a child, I found my regular exercise interrupted. I was not only busy but also lacked the motivation. Solo gym sessions or some quick 1 following the video while the baby was sleeping didn't 2 me at all. So I decided to sign up for a hiking trip in Peru, hoping that it would get me 3 again.

Looking over my travel arrangements before I left, I 4 phrases such as “3-hour hike 5 primitive forests” and “sliding with a rope down waterfalls”, and I started to feel a little 6.

However, as we made our way through the forests and were 7 with amazing views of 8 waterfalls, this team of strangers 9 me to go on. Being physically active with a group motivated me to reach the 10 or the valley below—rather than simply lying down on the forest floor and giving up. 11 I might have done if I were alone.

12 confirm my experience: Group exercise can really start a new attitude towards fitness. “People get a better workout in a group than they do on their own,” said Allison Kimmel, a group 13 instructor. That's because other people 14 both

support and competition. “Humans are social animals and the shared experience of facing a challenge 15 is compelling (不可抗拒的),” said David Ezell, the CEO of fitness provider Darien Wellness.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇夹叙夹议文。文章讲述了作者因为生育而中断健身,在参加了团队远足之后重归健康生活的故事,说明了团队锻炼的好处。

1. A. summary B. addition
C. exercise D. lecture
C 根据上文“I found my regular exercise interrupted”可知,这里是指两种锻炼方式。故选C。
2. A. contribute to B. appeal to
C. cater to D. object to
B 根据下文“So I decided to sign up for a hiking trip in Peru”可知,前面的锻炼没有吸引力,因此作者决定报名远足旅行。故选B。
3. A. acting B. flying
C. studying D. moving
D 根据上文内容可知,作者的常规锻炼被中断,希望自己再次动起来。故选D。
4. A. examined B. scanned
C. copied D. deleted
B 根据文中提到的“我在出发前查看了‘3小时徒步穿过原始森林’”和“在瀑布中带绳滑行之类的词”可知选B。
5. A. across B. over
C. through D. beyond
C 根据下文“made our way through the forests”可知,穿越内部,用介词through。故选C。
6. A. convinced B. disappointed
C. delighted D. worried
D 根据下文“However, as we made our way through the forests... me to go on.”可知,作者最初有点担心,然而美景和刺激令作者感觉不虚此行。故选D。
7. A. rewarded B. crowded
C. covered D. equipped
A “我们”欣赏到了奇妙的瀑布景观。be rewarded with表示“被赏以……,得到……报酬,获得……”。故选A。
8. A. awful B. awesome
C. accessible D. still
B 根据上文“amazing views of”可知,此处指景色很棒。故选B。
9. A. begged B. forced
C. permitted D. inspired
D 根据下文“with a group motivated me to reach”可知,这里表示鼓励作者继续前行。故选D。

10. A. summit B. foot
C. destination D. waterfall
A 空处和“or the valley below”形成对比。故选 A。
11. A. that B. which
C. where D. when
B 分析句子结构可知,此处为定语从句,指代前面整件事,定语从句中缺少宾语,且空前有逗号,用 which 引导。故选 B。
12. A. Victims B. Tourists
C. Strangers D. Experts
D 根据下文中的“Allison Kimmel”“David Ezell”可知,此处是说专家证明“我”的健身经历是有效

- 的。故选 D。
13. A. business B. career
C. flight D. fitness
D 根据说话内容可以判断出,此处是指健身教练。故选 D。
14. A. offer B. consume
C. receive D. ignore
A 这里是指参加团队锻炼时,队员们可以提供支持和竞争。故选 A。
15. A. alone B. alike
C. together D. closely
C 此处强调团队锻炼的优点,共同面对挑战时一起分享经验不可避免。故选 C。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Understand the structure and ideographic function of the *-ing* form as the subject, master its usage, and be able to apply it in real contexts.

2. Master and correctly use the verbs that describe different movements, and try to come up with more types of sports.

3. Recognise the importance of sports spirit and cultivate a positive outlook on life.

○ 自主式预习 ○

- I. 根据语境写出句中黑体部分的汉语意思
1. **Yoga** is a type of exercise in which you move your body into various positions in order to become fitter or more flexible. 瑜伽
2. He **cheated** the old lady out of her money. 欺骗
3. **Precious** objects and materials are worth a lot of money because they are rare. 珍贵的
4. **Earphones** are a small piece of equipment that you wear over or inside your ears so that you can listen to the radio or recorded music. 耳机
5. It was his first day to try **roller skating**, so he was afraid of falling down. 滑旱冰

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>remarkable</u> <i>adj.</i> 非凡的; 不寻常的	<u>remarkably</u> <i>adv.</i> 不寻常地; 显著地
	<u>remark</u> <i>v.</i> 谈论,说起
<u>accuracy</u> <i>n.</i> 准确性; 精确度	<u>accurate</u> <i>adj.</i> 准确的; 精确的
	<u>accurately</u> <i>adv.</i> 准确地; 精确地
<u>complete</u> <i>v.</i> 完成 <i>adj.</i> 完全的; 彻底的	<u>completion</u> <i>n.</i> 完成,结束

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>popular</u> <i>adj.</i> 流行的,受欢迎的	<u>popularise</u> <i>v.</i> 普及; 使流行
	<u>popularity</u> <i>n.</i> 普及; 受欢迎

III. 补全短语

1. come off 脱离; 掉落
2. one after the other 相继地; 陆续地
3. throw... away 把……扔掉
4. take part in 参加
5. get the best out of 发挥……的最大功效
6. best of all 最好的
7. see... as ... 把……看作……

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: had almost done sth. when...
Etenesh Diro had almost completed two thirds of the 3000m steeplechase, when disaster struck.
埃特内什·迪罗几乎完成了 3 000 米障碍赛的三分之二,突然灾难降临了。
2. 句型公式: *adj.* + enough to do
I even encountered a man who, at the age of 68, was brave enough to go roller skating!

我甚至遇到了一个 68 岁的男子,他有足够的勇气去滑旱冰!

3. 句型公式:否定词置于句首引起的部分倒装

Not only did he have guts, he was much faster than me!

他不仅有胆量,而且比我快得多!

4. 句型公式:不定式作定语

In 2003, Yao Ming became the first Chinese sportsperson to win the award, and in Shanghai in 2015 Yao Ming and Li Na both won awards.

2003 年,姚明成为首位获得该奖项的中国运动员,2015 年在上海,姚明和李娜双双获奖。

◦ 任务型课堂 ◦

不定式作定语

[教材原文] In 2003, Yao Ming became the first Chinese sportsperson **to win the award**, and in Shanghai in 2015 Yao Ming and Li Na both won awards.

2003 年,姚明成为首位获得该奖项的中国运动员,2015 年在上海,姚明和李娜双双获奖。

[归纳拓展]

(1) 当中心词是序数词或被序数词、形容词最高级等修饰时或前面有 the next、the only、the last 等时,常用不定式作后置定语。

(2) 不定式作定语用来修饰的词是抽象名词,常见的有 ability、chance、ambition、offer、anxiety、answer、reply、attempt、belief 等。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① One of the most effective ways to reduce (reduce)

stress is to talk about feelings with someone you trust.

② She was the first woman to win (win) the gold medal at the Olympic Games.

③ The ability to express (express) an idea is as important as the idea itself.

④ Thank you for giving me the chance to make (make) the speech.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之人物介绍) 他是世界上第一个培育杂交水稻的人。

He was the first person in the world to develop hybrid rice.

② (应用文写作之人物介绍) 我想起他是在那些困难时期第一个帮助我们的人。

It occurred to me that he was the first person to help us in those difficult times.

语法研习课

动词-ing 形式作主语

◦ 语法感知

① Since then, **finding ways to grow more rice** has been his life goal.

② **Knowing where the ball would go** wasn't easy.

③ **Shooting with great accuracy** was another thing he learnt.

④ **Mary's being late for class** made her teacher angry.

⑤ It is no use **arguing with him about such a matter**.

1. 句①②③都是动词-ing 形式短语作**主语**。

2. 句④是动词-ing 形式的复合结构作**主语**。

3. 句⑤是动词-ing 形式短语作**真正的主语**。

◦ 语法精讲

动词-ing 形式是动词的一种,起名词的作用,同时保留动词的属性,可以有自己的宾语、状语等。动词-ing 形式常在句中作主语、宾语、表语、定语等。动词-ing 形式作主语往往表示经常性、习惯性的动作或状态,且作主语时谓语动词通常用单数形式。

1. 动词-ing 形式在句首直接作主语

Seeing is believing.

眼见为实。

Talking is much easier than doing.

说比做起来容易得多。

2. it 在句首作形式主语,而动词-ing 形式在后面作真正的主语,常见句型:

It is + *adj.* (good, nice, worthwhile, interesting, useless 等) + 动词-ing 形式

It is no use/no good/a waste of time... + 动词-ing 形式

It is dangerous playing in the middle of the street.

在马路中间玩耍是危险的。

It is no use waiting for him here since he has left. 在这里等他是没用的,因为他已经离开了。

3. there be 结构中动词-ing 形式作主语

There is no doing sth. 不可能做某事。

There is no point doing sth. 做某事没意义。

There is no telling how many miles you will have to run while pursuing a dream.

= We can't tell how many miles you will have to

run while pursuing a dream.

难以预料在追求梦想的道路上你要走多远。

There is no point scolding him now.

现在责骂他毫无意义。

4. 动词-ing 形式作主语时的逻辑主语

动词-ing 形式作主语时可以有自己的逻辑主语, “逻辑主语+动词-ing 形式”叫作动词-ing 形式的复合结构。动词-ing 形式作主语时, 逻辑主语要用名词所有格或形容词性物主代词。

The president's attending the meeting gave them a great deal of encouragement.

总统出席会议给了他们莫大的鼓励。

Her not coming back made us disappointed.

她没有回来让我们很失望。

语法冲关

I. 单句语法填空

1. Eating (eat) too much may make you fat.
2. Drinking much water is good for your health.

Unit 3 课后素养评价 (十一)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

remarkable; cheat; take part in; come off; throw away

1. He felt ashamed of cheating in the exam, determined never to do such things again.
2. We will throw away a lot of things as we grow up.
3. Don't pull so hard, or the handle will come off.
4. He showed remarkable endurance throughout his illness.
5. How many countries took part in the last Olympic Games?

II. 单句语法填空

1. To help/Helping (help) you to finish the task is our duty.
2. Having (have) a conversation with her best friends made her feel better.
3. Working with you is (be) my great pleasure.
4. They had just finished their meal when someone knocked at the door.
5. The little boy is clever enough to understand (understand) what the teacher said.
6. It is no use blaming (blame) her for taking the wrong keys by mistake.
7. Playing chess and jogging are (be) what she likes to do in her spare time.
8. Practising (practise) English every day enables

3. It is dangerous smoking (smoke) in the elevator.

4. There is no point complaining (complain) about the mistakes after exams.

5. Playing music and singing songs are the most interesting things for him.

II. 完成句子

1. It was no good telling him the truth as soon as he came back home.
他一回到家就告诉他真相是没有好处的。
2. There is no point blaming him for making mistakes/a mistake.
责备他犯错是没有意义的。
3. It is a waste of time practising in that way.
用那种方式练习就是浪费时间。
4. Reading aloud is not allowed in the library.
图书馆不允许大声朗读。
5. There was no knowing what he could do.
无法知道他能做什么。

him to make great progress.

9. Do you have anything to be taken (take) to your sister?

10. It is no good eating (eat) too much for dinner.

III. 阅读理解

The air gets a little thinner and the cold begins to wrap around us as fall leaves and winter arrives. Some people regard winter as a goodbye to their favourite outdoor sports. However, there are plenty of winter outdoor activities that transcend all seasons.

Climbing

Some climbers say that winter climbing and summer climbing are completely different sports. The snow, ice, and cold have the tendency to turn one terrain (地形) into something completely different from what it is in the warmer months. As with any other change in temperature and terrain, you'll need gear (设备) and expectations that make sense for the conditions. Plan for the weather getting worse, pack hot liquids, bring all extreme winter climbing supplies—even if the terrain isn't expected to need them, layer your clothes, and turn back if you need to. Winter climbing offers more different experiences and views than climbing in warmer months.

Cycling

No matter what type of cycling you're into,

whether it is mountain biking or commuting to work, you can turn it into an all-season activity. Just like anything else, it simply requires some modification (改进). Wearing more layers is important, but not so many that you'll be sweating after a few minutes pedaling. A good base layer, gloves, boots, and a head covering will make you plenty comfortable in the cooler temperatures.

Running

Seasonal Affective Disorder is a condition in which people can feel depressed and fatigued in the winter months as a result of the body's lack of sunlight. Some people can combat this issue with light therapy. Another way to fight the winter blues is to do some exercise.

Continuing to run outside is one way to soak up as much sunlight as possible during your workout. More layers and better shoes may be all you need to turn your warm weather month sport into a cold weather sport as well. In fact, many runs and marathons take place in cooler months. Just be aware of the thinner air and how it can affect your breathing as well as your muscles. However, don't let the cold keep you from enjoying a run with a beautiful snowy backdrop.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍的是冬季的一些超越季节的户外活动。

1. What should you prepare when climbing in winter?

- A. Hot liquids.
- B. A head covering.
- C. Boots.

D. Thin clothes.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Climbing** 部分中的“Plan for the weather getting worse, pack hot liquids, bring all extreme winter climbing supplies—even if the terrain isn't expected to need them, layer your clothes, and turn back if you need to.”可知，冬天登山时应该准备热的液体。故选 A。

2. What does the underlined word “fatigued” in the fourth paragraph mean?

- A. Excited.
- B. Warm.
- C. Tired.
- D. Frightened.

C 词义猜测题。根据 **Running** 部分中的“feel depressed”和“in the winter months as a result of the body's lack of sunlight”可知，在冬季，由于身体缺乏阳光，人们会感到抑郁和疲劳，这叫季节性情绪失调，由此可知，画线词 fatigued 的意思是“疲劳的”，和 tired 意思相近。故选 C。

3. What's the purpose of the text?

- A. To show the benefit of climbing.
- B. To recommend some good winter sports.
- C. To warn people of the danger of winter sports.
- D. To tell the difference between winter and summer sports.

B 写作意图题。通读全文，尤其是第一段中的“Some people regard winter as a goodbye to their favourite outdoor sports. However, there are plenty of winter outdoor activities that transcend all seasons.”可知，本文主要介绍的是冬季的一些超越季节的户外活动，因此目的是推荐一些好的冬季运动。故选 B。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

- Understand the content of the text and summarise the successful experience of the Chinese women's volleyball team.
- Deeply think about the influence of the spirit of the Chinese women's volleyball team on their learning attitude, life attitude, and values.
- Master the characteristics and methods of scene description; use the language knowledge learned in this unit to describe the scene delicately through observation, and describe a sports scene according to the requirements after class.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. She rushed downstairs and **burst** into the kitchen.
突然出现

2. In a sports contest, your **opponent** is the person who is playing against you. (竞争、比赛等的) 对手
3. When a group of people **seize** a place, they take

control of it quickly and suddenly, using force.

夺取

4. In a game or sport, your **teammates** are the other members of your team.

队友

5. An **ingredient** of a situation is one of the essential parts of it.

要素

6. It was a good strategy to **defeat** the enemy.

打败

7. The BBC will cover all the major games of the **tournament**.

锦标赛

8. The basketball **nets** hung down from the ceiling at either end of the gymnasium.

球网

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>vivid</u> <i>adj.</i> 生动的, 逼真的	<u>vividly</u> <i>adv.</i> 生动地 <u>vividness</u> <i>n.</i> 生动, 逼真
<u>assign</u> <i>v.</i> 分配, 分派	<u>assignment</u> <i>n.</i> 任务
<u>surgery</u> <i>n.</i> 外科手术	<u>surgeon</u> <i>n.</i> 外科医生
<u>steely</u> <i>adj.</i> 钢铁般的; 坚定的	<u>steel</u> <i>n.</i> 钢铁
<u>cooperation</u> <i>n.</i> 合作, 协作	<u>cooperate</u> <i>v.</i> 合作, 协作 <u>cooperative</u> <i>adj.</i> 合作的, 协作的
<u>intense</u> <i>adj.</i> 紧张的, 激烈的	<u>intensely</u> <i>adv.</i> 强烈地, 紧张地 <u>intensity</u> <i>n.</i> 强烈, 紧张

III. 补全短语

1. set off 出发, 动身; 使爆炸; 点燃

2. contribute to 促成, 有助于; 造成; 为……做贡献

3. burst onto 突然出现在……(指突然成功)

4. pay off 取得成功

5. on one's feet 站着; 恢复健康

6. come true 实现

7. go wild 变得发狂

8. be caught up in 对……入迷; 被缠住; 卷入

9. give one's all to the fight 全力以赴去战斗

10. ups and downs 起落; 荣辱

11. the key to ... 的关键

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: with + 名词 + 介词短语

And there we see the Chinese players embracing, with tears of happiness in their eyes ...

在那里, 我们看到中国队的队员们拥抱在一起, 眼里含着幸福的泪水……

2. 句型公式: 现在分词短语作状语

Every single member of the team gave their all to the fight, including Hui Ruoyi who had had heart surgery less than five months previously.

每个队员都全力以赴, 包括不到五个月前刚做完心脏手术的惠若琪。

3. 句型公式: thanks to...

Thanks to my teammates' hard efforts, I had the opportunity to show my spiking skills.

多亏了队友们的努力拼搏, 我才有机会展示我的扣球技术。

4. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作状语

Led by well-known Chinese volleyball player and coach Lang Ping, they have continued to aim high.

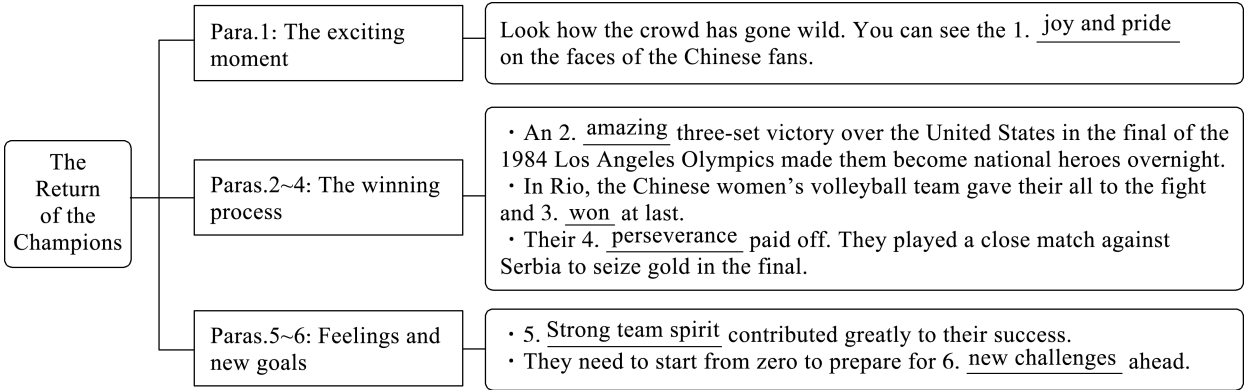
在中国著名排球运动员和中国女排总教练郎平的带领下, 她们为实现更高的目标而继续努力。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Which of the following statements is TRUE according to the history of the Chinese women's volleyball team?
 - They were world-famous from the beginning of the 1970s.
 - They won more than one Olympic gold before the Rio Olympics.
 - They hadn't expected to hold the championship again.
 - It was certain that they could win the gold in 1984 in Los Angeles.
- What do you think about the team's performance at the Rio Olympics?
 - Their victory was so natural because of their practice.
 - There was no trouble for the team to perform in Rio.
 - The victory needed the devotion from every member.
 - Hui Ruoyi's joining was unnecessary for the whole team.
- Which country was the last one to serve as the Chinese team's opponent before we won Olympic gold in Rio?
 - Serbia.
 - Brazil.
 - The Netherlands.
 - Greece.
- What can be inferred from the sentence "the team begins its journey to the next Olympics"?
 - The team is going on the journey to the next Olympics by air.
 - Hui Ruoyi won the Most Valuable Player at the Rio Olympics.
 - They have fallen to the zero point after this victory.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. burst v. 突然出现

[教材原文] In the 1980s, the team **burst** onto the international volleyball scene with several major world titles, and an amazing three-set victory over the United States in the final of the 1984 Los Angeles Olympics.

20 世纪 80 年代, 中国女排赢得了多场世界大赛, 并在 1984 年洛杉矶奥运会的决赛中以惊人的三连胜击败了美国队, 在国际排坛大放异彩。

[归纳拓展]

burst onto 突然出现在……(指突然成功)

burst out 突然……起来, 突然发生

D. There is still much work to do for the team in the future.

答案: 1~4 BCAD

○ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- In Rio, the Chinese women's volleyball team needed all of its fighting spirit after it was assigned to the "group of death", where it faced several strong opponents in the group stage matches.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。after 引导时间状语从句; where 引导非限制性定语从句, 修饰先行词 the "group of death".

[尝试翻译] 里约奥运会上, 中国女排被分到了“死亡之组”, 因此她们必须拼尽全力, 对抗小组赛中遇到的多支强队。

- Next, the Chinese team defeated the Netherlands in the semi-final matches, having lost to them in the preliminaries.

[句子分析] 本句是一个简单句。having lost... 是现在分词的完成式作时间状语, 相当于状语从句 after the Chinese team had lost to them in the preliminaries.

[尝试翻译] 接下来, 在半决赛中中国队击败了曾在预赛中惜败过的荷兰队。

○ 思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- Which Olympic victory best represents the Chinese women's volleyball team's competitive spirit?
Rio de Janeiro.
- What do you think of the opinion that a team needs to start from zero after winning a gold medal?

I think it makes sense. Humble attitude and fighting spirit are the key to winning again. (回答合理即可)

burst out doing... = burst into + n. 突然……起来

burst in 闯进来; 突然插嘴

burst into 突然闯入; 情绪的突然爆发

burst with anger/joy 勃然大怒/乐不可支

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① He burst in without knocking at the door, which made me very angry.

② He burst into the room without knocking at the door, which made me very angry.

③ The instant the ceremony was declared open, all the students in our school burst into cheers.

④When she heard the news that her son won the game, she burst with joy.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之动作描写)她突然哭起来,跑出了厨房。

①She burst into tears and ran out of the kitchen.

②She burst out crying and ran out of the kitchen.

2. assign v. 分配,分派;指定,指派

[教材原文]... after it was assigned to the “group of death”...

……被分配到“死亡之组”后……

[归纳拓展]

(1)assign sb. sth. = assign sth. to sb. 将某物分配给某人

assign sb. to sth./as sth. 指派某人担任某项工作/某一职务

sb. be assigned to do sth. 某人被派去做某事

(2)assignment n. [C,U](分派的)工作,任务;[U](工作等的)分派,布置

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

① Can you tell us about the most difficult assignment (assign) that you’ve had to do?

②A wise and experienced leader will assign a job to whoever is the most qualified.

③ After his graduation from college, he was assigned to work (work) at the foreign ministry.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之活动分享)由于我们的合作和努力,我们组第一个完成了分配给我们的农活。

Our group was the first to finish the farm work (which was) assigned to us thanks to our cooperation and hard work.

3. defeat v. 战胜,打败;使受挫 n. 失败

[教材原文]Next, the Chinese team defeated the Netherlands in the semi-final matches, having lost to them in the preliminaries.

接下来,在半决赛中中国队击败了曾在预赛中惜败过的荷兰队。

[归纳拓展]

【易混辨析】defeat, beat, win

易混词	区别
defeat	意为“战胜,击败”,宾语是人,多指在战争、比赛、竞争中战胜对手
beat	意为“战胜,打败”,宾语必须是对手,常指在游戏、比赛中击败对手,和 defeat 经常互换使用 另外,beat 还有“敲打;(心脏)跳动”之意,过去式为 beat,过去分词为 beaten

续表

易混词	区别
win	意为“赢得;获胜;取得”,作及物动词时,后常接 match,debate, battle, prize, honour, election, respect 等作宾语

[即学即练]

(1)选词填空: defeat, beat, win

Believe it or not, I defeated/beat my idol and won the match yesterday. Now my heart is still beating wildly.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之体育报道)虽然他在比赛中被打败了,但他并不灰心,赢得了观众的尊重。

Although he was defeated in the match, he didn’t lose heart and earned the respect of the audience.

4. contribute to 促成,有助于;造成;为……做贡献

[教材原文]Strong team spirit also contributed greatly to their success.

强大的团队精神也极大地促成了她们的成功。

[归纳拓展]

(1)contribute... to... 向……捐献……;向……投稿

(2)contribution n. 贡献;捐献;投稿

make a contribution/contributions to 为……做贡献

名师点拨

contribute to 和 make a contribution/contributions to 中的 to 都为介词,后要接名词、代词或动名词。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①I hope these tips will contribute greatly to your making more new friends as soon as possible.

②He made such a great contribution (contribute) to the university that the new library was named after him.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之人物介绍)他在这个领域取得的成就促进了整个人类的进步与发展。

His achievements in this field have contributed to the progress and development of the whole human race.

②(2023·全国甲卷应用文写作之人物介绍)范仲淹是中国宋代著名的文学家和政治家,因其对社会的巨大贡献而受到人们的高度评价。

Known as a famous Chinese writer and politician in the Song Dynasty, Fan Zhongyan was highly appreciated because he made great contributions to society.

5. “go+形容词”结构

[教材原文] When the runners set off, everyone **went wild!**

当赛跑者出发时,每个人都发狂了!

[归纳拓展]

该结构是系表结构,go 可用作系动词,意为“变成;处于……状态”,常接形容词作表语。表示状态的改变时,通常指由好变坏或由正常变为不正常。常见搭配:

go bad/mad/blind 变坏/变疯/变瞎

go pale/red 变得苍白/变红

go hungry 挨饿

go blank (脑子)突然一片空白

[即学即练]

(1)完成句子

① With days passing on, my father's hair is going grey.

随着时间的流逝,我爸爸的头发变灰白了。

② Meat will go bad easily in hot weather if it isn't put in the fridge.

天热时,肉如果不放在冰箱里,就很容易变坏。

③ Something went wrong with her computer and most of her information stored in it couldn't be recovered. 她的电脑突然坏了,里面存储的大部分信息都无法恢复了。

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之情绪描写)当我听到这个令人震惊的消息时,我的脑子一片空白,坐在那里不知道该做什么。

When I heard the shocking news, my mind went blank, sitting there and not knowing what to do.

多义词汇 专练

1. **burst**: A. v. (突然)爆发

B. v. 爆满;涨满

C. v. (使)爆裂;胀裂

① Amused by his story, all of us **burst** into laughter without control. A

② The balloon will **burst** if you blow it up any more. C

③ The roads are **bursting** with cars. B

2. **seize**: A. v. 夺取,控制

B. v. 抓住;把握(时机等)

C. v. (情绪)突然侵袭,突然控制

① They **seized** the airport in a surprise attack. A

② He was **seized** by curiosity. C

③ He says there's a golden opportunity for peace which must be **seized**. B

3. The teacher **assigned** a different task to each of the children. A

A. v. 分派,布置(工作、任务等)

B. v. 指定,指派

C. v. 确定

4. I'm quite happy to **net** a fish and then let it go. B

A. v. 得分 B. v. 捕捞 C. v. 遮盖

Unit 3 课后素养评价(十二)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

- His vivid (逼真的) description of his adventure in the forest made us want to have a try ourselves.
- When he opened it, he found it was empty and again his anger burst (爆发).
- He downed his opponent (对手) with three blows.
- The three goals we scored in the first half gave us a useful cushion against defeat (失败).
- The only way not to fall down into the valley is to seize (抓住) the big branch.

6. The battle for third place was intense (激烈的).

7. He was knocked out of the tournament (锦标赛) in the third round.

8. As far as I know, his father has just recovered from heart surgery (外科手术).

II. 单句语法填空

- You will need to complete three written assignments (assign) per semester.
- She always serves us with a big dinner when we gather together.
- We would like to see closer cooperation (cooperate)

between parents and schools.

4. All my hard work paid off in the end, and I finally passed the exam.
5. A major new talent who is known for this novel has burst onto the literary scene.

III. 短语填空

less than; be caught in; go wild; burst onto; pay off; thanks to; come true; the key to

1. Thanks to your perseverance and intelligence, the work has been making great progress.
2. Rap music, bursting onto the music scene in the 1970s, has been popular with many people.
3. I am sure that your dream will come true one day as long as you work hard.
4. I believe that the time spent in studying now will pay off in the future.
5. Almost all the young people interviewed believed that perseverance is the key to success.
6. The fans went wild as soon as the singer stepped onto the stage.
7. The woman had her jewels stolen last night. Luckily, in less than 8 hours, the thief was caught.
8. He was caught in the traffic jam; as a result, he was late for the meeting for half an hour.

IV. 补全句子

1. 有这么多作业要完成,他今天上午没有时间去购物。(with 复合结构)
With so much homework to finish, he won't have time to go shopping this morning.
2. 如果给予更多的时间,我就能做得更好。(状语从句的省略)
Given more time, I'll be able to do it better.
3. 这起车祸中有六人丧生,包括两名孩子。(include)
Six people were killed in the car accident, including two children.
4. 这张旧沙发只好用作备用床了。(serve as, spare)
The old couch had to serve as a spare bed.
5. 我们相信我们每一个人都能为世界的未来做出贡献。(contribute to)
I believe that each of us can contribute to the future of the world.

V. 语法填空

Last weekend our school held a sports meeting.

1. Realising (realise) it was our last high school sports meeting, we decided to make 2. it an unforgettable experience for all of us.

We first attended the opening parade, for 3. which our class had made a lot of 4. preparations (prepare). To our 5. excitement (excite), our parade performance was a great success. After the parade, the games started. My classmates attended various events such as running, the high jump and the long jump. Due to the hard training they 6. had done (do) before, their performances were very 7. impressive (impress). On the stand, my classmates applauded and cheered for the athletes, some raising their cameras to capture the exciting moments. Finally, the result 8. was announced (announce). It was amazing that our class won second place. Our efforts paid off! Cup in hand, we took 9. a picture together.

I believe this sports meeting will remain a precious memory for all of us 10. as time goes by.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,你的美国网友 Harry 发邮件询问你最喜欢的运动。请你根据以下所给提示回信,向他介绍你最喜欢的运动——游泳。

1. 何时开始喜欢上游泳;
2. 现在练习游泳的情况;
3. 你的理想。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;

3. 信的开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Harry,

Nice to receive your email. I'd like to tell you about my favourite sport—swimming.

At the age of six, I began to learn to swim from my parents, who are good at it. Now I often go swimming with my friends in my spare time. Besides, I go to sports school every weekend, where I have learned many swimming skills.

I hope I can swim as well as the world champions and have the opportunity to take part in the Olympic Games in the future.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续

写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

If you had to choose one word to describe Kevin, it might have been “slow”. He didn’t learn his ABCs as fast as other kids. He never came in first in the running races. However, Kevin’s smile was brighter than the sun in June; his heart was bigger than the sky. Kevin’s enthusiasm for life spread quickly to others. So when he discovered that his teacher, Randy, was putting together a boys’ basketball team, his mother could only answer, “Yes, you may join.”

Basketball became the centre of Kevin’s life. At practice, he worked so hard that you’d have thought he was preparing for the NBA. He liked to stand in a certain spot near the free-throw (罚球) line and shoot baskets. Patiently, he stood there throwing ball after ball after ball, until finally it would get into the basket. “Look at me, Coach!” he’d shout to Randy, jumping up and down, his face just glowing with the excitement of it all. His teammates were also moved by Kevin’s perseverance, and they insisted on practising with him.

Kevin and his whole team truly loved basketball. But just loving the game doesn’t help them win. More balls fell out of the basket than into it, and the boys lost every game that season by very large scores, except one: the night it snowed and the other team couldn’t make it to the game. At the end of the season, the boys had their last competition. As the last-place team, they drew the unfortunate spot of playing against the first-place team—the tall and undefeated first-place team.

The game went as expected, and by the middle of the fourth quarter, Kevin’s team was nearly 30 points behind. At that point, one of Kevin’s

teammates called a time-out. As he came to the side, Randy couldn’t understand why the time-out had been called. “Coach,” said the boy, “I know that Kevin has never made a basket. But this is our last game, and I think we should let him make a basket to achieve his dream.” With the game completely out of reach, the idea seemed reasonable, so plans were made.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Every time Kevin’s team had the ball, Kevin was to stand in his special spot near the free-throw line and they would pass him the ball. Kevin skipped extra high as he went onto the court. His first shot bounced around but missed. The player from the other team swiped the ball and took it down to the other end scoring two more points. At that moment, a clear tension and unease appeared on his face. But quickly he adjusted his mindset and returned to the game. As soon as Kevin’s team had the ball again, they passed it to Kevin who obediently stood in his place. But he missed again.

Kevin missed every opportunity with this pattern continuing a few more times, and the spectators (观众) finally figured out what was happening. Gradually people started to stand up and clap their hands. The whole gymnasium thundered with the clapping, hollering, chanting, “Kevin! Kevin!” The whole world was stopped, waiting and wanting Kevin to succeed. Finally, after an infinite amount of tries, the ball took one miraculous bounce and went in. Kevin’s arms shot high into the air and he shouted, “I win! I win!” The clock ticked off the last few seconds and the first-place team remained undefeated. But on that evening, everyone left the game feeling like a true winner.

★ ★ ★
迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

🏆Part 1 应用文写作——运动记事

○写作指导

运动记事是用来记录你所经历过的运动赛事的一种文体。一般要注意以下几点：

1. 规范的格式：一般分三段进行叙述。第一段简单介绍背景，第二段讲述你的所见所闻，第三段表明你的态度以及所受到的启发。
2. 正确的人称：该文体是对运动赛事的记录，讲述他人参加比赛的趣事以及自己所受到的启发，因此人称多用第一人称和第三人称。
3. 正确的时态：该文体是对比赛当天的回忆性记录，因此时态多用一般过去时。

○典题示例

今年 10 月你所在的城市举办了马拉松比赛，你观看了比赛，请就你的所见所闻用英语写一篇运动记事。内容包括：

1. 对比赛的简单介绍；
2. 你的所见所闻；
3. 你的感想。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯。

参考词汇：马拉松 marathon；活力 vigour

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	记叙文
时态	以 <u>一般过去时</u> 为主
人称	以 <u>第一人称</u> 为主
要点	1. 简单介绍你所在城市的马拉松比赛的情况 2. 记叙在马拉松比赛中给你印象最深刻的事 3. 表达你的感受和比赛对你的启发

Step 2: 要点补全

① On October 10th, the event of a marathon was held in our city (在我们的城市举办).

② It helped to add vigour to our city (为我们的城市注入活力).

③ As soon as I arrived there, I saw so many players warming up (热身) for the match.

④ The perseverance and bravery helped the players to achieve success (取得成功) in the event.

⑤ I was determined to participate in (决心参加) the marathon next year.

Step 3: 句式升级

① 用 which 引导的定语从句连接 Step 2 中的①②句。

On October 10th, the event of a marathon was held in our city, which helped to add vigour to our city.

② 用 on doing...结构升级 Step 2 中的③句。

On arriving there, I saw so many players warming up for the match.

③ 用强调句型改写 Step 2 中的④句。

It was the perseverance and bravery that helped the players to achieve success in the event.

Step 4: 连句成篇

On October 10th, the event of a marathon was held in our city, which helped to add vigour to our city.

On arriving there, I saw so many players warming up for the match. When they started out, they spared no effort to reach the finish line. Nearly three hours later, the first player got to the finish line, who finished such a difficult task with great passion.

It was the perseverance and bravery that helped the players to achieve success in the event. I was determined to participate in the marathon next year.

○学以致用

上周末你们学校举行了一场篮球比赛，你作为观众出席，请就你所观看的比赛用英语写一篇文章，内容包括：

1. 对比赛的简单介绍；
2. 你的所见所闻；
3. 你的感想。

注意：1. 词数 80 左右；

2. 可以适当增加细节，以使行文连贯。

There was a basketball match between our school and another senior high school last Sunday. A large number of students came to the basketball court, cheering for our team.

All the players were quite energetic and got ready to fight for the match. When the match began, players of our team performed very well. When the match was coming to an end, the scores

were so close that all the players went all out to win the match. In the end, a player of our team shot the ball into the basket, and our team won first place.

How wonderful the match was!

Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

Anybody passing by the school's football ground wouldn't miss noticing Jake Harvey and his teammates talking about soccer. They always made sure they only selected skilled players to join their team. One day, Jake was talking with his friends about choosing a new goalkeeper as the previous one had moved to another city with his parents. At that moment, a newcomer in their class Sam Thompson, walked over with a big smile on his face, saying he was ready to play. Jake's team paused and turned in disbelief, staring at the boy's artificial leg.

"We only need the best of the best... you get what I mean?" Jake said.

Sam's smile faded away (逐渐消失) while his eyes filled with tears, but he didn't want his tears to weaken him in front of the boys. "It's your team, and you know who fits... I respect your decision." Sam turned around and left, wiping away his tears.

Meanwhile, Mr Jones, the school's physical trainer, saw what happened from his office window. After the practice session, he walked over to Jake and took him aside. "Well, I saw what happened, and if I'm not wrong, you sent away that newcomer, right?" Mr Jones asked Jake. "Do you have any idea who he is?" Jake was shocked as Mr Jones revealed Sam's background.

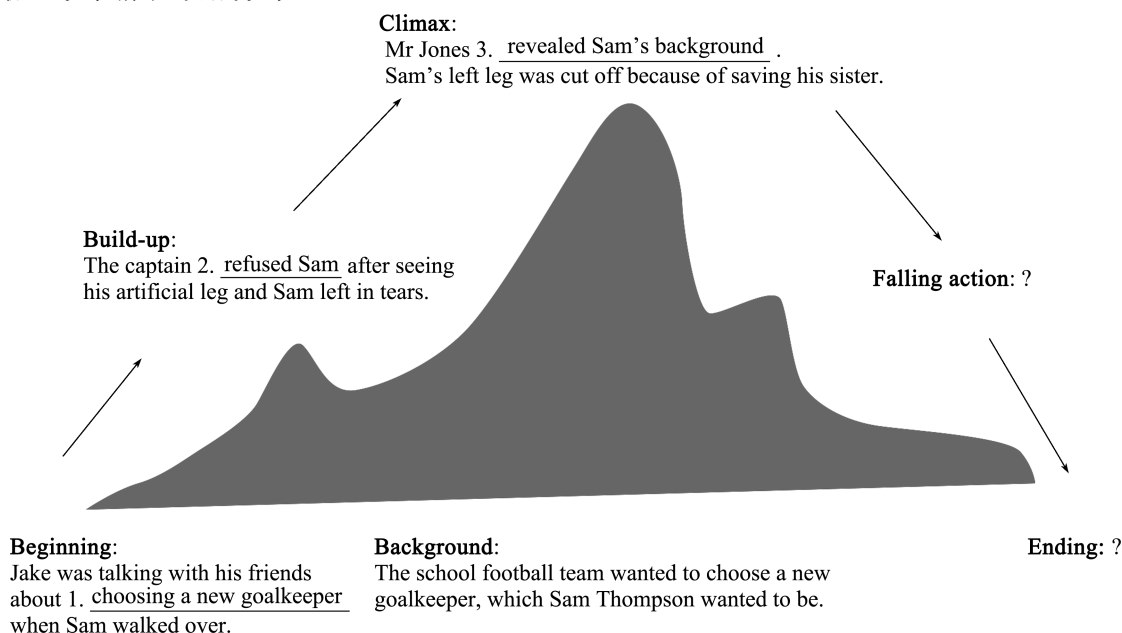
As it turned out, Sam was captain of the soccer team in his previous school. He was also an excellent goalkeeper who had won several gold medals for his team. Unfortunately, one day, Sam's family met with a car accident on their way home from a vacation. The car was set ablaze (着火), and though Sam got out safely, he realised his little sister was still in the car. He risked his own life and rushed to save her. As a result, his left leg was severely injured and had to be cut off later. Jack was shocked by Sam's bravery.

任务一: 阅读文章, 回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

The school football team wanted to choose a new goalkeeper, and Sam Thompson, a new classmate, wanted to be the goalkeeper. When Jake, the captain of the team, saw Sam Thompson's prosthetic leg, he refused. Sam left in tears. The school's physical trainer told Jake about Sam, a former soccer player who lost his left leg trying to save his sister, and Jake was shocked by Sam's bravery.

任务二: 梳理故事情节, 完成故事山。



任务三：回答下面的问题，并根据段落开头提示语，构思、完善故事发展的情节。

Paragraph 1: Mr Jones said it was wrong to judge someone's talents just from their appearance. ____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. What did Jake feel after hearing what Mr Jones said? <u>He felt guilty for what he had said to Sam.</u> 2. What did Jake do to correct their mistake? <u>He immediately gathered his teammates round, telling them something must be done to correct their mistake.</u> 3. What did Mr Jones do? <u>He spoke highly of them and promised he would keep it a secret to give Sam a big surprise.</u>
Paragraph 2: The next morning, Jake went into the classroom and made an announcement. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. What announcement did he make? <u>Sam was their new goalkeeper!</u> 2. What did Sam probably act? <u>Sam could hardly believe his ears and he just cried and laughed, saying "Thank you, Jake".</u> 3. What did others do when Jake hugged Sam? <u>The team gathered in front of the class for a group hug. And Mr Jones was happy for Sam.</u>

任务四：根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

Mr Jones said it was wrong to judge someone's talents just from their appearance. Hearing this, Jake felt guilty for what he had said to Sam. He told Mr Jones that he would make up for it. Realising what he should do next, he immediately gathered his teammates round, telling them something must be done to correct their mistake. Moved by what Sam had done, they soon reached an agreement. When learning their decision, Mr Jones spoke highly of them and promised he would keep it a secret to give Sam a big surprise.

The next morning, Jake went into the classroom and made an announcement. He walked over to the front with a big smile. "Meet our new goalkeeper, Sam Thompson!" Jake announced. The class cheered loudly when hearing the news. Jake came up to Sam and said, "Welcome, you're our new goalkeeper!" Sam could hardly believe his ears and he just cried and laughed, saying "Thank you, Jake". Jake hugged the boy while the team gathered in front of the class for a group hug. Meanwhile, Mr Jones watched the class from outside and was happy for Sam.

★ ★ ★

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。

Adjectives and nouns to describe a physical quality. 	Write your understanding about “The most important thing in the Olympic Games is not to win but to take part”.
---	---

Faster, higher,
stronger

Describe what sporting spirit we should learn from the Chinese women’s volleyball team.

答案:略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

A famous springboard diver was defeated by his competitor in the finals of a world championship, offering congratulations to the winner and waving a tearful goodbye to the audience.

It is common in the athletic world. Sportsmen spend the best part of their lives on hard training and competitions. When it becomes evident that they are on the decline, they still make great efforts to give their best so as to bring a satisfactory end to their career.

Chances to compete for the championship are few and far between. Life is short. Still shorter is the time for an athlete trying to win games. An athletic contestant really feels that there are so few opportunities and time flies. He treasures every minute, makes full use of it and tries to grasp any chance coming his way. He gets as much as he gives, winning honours not only for himself but also for his country.

To participate and to win—that is the Olympic spirit. It finds expression in the weak daring to challenge the strong, and the strong searching for ever better performance. Ever better—the ideal always makes a sportsman forward. He will do everything he can for it, never relax, never give up. It is said that none of the competitors can avoid being defeated—even the best is bound to be defeated by someone still stronger. This is the rule of sports—thousands of losers set off one winner who in turn will eventually be replaced by someone on the honour list. However, he is always trying to do the best he can. When the time comes and he knows he can’t, he will step down happily to give place to the younger winner, aware contentedly of the fact that he has done his best for the “ever better” records of the Olympic Games. He will say proudly that he has not lived his youth in vain.

- What is the function of the first paragraph?
 - To explain a phenomenon.
 - To describe a competition.
 - To lead in the topic of this passage.
 - To express worries about sportsmen.
- According to the passage, what kind of ideal pushes an athlete forward?
 - He wants to win people's respect.
 - He wants to win honour for his nation.
 - He wants to make greater achievements than ever.
 - He wants to earn more and more money and fame.
- What can be learnt from the rule of sports?
 - Whatever difficulties you have met, never give up.
 - Even the strongest athlete will be defeated one day.
 - You can't live in the sports field without any effort or progress.
 - You are the winner if you are brave enough to challenge the strong.
- What is the passage mainly about?
 - Sportsmen's spirit.
 - Sportsmen's life.
 - Sportsmen's honour.
 - Sportsmen's pride.

答案: 1~4 CCBA

单元评估(三)

I. 阅读理解

A

Welcome to Pocono Whitewater

There's something fun here at Pocono Whitewater for every level of adventurer! We have mild to wild whitewater rafting (漂流), family trips and birdwatching boating... Choose one adventure now... It's up to you! We have trips available daily. Give us a call today!

Dam Release Whitewater Rafting

Experience the best whitewater on the Lehigh River! Surrounded by forests and mountains, you will enjoy 12 miles and 5 hours of Class III whitewater rafting and outstanding scenery. This is a fun and thrilling trip that everyone from aged 12 and up can do! While paddling (划桨) in the swift water, you'll shout and laugh.

Dam Release Whitewater Rafting Rates:

★Individual (aged 12 & up): \$ 61.00

★Group (at least 8 people): \$ 31.00

Rates Include: all necessary rafting equipment, life jackets, free parking, bus service to/from the river, professional river guides.

Family Style Whitewater Rafting

Bring along the whole family this summer and enjoy 8 miles and 5 hours long of Class I whitewater

rafting. The mild water of the Lehigh River is simply perfect for beginners, school groups and kids aged 4 and older. This is just perfect for enjoying the passing scenery, kicking your feet over the edge of the raft, or taking a swim in the river!

One of the most unique things about this trip is a free riverside barbeque (烧烤)! Our workers will cook and serve you a picnic lunch—hot dogs, potato salad, fruit, etc. A classic family picnic!

Family Style Whitewater Rafting Rates:

★Adult: \$ 39.00

★Child (aged 4—14): \$ 33.00

★Group (at least 8 people): \$ 30.00

Rates Include: all necessary rafting equipment, life jackets, free parking, bus service to/from the river, and a barbeque lunch. However, river guides are not included.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了两种水上活动。

- Which of the following people is suitable for Dam Release Whitewater Rafting?
 - A 4-year-old boy.
 - A 6-year-old girl.
 - An 8-year-old girl.
 - A 14-year-old girl.
- D 细节理解题。根据 Dam Release Whitewater

Rafting 部分中的“This is a fun and thrilling trip that everyone from aged 12 and up can do!”可知, 12岁以及12岁以上的人可参加此项漂流运动。故选D。

2. If ten college students are to participate in the Dam Release Whitewater Rafting, how much money will be paid in total?

A. \$310. B. \$330.
C. \$390. D. \$610.

A 细节理解题。根据 **Dam Release Whitewater Rafting** 部分中的“Group (at least 8 people): \$31.00”可知, 10个大学生可以买团体票, 每人31美元, 10人共310美元。故选A。

3. In which aspect is Family Style Whitewater Rafting unique?

A. It allows people to swim in the river.
B. It provides good scenery.
C. It provides a barbeque lunch for free.
D. It offers all necessary rafting equipment.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Family Style Whitewater Rafting** 部分中的“One of the most unique things about this trip is a free riverside barbeque (烧烤)!”可知, 这项漂流活动的独特之处是提供免费烧烤午餐。故选C。

B

Before the dark cloud cast a shadow over my life, I was a 39-year-old woman who enjoyed travelling, listening to jazz music and reading. Then my whole life changed. On November 10th 2019, I awoke from sleep with the worst headache of my life. I was rushed to hospital and diagnosed with brain aneurysm (动脉瘤)! After emergency surgery, I lay on the bed feeling shocked and lost. Yet, I knew I had to face the music.

Nine months later, my doctor recommended I start cycling to help flood my brain with oxygen, which benefited my physical recovery. I hadn't used one in almost two decades, so I was scared. However, with the support of my wonderful cheerleader, Brian, my husband, I got on a bike cautiously. After only three minutes, I was tired and my hands were shaking. I felt powerless and wanted to give up, but Brian encouraged me with smiling eyes. I rode for a few minutes, stopped to rest and rode again. Little by little I could ride continuously for ten minutes! My husband joked I deserved the first prize!

Now, I ride whenever I have the energy. Usually, I get on the bike a few times a week. Last

year I participated in a benefit ride for the local school. I enjoy travelling internationally, but haven't had the opportunity to do so since my surgery. I hope to be able to ride in another country one day. Until then, though, I'll participate annually in the Good Old Summertime Classic and continue my local routes.

Biking not only restores my body but also my soul. It feels empowering to take charge of my body and life again. I know I will ride on.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。作者被诊断为脑动脉瘤, 并做了手术。术后医生建议作者开始骑自行车, 这能帮助作者的大脑充满氧气, 有利于作者的身体恢复。作者在丈夫的鼓励下开始骑自行车, 身体得到了恢复。

4. What does the underlined phrase “face the music” in Paragraph 1 refer to?

A. Enjoy jazz music.
B. Accept the fact.
C. Lose the feeling.
D. Have the surgery.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线词上文“I was rushed to hospital and diagnosed with brain aneurysm (动脉瘤)! After emergency surgery, I lay on the bed feeling shocked and lost.”和画线短语所在句子“Yet, I knew I had to face the music.”可知, 作者被诊断出脑动脉瘤, 并做了手术。虽然作者感到很震惊和失落, 但是作者不得不接受这一事实。由此可知, 画线短语“face the music”指的是接受事实。故选B。

5. How was the author's first biking after the surgery?

A. She quit halfway.
B. She felt disappointed.
C. She made it.
D. She got the first prize.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“However, with the support of my wonderful cheerleader, Brian, my husband, I got on a bike cautiously. After only three minutes, I was tired and my hands were shaking. I felt powerless and wanted to give up, but Brian encouraged me with smiling eyes. I rode for a few minutes, stopped to rest and rode again. Little by little I could ride continuously for ten minutes!”可知, 作者手术后第一次骑自行车很成功。故选C。

6. What does the author expect to do for the future?

A. To help the local school.
B. To go cycling abroad.
C. To have enough energy.

D. To participate in local routes.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“I hope to be able to ride in another country one day.”可知,作者希望将来能在国外骑行。故选B。

7. What can we learn from the author's story?

A. One is never too old to learn.

B. Love breaks down barriers.

C. Exercise is the best medicine.

D. Happiness lies in good health.

C 推理判断题。通读全文,尤其是最后一段中的“Biking not only restores my body but also my soul. It feels empowering to take charge of my body and life again.”可知,作者被诊断出脑动脉瘤,并做了手术。术后医生建议作者开始骑自行车,这能帮助作者的大脑充满氧气,有利于作者的身体恢复。作者在丈夫的鼓励下开始骑自行车,作者的身体慢慢恢复了。从作者的故事我们可以得知,运动是最好的良药。故选C。

C

Whether you prefer solo dancing or being involved in a more formalised programme, dancing offers an obvious plus to your physical health. You're not only moving your body in a rhythmic way and expressing feelings but also burning calories in your body and getting a workout for sure.

In a recent study, researchers compared the effects of walking, stretching and dancing on the white and grey matter of the aging brain. The result showed dancing had a significantly positive effect.

In the experiment, after volunteers in their 60s and 70s with healthy brains didn't show signs of cognitive (认知的) disorder, researchers placed them in three groups at will. One group walked, another group stretched and did balance training and the last group learned country dancing. The arrangements of the dancing became progressively more challenging over time. They all did the assigned activity for one hour a day, three times a week. After a period of six months, the volunteers' brains were re-scanned and compared to their brains when they had begun their voluntary work.

Agnieszka Burzynska, the study's lead author who is currently a neuroscientist and director of the Brain Lab at Colorado State University, found only one group showed a memory improvement—the country dancers. The participants who learned country dancing now had richer white matter in the part of the brain that processed memory. White matter usually breaks down as a person ages, which

may lead to cognitive decline. Dancing, therefore, protected the brain from aging-caused neurodegeneration. So, dancing is not just an aerobic activity good for your physical health, it helps your brain, too!

Country dancing, ballroom dancing, tango and waltz are all done with others. When you take part in these dances, you're involved in a beneficial social activity as well. You are also cognitively motivating your brain as you learn the steps of the dances. Dancing, therefore, might be one of the best physical activities you can choose for brain health.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了跳舞是一项有氧运动,它不仅对身体健康有好处,也有助于大脑健康。

8. What's the purpose of Paragraph 1?

A. To add background material.

B. To introduce the topic of the text.

C. To raise questions about exercise.

D. To present experimental conditions.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可推知,第一段的目的是引出话题:舞蹈的好处。故选B。

9. What can we learn about the volunteers in the experiment?

A. They were grouped at random.

B. They were under cognitive decline.

C. They were all asked to learn dancing.

D. They were all born in the 1960s and 1970s.

A 细节理解题。根据第三段第一句可知,志愿者是被随机分组的。故选A。

10. What did the researchers mainly intend to prove through the experiment?

A. The brain function of the volunteers.

B. The cognitive disorder of the volunteers.

C. The relationship between age and dancing.

D. The effect of dancing on the volunteers' brains.

D 推理判断题。根据第四段最后一句可推知,研究者通过这个实验想证明跳舞对志愿者的大脑的影响。故选D。

11. Which of the following is the best title for the text?

A. How Dancing Affects People's Lifestyle

B. Why Dancing Is the Best Social Activity

C. How Dancing Helps People's Brain Health

D. Why Country Dancing Is Beneficial to People's Health

C 标题归纳题。根据最后一段最后一句以及全文内容可知,本文主要介绍了跳舞不仅对身体健康有好处,也有助于大脑的健康。由此可知,C项可作为本文最佳标题。故选C。

D

With the DJ shouting in a strong local accent and viewers sitting wherever they could find a spot to view the game, two teams of basketball players who were no other than the local villagers played under professional format and the game became tense in the last seconds of the fourth quarter.

The rescheduled final game of Guizhou country basketball league, known as “Village Basketball Association”, was played in Taipan Village, a remote rural area with a population of only 1,200, in Qiandongnan Miao and Dong Autonomous Prefecture of Guizhou Province on Monday after a local storm hit on Sunday night. Team Qiandongnan beat Team Zunyi by a score of 68 to 65.

There were more viewers for this game, although it was a weekday, compared with the 30,000-strong crowd seen during the past weekend when the third-place game went viral. The festival-turned-competition is a gathering which is attractive to local villagers and visitors looking for a special local experience.

How can a grassroots competition become more attractive than professional games to people like me? I think it's because sport essentially originates from the grassroots and everybody can find the most available social connections by being part of it.

The Village BA reminded me of my tour in Yangshuo of Guangxi Zhuang Autonomous Region where I was getting tired of the landscape scenery until I ran into a local basketball game on my way back to the hotel. I decided to take a rest and sat on the bare ground by the court rubbing shoulders with locals and visitors and letting out whatever I wanted to give out. Like the players of the Village BA in Guizhou, the winning team in Yangshuo was awarded nothing more than local products such as live ducks and cooked meat.

The sudden popularity of the Village BA could be due to the widespread use of social media and the users' tendency to explore something different from their surroundings. But what may remain and grow even bigger is people's pursuit of spiritual nutrition and the grassroots sport is one of the top destinations that are easy to reach.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了贵州乡村篮球联赛的盛况和它背后的意义。

12. What do we know about the Village BA?

A. Its players are amateurs.

B. It is divided into two quarters.

C. Its audience are local villagers.

D. It is tenser than professional games.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段的内容可知,参加比赛的都是当地村民,这说明选手都是业余爱好者。故选 A。

13. What does the author think of the grass-roots competition?

A. It is available to everyone.

B. It trains professional players.

C. It is played without strict rules.

D. It helps people find social connections.

D 细节理解题。根据第四段第二句可知,作者认为这种草根比赛能帮助人们找到社会联系。故选 D。

14. Why does the author mention his travel in Yangshuo?

A. To show the popularity of the Village BA.

B. To praise the place for its beautiful landscape.

C. To reflect the financial problems of the Village BA.

D. To prove the players of the Village BA are famous.

A 推理判断题。根据第五段的内容可知,作者提到他在阳朔的旅行是为了显示“Cun BA”受欢迎的程度。故选 A。

15. What is most important for the popularity of the Village BA?

A. People's fame concern.

B. People's spiritual needs.

C. People's desire for wealth.

D. People's passion for exploration.

B 细节理解题。根据最后一段最后一句可知,人们的精神需求是“Cun BA”流行的主要原因。故选 B。

II. 七选五

Running is the best way to keep our body fit and healthy. Those who want to burn fat and lose weight can run regularly in the morning. 16 When you run in the gentle morning atmosphere, you will get the psychological benefits along with the physical benefits. Running is more effective and also less time-consuming. Besides, in your busy day, morning is the free time to take some exercise.

17 Dr Scott Collier from the State University did a study on some groups of people of 40—60 years old. They walked or ran at 7 am, 1 pm and 7 pm. From this study, he saw that the group of

early exercisers experienced 10 percent drop in their blood pressure. So, we see that early morning run benefits us for the long term.

Another benefit of running is the stress relief. Every day running in the morning will help you to keep your mind fresh to start your daily work. 18 It will save you one step ahead to reach your goal. It provides you with a positive mood for a day.

Running is the best way to lose weight. But you should add some other training to build your muscle and burn fat. Some elite athletes say that when you wake up in the morning, you should first run for a while. 19

Most of the busy people do not have enough time to communicate properly with the family and social people. 20 The morning exercise such as running and walking gives us the opportunity to meet our neighbours. We can talk with them in the morning.

- A. Then start other physical exercise.
- B. Morning exercises lower blood pressure.
- C. So, you can start your day with a cheerful mind.
- D. So, try for a few weeks, and you will see your progress.
- E. Morning run forces you to wake up early in the morning.
- F. We miss many social events for our work or other purposes.
- G. We cannot describe the benefits of running in the morning in words.

答案: 16~20 GBCAF

III. 完形填空

In 490 BCE about 10,000 Greeks fought against the Persian army at a place called Marathon. It is 21 that the Persians were ten times as 22 as the Greeks. However, where there is a will, there is a way. 23 the brave attack of the Greeks, the Persians were badly beaten and 24 away from the plain of Marathon. When the Persians had run away, a soldier, who was the most famous 25 in Athens, was 26 to carry the good news to the city and he was also asked to march at full speed.

Although he had fought through the battle and 27 many wounds, the soldier at once started off towards the 28 city. 29 was twenty-six and a quarter miles from the plain of Marathon to the Marketplace of Athens, 30 there the elders of Athens had gathered 31 for news. He ran and ran over 32 and across plains. As he went on,

his lips became 33 and his breathing hard, but when he thought of the 34 of the people of Athens on hearing the news, he 35 harder than ever.

At last the elders of Athens heard a great shout and saw a soldier staggering (蹒跚) towards them. "Rejoice! Rejoice! We won!" said the soldier, and fell down dead.

In honour of this noble soldier and athlete, we have the marathon race in the modern Olympic Games, where the athletes run this same distance.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了现代奥运会的马拉松比赛是为了纪念一个从战场上跑到雅典传送捷报的希腊士兵而举办的。

21. A. designed B. said
C. told D. reported

B 根据下文中的 "that the Persians were ten times as 22 as the Greeks" 可知, 据说, 波斯军队的人数是希腊人的十倍。故选 B。

22. A. little B. few
C. many D. much

C 句意: 据说, 波斯军队的人数是希腊人的十倍。故选 C。

23. A. In B. To
C. Before D. By

D 根据下文中的 "the brave attack of the Greeks, the Persians were badly beaten and 24 away from the plain of Marathon" 可知, 在希腊人的英勇进攻下, 波斯人遭到重创, 被赶出了马拉松平原。by the attack of 表示 "在……的进攻下"。故选 D。

24. A. taken B. driven
C. got D. rolled

B 根据语境可知, 波斯人遭到重创, 被赶出了马拉松平原。故选 B。

25. A. player B. officer
C. soldier D. runner

D 根据语境可知, 这个士兵是雅典最出名的长跑运动员。故选 D。

26. A. advised B. ordered
C. succeeded D. allowed

B 根据下文中的 "to carry the good news to the city and he was also asked to march at full speed" 可知, 这个士兵被命令全速奔跑, 把波斯军队撤退的好消息带到城里。故选 B。

27. A. accepted B. harmed
C. received D. formed

C 根据上文中的 "he had fought through the battle and" 可知, 这个士兵参加了战斗并受了很多伤。故选 C。

28. A. far B. nearby
C. close D. distant
D 根据语境可知, 尽管受了很多伤, 这个士兵还是向遥远的城市出发了。故选 D。
29. A. This B. That
C. There D. It
D 根据语境及常识可知, 从马拉松平原到雅典市集有 26.25 英里。用 It 作形式主语。故选 D。
30. A. and B. but
C. or D. so
A 根据语境可知, 雅典的长者聚在那里等待前线的消息, 此处表示并列。故选 A。
31. A. asking B. calling
C. waiting D. looking
C 根据语境可知, 雅典的长者聚在那里等待前线的消息。故选 C。
32. A. railways B. hills
C. rivers D. highways
B 根据下文中的“and across plains”可知, 他越过山丘, 穿过平原。故选 B。
33. A. fancy B. wet
C. red D. dry
D 根据语境可知, 长时间的奔跑使他的嘴唇变干裂。故选 D。
34. A. joy B. sadness
C. disappointment D. surprise
A 根据下文中的“of the people of Athens on hearing the news”可知, 想到雅典市民听到这个消息的喜悦, 他就更加努力奔跑。故选 A。
35. A. walked B. ran
C. pretended D. volunteered
B 根据上文可知, 他是跑着去雅典的。故选 B。

IV. 语法填空

Every four years, thousands of highly trained and talented athletes take part in the Olympic Games, **36. hoping** (hope) to be recognised as the best of the best.

The Olympic Games have **37. a** history of about 3,000 years. The ancient Olympic Games began in the year 776 BCE and eventually died out around the year 393. During the almost 12 centuries, the Olympics were held only in Greece and only Greek men were allowed **38. to participate** (participate). After that, the ancient Olympic Games stopped. More than 1,500 years later, a Frenchman, **39. named** (name) Pierre de Coubertin, brought the Olympics back to life. He hoped that people of different racial origins and from different cultures could create a peaceful world by joint efforts. It was in 1896 **40. that**

the modern Olympics were first held in Athens. For over a century, both male and female athletes have devoted **41. themselves** (they) to achieving sporting excellence and pushing the boundaries of human achievement.

Among the well-known athletes, Cassius Clay and Jessica Ennis-Hill left a deep impression on people. Their remarkable achievements not only demonstrate great talent, hard work and devotion, but also sportsmanship, **42. which** has motivated other athletes from all over the world.

China has also made great **43. contributions** (contribute) to the development of the Olympics. Since the 1984 Los Angeles Olympics, the upward trend for Chinese sports **44. has been** (be) unstoppable. The 2008 Beijing Olympics were held **45. successfully** (success) and dozens of remarkable athletes came to public attention. Just as Coubertin believed, “With the Olympic Games, each generation celebrates its advent, its joy of living, its faith in the future, its ambition and its will to ascend.”

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假设你是晨光中学的李津。英国友好学校将派教师来你校参加为期一周的暑期交流活动。活动期间, 英方教师 Chris 将做一个有关西方艺术的讲座。现就讲座内容征求你校学生的意见。请根据以下提示给 Chris 写一封电子邮件:

1. 你喜欢的讲座话题(从音乐、美术、舞蹈中任选其一);
2. 选择该话题的原因及关于该话题你感兴趣的内容;
3. 希望从中有所收获。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节, 以使行文连贯。

Dear Chris,

I'm Li Jin, a student at Chenguang High School. Hearing that you'll give us a lecture on Western art and want to hear our opinions about which topic to cover, I feel an urge to make my voice heard.

Personally, I like dancing and have been taking dancing lessons in my spare time, so I want to learn what dance forms are popular among students in England. Meanwhile, I also hope to learn some folk dances from you during your lecture, which will help me improve my dancing.

Thank you for your time.

Yours sincerely,

Li Jin

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Once there was a little girl named Emily. Although her singing was very pleasant to hear, lacking courage, she never dared to sing in front of strangers.

One summer, the neighbourhood where she lived would hold a singing competition. Her best friend, Lucy, came to invite her to participate in the competition, but Emily said, "I'm afraid to take part in it." Her mother said, "It's okay. Just do it bravely." Emily followed her mother's advice and decided to give it a try. The day came. Emily and Lucy went to the competition site. But she was too timid (胆小的) to walk onto the stage. She had been waiting until others finished singing. She shakily (颤抖地) forced herself to stand on the stage. She started to sing, but her voice was so low. What was worse, she was so nervous that she forgot the lyrics after singing a few words. Laughed at by others, embarrassed and shy, she ran away from the stage.

Some naughty boys ran after her and said, "Emily, coward (胆小鬼)! Emily, coward!" Emily didn't argue with them. What she wanted was to go back home as quickly as she could. Finally, she rushed into the house, hugged her mother and cried sadly.

"Well, my poor girl. Don't cry. Tell me what happened to you," her mother asked. Emily looked up at her mother and told her what she had experienced.

Listening to her, her mother cupped her face

and said, "It doesn't matter, girl. As long as you practise singing more in front of strangers, you will become braver little by little. So, my girl, don't be beaten by a failure. You can go out to practise singing every day. No matter who is listening to you, go on singing and never stop. I believe there will be a harvest for you."

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

Emily listened to her mother carefully and followed her mother's suggestion. The next day, she began to practise singing outside. Gradually, her courage became greater and greater, and the sound of her singing was also louder and louder. Months later, she could sing as she was walking. A naughty boy who had laughed at her before cried to her, "Emily, coward! Emily, coward!" However, she chose to ignore his behaviour and continued to sing her songs.

Going on singing, she walked into the park, where many people were singing and dancing. Hearing her beautiful voice, some people stopped to listen to her singing and clapped for her. A grandma smiled at her and said, "Oh, little girl, you sing really well!" Emily said thanks to her. Emily felt pleased that she could sing confidently in front of strangers. The second year, the neighbourhood held the singing competition again. This time, Emily walked onto the stage bravely, and her loud and beautiful voice of singing moved all the people. They all cheered for her, including those boys who had laughed at her. Her mother was delighted to see the timid girl had been a brave one.

阶段评估

I. 阅读理解

A

Yellowstone National Park offers a variety of ranger programs throughout the park, and throughout the year. The following are descriptions of the ranger programs this summer.

Experiencing Wildlife in Yellowstone (May 26 to September 2)

Whether you're hiking a backcountry trail (小径), camping, or just enjoying the park's amazing

wildlife from the road, this quick workshop is for you and your family. Learn where to look for animals and how to safely enjoy your wildlife watching experience. Meet at the Canyon Village Store.

Junior Ranger Wildlife Olympics (June 5 to August 21)

Kids can test their skills and compare their abilities to the animals of Yellowstone. Stay for as little or as long as your plans allow. Meet in front of the Visitor Education

Center.

Canyon(峡谷) Talks at Artist Point (June 9 to September 2)

From a classic viewpoint, enjoy Lower Falls, the Yellowstone River, and the breathtaking colours of the canyon while learning about the area's natural and human history. Discover why artists and photographers continue to be drawn to this special place. Meet on the lower platform at Artist Point on the South Rim Drive for this short talk.

Photography Workshops (June 19 & July 10)

Enhance your photography skills—join Yellowstone's park photographer for a hands-on program to inspire new and creative ways of enjoying the beauty and wonder of Yellowstone.

6/19—Waterfalls & Wide Angles: meet at Artist Point.

7/10—Wildflowers & White Balance: meet at Washburn Trailhead in Chittenden parking area.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了黄石国家公园全年在整个园区内提供的各种各样的护林员项目。

- Which of the four programs begins the earliest?
A. Photography Workshops.
B. Junior Ranger Wildlife Olympics.
C. Canyon Talks at Artist Point.
D. Experiencing Wildlife in Yellowstone.
D 细节理解题。根据“**Experiencing Wildlife in Yellowstone** (May 26 to September 2)”“**Junior Ranger Wildlife Olympics** (June 5 to August 21)”“**Canyon(峡谷) Talks at Artist Point** (June 9 to September 2)”和“**Photography Workshops** (June 19 & July 10)”可知, Experiencing Wildlife in Yellowstone 开始的时间最早。故选 D。
- What is the short talk at Artist Point about?
A. Works of famous artists.
B. Protection of wild animals.
C. Basic photography skills.
D. History of the canyon area.
D 细节理解题。根据 **Canyon(峡谷) Talks at Artist Point** (June 9 to September 2) 中的“From a classic viewpoint, enjoy Lower Falls, the Yellowstone River, and the breathtaking colours of the canyon while learning about the area's natural and human history.”可知, 在 Artist Point 的简短演讲与峡谷地区的自然与人文历史有关。故选 D。
- Where will the participants meet for the July 10 photography workshop?
A. Artist Point.

B. Washburn Trailhead.

C. Canyon Village Store.

D. Visitor Education Center.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Photography Workshops** (June 19 & July 10) 中的“7/10—Wildflowers & White Balance: meet at Washburn Trailhead”可知, 7月10日参加者要在 Washburn Trailhead 集合。故选 B。

B

It was the dead of winter when Dad told me that he found a delicate small bag in the snow on his way out of a clinic. “It was filled with seeds, so I planted them in pots on the living room windowsill that gets such great light.” Dad was excited to have a planting project in the winter. He missed tending his garden plot, which was the size of a small farm.

I now lived out of state, but Dad reported in his daily phone calls, “These plants seem to have doubled in size overnight. It's only been a few weeks, and they are almost touching the ceiling.” Since Dad had green fingers, I wasn't surprised about that. I couldn't imagine what plant would do so well. I knew photos would not come soon because Dad had to use up the film in his camera and then have the pictures developed.

During one call, Dad said, “Today at work, one of my co-workers was wearing a T-shirt with a screen-printed picture of the same leaf as my mysterious houseplants. I told him that I had those same herbs, which were growing like weeds, and I had to get rid of them.” Dad continued, “He eagerly took them off my hands, and now I can see out the window again.”

This without doubt awakened my curiosity, and I decided to do some research. In those days, that meant going to the library's reference section. I did some reading and photocopied some articles. I mailed them to my father.

Dad called, “I just couldn't believe what I read in the papers you sent. Those pictures are exactly what my plants looked like. No wonder my co-worker was so willing to take them.”

We both laughed till we cried when we realised my father had just raised a harvest of precious Chinese herbs used to ease pain.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者的父亲种植了一些无名的种子,但在这些植物生长

期间他们把这些植物当成了无用的杂草,直到后来他们才知道这些植物是珍贵的中草药。

4. Why did Dad plant the seeds?

- A. Because it was the doctor's advice.
- B. Because he had a small farm at home.
- C. Because it satisfied his eagerness for gardening.
- D. Because the seeds would bring him rich rewards.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Dad was excited to have a planting project in the winter. He missed tending his garden plot, which was the size of a small farm.”可知,种植这些种子满足了他冬天对园艺的渴望。故选 C。

5. What does the underlined word “that” mean in Paragraph 2?

- A. Dad's gardening talents.
- B. The herbs' quick growing.
- C. Dad's efforts to tend the seeds.
- D. A planting project in the winter.

B 代词指代题。根据第二段中的““These plants seem to have doubled in size overnight. It's only been a few weeks, and they are almost touching the ceiling.” Since Dad had green fingers, I wasn't surprised about that.”可知,that 应指代植物快速生长这件事情。故选 B。

6. What can be inferred about the co-worker?

- A. He had little interest in the plants.
- B. He recognised the value of the plants.
- C. He desired to learn from the author's dad.
- D. He wanted to show his knowledge about plants.

B 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容以及倒数第二段中的“No wonder my co-worker was so willing to take them.”可知,父亲的同事认识到这些植物的价值。故选 B。

7. What is a suitable title for the text?

- A. Seed Catcher
- B. Window Scenery
- C. Helpful Co-worker
- D. Innocent Gardener

D 标题归纳题。根据最后一段的内容以及前文可知,文章主要讲述了作者的父亲种植了一些无名的种子,但在这些植物生长期间他们把这些植物当成了无用的杂草,直到后来他们才知道这些植物是珍贵的中草药。所以 D 项适合作为文章标题。故选 D。

C

Starship Technologies originated in Estonia but is now based in San Francisco. The company employs dozens of six-wheeled delivery robots on

college campuses. Starship is also adding four new schools to its operational field: University of Illinois Chicago, University of Kentucky, University of Nevada, and Embry-Riddle Aeronautical University.

Currently, the company operates on 20 college campuses in 15 states with a global fleet that totals 1,000 robots. This expansion will add 85 more robots to that fleet. Starship states that it has done over 1.5 million deliveries worldwide since its founding in 2014. The company has raised \$102 million so far, including \$17 million in fresh funding announced earlier this year.

Each robot in Starship is electric, has a box that can fit about 20 pounds of goods, and has a number of cameras to identify objects in the way and help guide it to its destination. The robots have a delivery area of three to four miles and can travel at a maximum speed of 4mph, which is obviously slower than a delivery by a human on a bike or in a car. And they can climb the edge of roads but not stairs, which may limit their appeal to customers who live in high-rise buildings.

Delivery via robots is still relatively brave in the US. There are a handful of start-ups operating delivery robots of varying sizes, from fully-sized minivans like Udelv to robots that are almost similar to Starship's like Amazon and Yandex. Recently, Postmates has also invented a delivery robot called Serve that can carry 50 pounds of goods. There are even some newly produced robots like Nuro, which has created what can be best described as a mini-robotic car, and others that fall somewhere in between. All claim to be automated, but some still require humans to monitor their movements.

Demand for delivery robots has risen since the pandemic, though it remains to be seen whether that will hold up as the economy reopens and fewer people rely on takeout from restaurants.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了 Starship Technologies 公司的配送机器人在大学校园的运营情况、配送机器人的特点以及配送机器人市场的现状和未来发展趋势。

8. What do we know about Starship Technologies from Paragraph 1?

- A. It operates globally.
- B. It employs university students as designers.
- C. It is spreading its service on campuses.
- D. It is diversifying into the field of scientific education.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段第三句可知, Starship Technologies 正在扩展其在校园中的服务。故选 C。

9. Why do people in high-rise buildings show little interest in delivery robots?

- A. Because they are likely to get lost.
- B. Because they work much slower than men.
- C. Because they have difficulty going up stairs.
- D. Because they are unable to identify customers.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段最后一句可知, 这些机器人不能爬楼梯, 这可能会限制它们对居住在高层建筑中的客户的吸引力。故选 C。

10. What does the underlined word “brave” probably mean in Paragraph 4?

- A. New.
- B. Efficient.
- C. Conventional.
- D. Courageous.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线词前的“Delivery via robots is still relatively”和后面的“in the US. There are a handful of start-ups operating delivery robots of varying sizes”可知, 通过机器人进行配送在美国仍然是相对较新的尝试, 有一些初创公司正在运营不同大小的配送机器人, 这说明“brave”在此处意味着“新的”, 故选 A。

11. What's the author's attitude towards the future demand for robot delivery?

- A. Indifferent.
- B. Objective.
- C. Skeptical.
- D. Worried.

B 观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可知, 作者很客观地看待人们对配送机器人行业的未来需求。故选 B。

D

Off Australia's northern coast, the remains of ancient coral reefs (珊瑚礁) form the bedrock of wooded islands, which are home to diverse animals and plants, including mangrove (红树林) forests that blanket their coasts and serve as vital habitats and carbon storers. A recent survey shows that expanding seas might have led to a massive mangrove increase, as reported on November 1 in *Proceedings of the Royal Society B*.

Mangroves absorb carbon dioxide and store it as “blue carbon”, a term for carbon that is hidden away in ocean environments. “There's a lot of interest in using mangrove blue carbon to lessen climate change,” says Kerry Lee Rogers, an environmental scientist at the University of Wollongong in Australia. But there remain a lot of questions around their capacity to adapt to sea level rise.

In 2021, a team led by Wollongong

environmental scientist Sarah Hamylton visited the Howick Islands to do a related research. They walked through the seawater to assess the plant diversity and measure individual trees. Using the measured widths and heights of several mangroves, the team calculated tree sizes for the rest of the forest to estimate the total mangrove quantity. The islands host nearly 54,000 metric tons of mangroves, the team estimates, which is roughly 10,000 more metric tons than in 1973.

The Howick Islands are uniquely suited to supporting mangroves as the ocean rises. At the end of the Last Glacial Maximum, around 12,000 years ago, water levels rose around northern Australia, and coral reefs grew upward to fill the space that had opened for them.

When sea levels fell thousands of years later, the exposed reefs turned into sediment (沉积物). With sea levels now rising again, the mixture of salt water and sediment makes a perfect home for the salt-tolerant mangroves.

Rogers and Hamylton are now working on a bigger effort to study mangroves around Australia. “If we're going to invest in mangroves to provide us with blue carbon and to protect shorelines, we need to understand how dynamic they are,” Rogers says.

【语篇解读】在澳大利亚北部的一些岛屿上, 海平面的上升导致了红树林面积的扩张。文章简要介绍了一些研究人员的研究情况。

12. What can be known about blue carbon?

- A. It is produced by ocean water.
- B. It is massively present in the air.
- C. It is friendly to environment.
- D. It is nutritious for mangroves.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“‘There's a lot of interest in using mangrove blue carbon to lessen climate change’”可知, 蓝碳对环境友好。故选 C。

13. What is the purpose of Hamylton's research?

- A. To measure the size of mangroves.
- B. To figure out where to plant mangroves.
- C. To confirm whether local natural environment is polluted.
- D. To see how the mangroves respond to sea level rise.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段最后一句和第三段首句可知, 研究的目的是查明红树林对海平面上升的反应。故选 D。

14. What makes the Howick Islands the suitable

habitats for mangroves?

- A. The diversity of ocean life.
- B. The increase of coral reefs.
- C. The combination of salt water and sediment.
- D. The formation of the bedrock of wooded islands.

C 细节理解题。根据第五段第二句可知,盐水和沉积物的组合使该群岛成为适合红树林生存的栖息地。故选 C。

15. What is the suitable title for the text?

- A. Climate Change Causes Sea Level Rise
- B. Sea Level Rise Helps Mangroves Boost
- C. Environment on Australia Islands Is Improving
- D. Climate Warming Poses Dangers to Mangroves

B 标题归纳题。通读全文,结合第一段最后一句可知,文章讲述的是在澳大利亚北部的一些岛屿上,海平面的上升导致了红树林面积的扩张。文章简要介绍了一些研究人员的研究情况。所以,B项“海平面上升有助于红树林生长”适合作为标题。故选 B。

II. 七选五

Productivity can be a struggle for many of us. Overflowing (堆积的) email inboxes, housework, and social obligations can easily make you feel overwhelmed. However, one simple tool that can help us stay updated is the to-do list. 16

There are three key reasons why lists are beneficial. Firstly, they help to reduce anxiety that comes with having never ending tasks. By writing everything down, we don't have to rely on our memory and can instead focus on the task at hand.

17 As well as this, our brains are more likely to remember information that is presented in a structured and organised manner. And finally, lists serve as proof of what we have achieved. 18

19 This is the name psychologists use for when we remember things we need to do our unfinished tasks, better than things we have already completed. Researchers from Wake Forest University tested the interference of the “Zeigarnik Effect” on a group of people. 20 It was stopped halfway through and only some people were allowed to make plans. The researchers found that the group permitted to plan had reduced anxiety and performed better in the second task. The problem was, the others still had the warm-up task stuck in their active memory. So, once we tick something off our list, our brain forgets about it and we can relax.

All in all, it seems lists are a valuable tool for

staying updated!

- A. The experiment began with a warm-up task.
- B. Write it down, do the tasks and cross them off—simple!
- C. They can help boost our sense of accomplishment and motivation.
- D. A to-do list item is the kind of thing that will take long hours of work.
- E. Secondly, lists provide structure and guidance, giving us a plan to follow.
- F. However, in the never-ending sea of tasks, you feel like you aren't keeping up.
- G. Another possible reason our brains love lists is because of something called the “Zeigarnik Effect”.

答案:16~20 BECGA

III. 完形填空

I believe one person can be a change. People can improve the lives of those around them, even if they only have the 21 to make a person smile. In our life many people mean so much to us. I had a(n) 22 with such a person when I was a freshman in college.

Initially, I was scared and homesick wandering around campus to find a place where I 23. I felt I would have to 24. In fact, I was 25 that I would have to drop my music class because it was the one that I was truly looking forward to. Later I met Dr Chafin in his class. After I 26 my situation, Dr Chafin offered a solution: stay in the 27. The only thing that I could do was to cry in the classroom. Dr Chafin 28 me, and before I knew it I was 29 that classroom feeling much more confident. That term 30 me a lot, but at the end of it I came out knowing that I could 31 Mozart's works and I could do anything that I was 32 to do.

I 33 to take that same music class, and term after term Dr Chafin taught me to believe in myself, to set high expectations for my work, and to keep moving towards my goals, even if they seemed 34. To Dr Chafin I owe all my 35 and progress.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者在大学时期遇到的一位对其产生深远影响的老师,以及这段经历如何改变作者的态度和人生观的故事。

- 21. A. courage
- B. promise
- C. right
- D. ability

D 根据后文的“make a person smile”可知,此处应是“让人微笑的能力”。故选 D。

22. A. encounter B. chat
C. meal D. argument

A 根据前文的“In our life many people mean so much to us.”以及后文的“such a person when I was a freshman in college”可知,生活中,很多人对我们来说都很重要,作者在大学一年级的的时候就遇到过这样一个人。故选 A。

23. A. stayed B. belonged
C. departed D. headed

B 根据上文的“I was scared and homesick”可知,作者刚上大学时,无所适从,所以应是找到一个属于他的地方逃避现实。故选 B。

24. A. struggle B. begin
C. quit D. reflect

C 根据后文的“I would have to drop my music class”可知,作者不得不放弃他的音乐课,所以是退学。故选 C。

25. A. depressed B. pleased
C. astonished D. confused

A 根据后文的“I would have to drop my music class because it was the one that I was truly looking forward to”可知,作者不得不放弃真正期待的音乐课,所以应是变得沮丧。故选 A。

26. A. controlled B. assessed
C. explained D. handled

C 根据后文的“Dr Chafin offered a solution”可知,Dr Chafin 提出了一个解决办法,所以应是作者向他解释了自己的情况。故选 C。

27. A. dormitory B. office
C. library D. class

D 根据后文的“The only thing that I could do was to cry in the classroom.”可知,作者在教室里哭,所以 Dr Chafin 建议他待在班级里。故选 D。

28. A. trusted B. praised
C. comforted D. accepted

C 根据上文的“The only thing that I could do was to cry in the classroom.”可知,作者在教室里哭,所以 Dr Chafin 安慰了作者。故选 C。

29. A. entering B. leaving
C. checking D. visiting

B 根据后文的“feeling much more confident”可知,作者变得更自信了,所以应是离开教室,去迎接新的生活。故选 B。

30. A. benefited B. challenged
C. inspired D. disappointed

B 根据上文的“Initially, I was scared and homesick wandering around campus to find a place where I 23.”可知,作者一开始不习惯新学校的生活,一度想放弃,所以那学期给了他

很大的挑战。故选 B。

31. A. refer to B. look into
C. take away D. get through

D 根据后文的“Mozart's works”并结合选项以及前文内容可知,作者大学学音乐,所以应是“理解莫扎特的作品”。故选 D。

32. A. proud B. eager
C. afraid D. lucky

B 根据前文的“I could do anything that I was”并结合选项可知,应是“我可以做任何我渴望做的事情”。故选 B。

33. A. expected B. refused
C. continued D. hesitated

C 根据后文的“and term after term”可知,作者继续他的学业。故选 C。

34. A. impossible B. unpredictable
C. attainable D. reasonable

A 根据前文的“Dr Chafin taught me to believe in myself, to set high expectations for my work, and to keep moving towards my goals, even if they seemed”并结合选项可知,应是“继续朝着目标前进,即使它们看起来是不可能的”。故选 A。

35. A. ambition B. wisdom
C. generosity D. change

D 根据前文内容可知,作者刚进入大一时,不习惯学校生活,显得无所适从,一度想放弃;当他向 Dr Chafin 解释后,Dr Chafin 给他建议,让他待在教室里;慢慢地作者变得自信,开始走出教室,迎接新生活,并完成学业,所以是“我所有的改变和进步都要归功于 Dr Chafin”。故选 D。

IV. 语法填空

Smooth and multifunctional, Xuan paper is known as the “Paper of Ages”. 36. Where the term Xuan paper first appeared was in *On Famous Paintings Through the Ages*, a book written by Zhang Yanyuan. In this book, he described Xuan paper as 37. an ideal carrier for calligraphy and paintings.

Handmade Xuan paper from Jingxian county, Anhui province, was listed as a tribute (贡品) for 38. its (it) best quality during the period. Making Xuan paper is extremely 39. demanding (demand). Sandalwood bark (檀香树皮) goes through 108 procedures together with rice straw over the three years 40. before it can transform into some fine Xuan paper.

Even for the most skilled craftsman, 41. mastering (master) all the steps would hardly be possible. Different proportions (比例) of bark to straw during paper-making process can create a 42. variety (vary) of canvases (画布) best suited for artistic expression in paintings or calligraphy. Xuan paper 43. has accompanied (accompany) Chinese poets for

thousands of years. **44.** Unlike (like) other forms of paper, it is very resistant to damage brought by time. It is the durability (耐用性) that has made the preservation of many valuable works from ancient China possible.

Paper-making is a crystallization of wisdom of the ancient Chinese. Xuan paper is **45.** truly (true) the peak of paper-making.

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

随着移动支付的普及,线上支付软件逐渐成为人们生活中主要的支付工具。你校同学就移动的利弊展开了激烈的讨论。请你写一篇英语短文,介绍正反方的观点并陈述自己的看法。

内容包括:

1. 介绍正反方的观点以及相应的理由;
2. 提出个人的观点。

注意:1. 80 词左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,使行文连贯。

With the popularity of mobile payment, apps have gradually become the main payment tools. There's a heated discussion about its advantages and disadvantages among students in our school.

Those who support mobile payment believe it offers significant convenience. People can make purchases instantly, anytime and anywhere, without carrying cash. However, opponents point out that mobile payment also presents certain challenges, such as online fraud, personal information breaches, and a lack of awareness of actual financial situations, and so on.

In my view, mobile payment represents a significant technology advancement that has greatly enhanced our daily lives. We should use it wisely.

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面的材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

It had been a challenging but rewarding term, filled with hard work and a thirst for knowledge. As I handed in my final assignment and saw it was graded A, a sense of pride and satisfaction washed over me. Little did I know that my accomplishments had not gone unnoticed by my families, who had been closely observing my progress.

On the first day of the summer vacation, my mother told me excitedly that we would pay a visit to Marco the next day to cheer for my progress in academic study. When I got the good news, I felt on top of the world and could not hold back my excitement. As I lay in bed that night, a mix of anticipation and delight welled up in my heart, and I

slid into a dream-filled sleep, eagerly awaiting the arrival of the coming adventure.

After we arrived in Marco, my parents said that we would first visit the Marco Tower. Marco Tower, built in the late 19th century, is a historic landmark that showcases the rich architectural heritage of the city. It is also considered one of the top tourist attractions in the region. Hearing the inspiring news, I bounced up and down with joy. But then I felt a bit uneasy because of my fear of heights.

Inside the lift, my palms grew sweaty as the anxiety consumed me. I paced back and forth in the tower lift, unsure of whether I would have the courage. After the lift reached the specific floor, I gasped (倒吸一口气) in horror. The floor here was made of glass, so one could appreciate the height of the tower and take a real adventure. Seeing my family take out their phones to shoot the grand views, I felt under pressure. Then my mother smiled at me and said encouragingly, "Just take it easy and you can do it."

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

I wasn't sure whether to stay or not. The thought of exploring new places and creating lasting memories with my family was undeniably inviting. However, it was obviously too challenging for me to step on to that glass. As I weighed the options in my mind, my mother's words echoed in my ears, reminding me of the courage and confidence I once had. Taking a deep breath, I made up my mind to seize this opportunity and embrace the adventure awaiting me in Marco.

I was totally struck by the height of the tower. My eyes were immediately drawn to the magnificent Marco Tower that stood tall in the city centre. Its charm was without equal, its soaring height dominating the skyline. I couldn't help feeling a mixture of awe and admiration. I reminded myself of the encouragement from my loved ones. As we left the tower, I expressed my gratitude to my mother for her consistent support. She taught me an important lesson that day: with a little encouragement, we can achieve extraordinary things.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and society, whose topic is the inspiration of art. This unit introduces the world celebrities in different fields, such as painter Pablo Picasso, sculptor Auguste Rodin, literary theorist Zhu Guangqian, visual artist Florentijn Hofman, composer Tan Dun, and dancer Dao Meilan, telling the famous works and their sources of inspiration, and also introduces the perception of these celebrities. At the same time, this unit also discusses the relationship between technology and art. This unit aims to introduce relevant vocabulary and grammatical structures through the topic of “art”, to achieve the overall goal of the unit, that is, to guide students to understand the successful deeds of these celebrities, to bravely explore life, create and discover the beauty of life, discover their own life value, and realise the ideal of life with persistent spirit.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	通过“艺术”这一话题,引入相关词汇与语法结构,实现单元总目标;通过阅读一个艺术展的介绍和评论,掌握复合形容词的构词规律。
		语法	动词不定式、动词-ing形式和动词-ed形式作表语。
		语篇	能围绕本单元主题语境,根据本单元提供的个人故事、海报等多模态语篇,综合运用各种语言技能,并结合现有知识储备,读懂与艺术相关的文章。
		语用	恰当使用所学词汇及表达介绍艺术家,描述和鉴赏艺术品,了解中外艺术家创作艺术作品时的思维方式及灵感的获取等方面的异同,深化对本单元主题意义的理解。
	语言技能	听	听说部分为两件艺术作品的介绍,帮助学生学习如何描述艺术作品。
		说	能谈论与艺术家、艺术品及艺术灵感来源相关的话题,恰当使用所学词汇及表达介绍艺术家、描述和鉴赏艺术品。
		读	能读懂与艺术相关的文章,并通过主旨大意归纳、语篇类型分析、细节理解和开放式问答等活动,深入思考,探究主题意义。
		写	能加深对传统绘画艺术和科技成画的理解,对古典艺术和现代艺术进行初步理解和区分,并且初步了解邀请函的写作内容和写作方法。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	能通过运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合本单元提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,提高自己的理解和表达能力。
文化意识	能理解伴随着科技发展艺术形式发生的改变,从而辩证地看待艺术与科技之间的关系;能客观、理性地发表自己的观点,更好地实践批判性思维;能联系自身实际,理解艺术流作品和技术流作品各自的价值,拓宽视野。
思维品质	能运用本单元所学知识,并通过比较、分析,联系生活实际,有逻辑、有层次地介绍艺术家的生平事迹,能完整地写出有关艺术灵感方面的短文,也能表达个人对艺术品的鉴赏,对不同观点进行对比和评价,实现知识与思维能力的拓展和迁移,树立自己的审美观。

◦ 必备知识

必背 单词	quote, folk, motion, compose, dedicate, heritage, charm, graceful, abstract, wire, innovative, trend, contrast, literally, concept, distinct, innovation
重点 表达	find out, on display, all over the world, turn to, pass down, come to life, set... in motion, so as to, bring out, light up, a variety of, rather than, lead to, as a result, be accessible to, take for example, take in, be unfamiliar with, for sure
重点 知识	1. see+宾语+宾语补足语 2. 状语从句的省略
单元 语法	动词不定式、动词-ing 形式和动词-ed 形式作表语
单元 写作	邀请信

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Read the title of the unit and understand its meaning, name several world-famous artists, activate the existing language and background knowledge, and pave the way for the learning activities of the unit.
2. Watch videos about Leonardo da Vinci to learn about the artist's creative path and the source of his inspiration, and cultivate the ability of observation and listening comprehension.
3. Through skimming and intensive reading, get the general idea of the text, understand the famous works of Florentijn Hofman, Tan Dun and Dao Meilan, the characteristics of their works, the source of artistic inspiration and their understanding of art.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. motion *n.* 动, 运动
2. compose *v.* 作(曲)
3. quote *n.* 引文, 引语
4. folk *adj.* 民间的, 民俗的
5. charm *n.* 魅力, 魔力
6. graceful *adj.* 优美的, 优雅的
7. turn to 转向; 求助于
8. come to life 使……活跃起来
9. set... in motion 使……开始
10. bring out 使显现, 使表现出; 阐明; 出版; 生产
11. on display 展览, 公开展出

12. be known for 因……而闻名

13. find out 弄清; 查明

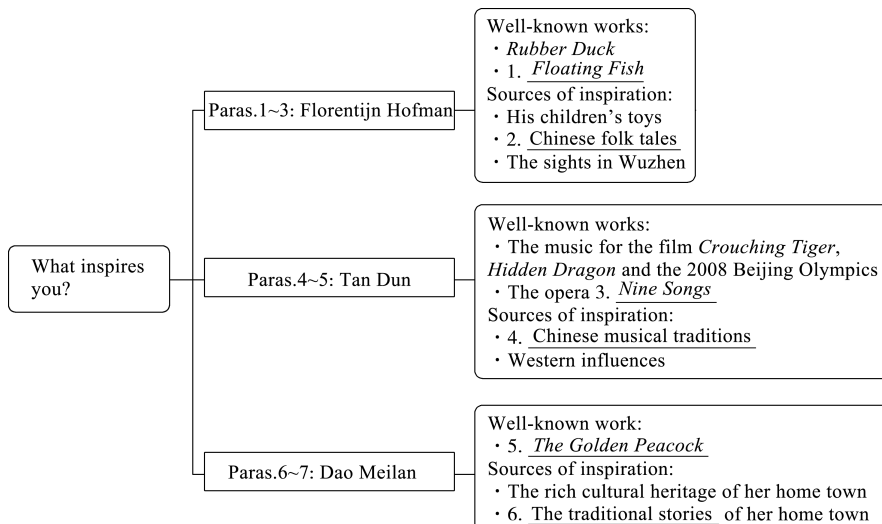
(二) 阅读词汇

1. float *v.* 浮, 漂
2. peacock *n.* (雄)孔雀
3. crouch *v.* 蹲下; 蹲伏
4. princess *n.* 公主
5. Dutch *adj.* 荷兰的
6. pass down 传下来; 遗传
7. so as to do 为了做……
8. go deeper into 深入到……
9. folk tale 民间故事

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Which of the following is Hofman's inspiration for *Rubber Duck*?
A. Chinese folk tales.
B. Chinese musical traditions.
C. His children's toys.
D. His life in Wuzhen.
- How did Hofman get his inspiration for *Floating Fish*?
A. By living with the Dai people.
B. Through his experience in Wuzhen.
C. By turning to his children's toys.
D. By observing the fish carefully.
- What do the words Tan Dun says in Paragraph 5 refer to?
A. To advise combining Chinese music with sounds from the whole world.
B. To advise that Chinese music be recognised by the world.
C. To advise musicians from other countries to learn from Chinese music.
D. To advise Chinese people to listen to music from all over the world.
- Which is Dao Meilan's famous work?
A. *The Golden Peacock*.
B. *Floating Fish*.
C. *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon*.
D. *Nine Songs*.

答案: 1~4 CBAA

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- Every artist's wish is to create something that expresses an idea.
[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。to create... idea 为不定式短语作表语,该短语包含一个 that 引导的定语从句,修饰先行词 something。
[尝试翻译]每位艺术家都希望通过创作表达自己的理念。
- Florentijn Hofman is a Dutch artist, whose large sculptures are on display all over the world.
[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。whose 引导非限制性定语从句,并在从句中作定语。
[尝试翻译]弗洛伦泰因·霍夫曼是一位荷兰艺术家,他的大型雕塑作品在世界各地展出。
- To listen to Tan's music is to experience a mix of Chinese musical traditions and Western influences.
[句子分析]本句是一个简单句。To listen to Tan's music 为不定式短语作主语, to experience... 为不定式短语作表语。
[尝试翻译]欣赏谭盾的音乐,就是在感受中国音乐传统和西方影响的交融。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- Who is most widely known for composing music for the film *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon*?
Tan Dun.
- Why do you think the author chose to use quotes instead of reported speech in the text?
略

Unit 4 课后素养评价 (十三)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

For some of us, the excitement of seeing a performance at a European opera house is just not enough. Fortunately, opera houses throughout Europe open their backstage doors to the public. Take advantage of these opportunities to look behind the scenes of some of the world's great opera houses.

Teatro alla Scala Opera House Tours—Milan

Discover the activities within the opera house on a backstage tour of the La Scala theatre in Milan. The tour also includes an overview of the history of the theatre and guides you through the auditorium (观众席) and the theatre boxes.

Paris Opera House Tours—Paris

While it is possible to walk around the public areas of the beautiful Paris Opera House on your own, guided tours are also offered and are led by an English-speaking guide. During the 90-minute tour, you will learn about the theatre's history and its architecture. You will also have an opportunity to visit the grand staircase.

Royal Opera House Tours—London

It is one of the most comprehensive of the opera house tours in Europe. The guide at the Royal Opera House takes you through sections of the backstage area to the prop (道具) room, where workers build

the sets, the costume shop and the ballet studios. There's a chance that you will even catch the ballet dancers backstage in practice in their big ballet studio.

La Fenice Opera House Tours—Venice

Teatro La Fenice in Venice offers a couple of options for visitors. A self-guided tour of the beautiful halls and grounds with a audio guide is available at the box office. Guided tours are also available with an expert that will explain the history of the opera house from its origins to its rebuilding.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了四个歌剧院为观众开放后台区域,观众可以利用这些机会来了解世界上一些伟大歌剧院的幕后故事。

1. In which opera house might you be able to see a costume shop backstage?

- A. The Teatro alla Scala Opera House.
- B. The Paris Opera House.
- C. The Royal Opera House.
- D. The La Fenice Opera House.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Royal Opera House—London** 部分中的“The guide at the Royal Opera House takes you through sections of the backstage area... the ballet studios.”可知,你可能在 Royal Opera House 看到在后台的服装间。故选 C。

2. What do the above four opera houses have in common?

- A. They all offer free guided tours.
- B. They all open their backstage areas to the public.
- C. They are all free to the public.
- D. They are all located in France.

B 推理判断题。根据第一段中的“Fortunately, opera houses throughout Europe open their backstage doors to the public.”可知,整个欧洲的歌剧院向公众敞开了歌剧院后台的大门。因此,这四个歌剧院的共同点是它们都向公众开放后台区域。故选 B。

3. Where can we most probably find this text?

- A. In a sports magazine.
- B. In an adventure novel.
- C. In a history book.
- D. On a culture website.

D 文章出处题。文章介绍了四个歌剧院为观众开放后台区域,观众可以利用这些机会来了解世界上一些伟大歌剧院的幕后故事,这是与文化艺术有关的话题。因此,我们最可能在一个有关文化方面的网站上找到这样的文章。故选 D。

II. 七选五

More than the challenge of fitting into a new culture, there are many benefits that a student can get with an exchange programme. These benefits include:

Diverse academic opportunities. It's not actually the travel that students would love to study abroad.

1 Instead, it will be an offering of diverse opportunities for the student. For example, the student will be able to experience the differences of teaching methods, educational formats and academic programme offerings.

2 Studying in another country opens the student to different surroundings, which makes the student know about the country's customs, people and regions. Knowing another culture also teaches the student how to be open-minded.

Personality development. **3** Thus, the student needs to make decisions on his or her own and face the consequences or enjoy the fruits of that decision. With this, the student is taught how real life is, what it means to be responsible, and how being resourceful can help in his or her survival. It's no wonder that most students who returned after the exchange programme were seen with significant improvement in their personal development. **4**

So, why not let your child have the benefits of a student exchange programme? Exchange programmes or study-abroad programmes are a great investment for the student. **5** Just imagine, by transforming students in a foreign country, the society is starting to build a new blood of more mature people who might just be able to create a better tomorrow for the generations to come.

- A. Improved protection of social rights.
- B. Better awareness of cultural differences.
- C. More importantly, it is helpful for the improvement of the society.
- D. Most of them are more confident and have better decision-making skills.
- E. The hosting school can also benefit by making a student's dream come true.
- F. Although students really love travelling, studying is not a travel-fun activity at all times.
- G. Being an exchange student often means living far away from home and parental guidance.

答案: 1~5 FBGDC

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务目标

1. Know how artists get their inspiration.
2. Learn to find out useful information from what a person says.
3. Master the key words and expressions in the text.
4. Express your ideas about inspiration.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. A small boat was **floating** on the surface of the water. 浮, 漂
2. **Folk** art and customs are traditional or typical of a particular community or nation. 民间的, 民俗的
3. If you are **crouching**, your legs are bent under you so that you are close to the ground and leaning forwards slightly. 蹲下; 蹲伏
4. The word “**ethnic**” means “connected with or relating to different racial or cultural groups of people”. 民族的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>motion</u> <i>n.</i> 动, 运动	<u>motionless</u> <i>adj.</i> 静止的, 一动不动的
<u>compose</u> <i>v.</i> 作(曲)	<u>composition</u> <i>n.</i> 作曲; 创作
	<u>composer</u> <i>n.</i> 作曲家
<u>quote</u> <i>n.</i> 引文, 引语 <i>v.</i> 引述, 引用, 引证	<u>quotation</u> <i>n.</i> 语录; 引用; 引语

III. 补全短语

1. turn to 转向; 求助于
2. come to life 使……活跃起来
3. find out 弄清; 查明
4. set... in motion 使……开始
5. have... in common 有……共同之处

6. bring out 使显示; 出版; 生产; 解释; 说明

7. on display 展览, 公开展出

8. so as to 以便; 以致

9. go deeper into 深入到……

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: whose 引导非限制性定语从句

Florentijn Hofman is a Dutch artist, whose large sculptures are on display all over the world.
弗洛伦泰因·霍夫曼是一位荷兰艺术家, 他的大型雕塑作品在世界各地展出。

2. 句型公式: see + 宾语 + 宾语补足语

During the walk and my stay here in the town, I saw the fish being fed by people.
我住在镇上期间, 当我散步的时候, 看到人们在喂鱼。

3. 句型公式: has/have been doing

Since his first opera, *Nine Songs*, Tan Dun has been using a combination of Chinese music and sounds from all over the world to tell stories.
谭盾自第一部歌剧《九歌》开始, 就一直在用中国音乐和来自世界各地的音乐讲述故事。

4. 句型公式: so as to 引导状语从句

As Tan once said, Chinese music should carry “universal expression” of the human spirit so as to be recognised by the whole world.
谭曾说过, 中国音乐应该承载人文精神的“共同理念”, 才能被世界认可。

任务型课堂

1. compose *v.* 作(曲); 构成

[教材原文] He is most widely known for **composing** music for the film *Crouching Tiger, Hidden Dragon* and the 2008 Beijing Olympics.
他最广为人知的是为电影《卧虎藏龙》和 2008 年北京奥运会作曲。

[归纳拓展]

(1) compose oneself 使自己镇定

be composed of (= be made up of/consist of) 由……组成

(2) composer *n.* 作曲家

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① He is a famous composer of pop music and has composed more than 200 songs so far. (compose)

② Emma frowned, making an effort to compose herself (her).

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之情绪描写)从这次经历中,我懂得了生活中不仅有阳光,还有风雨。

① From this experience, I learned that life is composed of not only sunshine but also storms.

② From this experience, I learned that life is made up of not only sunshine but also storms.

③ From this experience, I learned that life consists of not only sunshine but also storms.

2. so as to 以便;以致

[教材原文] As Tan once said, Chinese music should carry “universal expression” of the human spirit **so as to** be recognised by the whole world. 谭曾说过,中国音乐应该承载人文精神的“共同理念”,才能被世界认可。

[归纳拓展]

so as to do sth. 相当于 in order to do sth., 意为“为了做某事,以便做某事”,其引出的目的状语可以转换成 so that 或 in order that 引导的目的状语从句。

名师点拨

(1) 使用 so as to do sth. 结构时,不定式的逻辑主语必须与句子主语一致。

(2) so as to do sth. 的否定形式是在 to 前面加 not, 即 so as not to do sth. “为了不做某事”。

(3) so as to 引出的目的状语不可位于句首,而 in order to 引出的目的状语既可位于句首,也可位于句中。

[即学即练]

(1) 一句多译

为了学习汉语,他来到了中国。

① He came to China in order to/so as to learn Chinese.

② He came to China in order that/so that he could learn Chinese.

③ In order to learn Chinese, he came to China.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之劝告信)我们要从错误中吸取教训,以便在将来成为更好的人。

We should learn a lesson from our mistakes so as to/in order to be a better person in the future.

3. bring out 使显现;使表现出;阐明;出版;生产

[教材原文] She created amazing dances to **bring out** the charm of the beautiful birds and the local people's lives.

她创作了令人惊叹的舞蹈以展现美丽鸟类的魅力和当地人民的生活。

[归纳拓展]

bring about 引起;致使;造成;带来

bring back 使忆起;归还;恢复;带回

bring down 让……降下来;使倒下

bring in 产生(利益);赚到;引进

bring up 养育;提出;呕吐

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Could you bring out the meaning of this poem in detail?

② These experts have very definite ideas on how to bring up children.

③ Science has brought about many changes in our lives.

④ (2023·新课标I卷) Then he went around to local ponds and streams and brought back some plants and animals.

⑤ She has three part-time jobs, which bring in about \$24,000 a year.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之人物介绍) 我的英语老师总是尽她最大的努力使我发挥出最好的一面。

My English teacher always tries her best to bring out the best in me.

② (应用文写作之倡议书) 人工智能技术给我们的学习方式带来了巨大的变化。

The artificial intelligence technology has brought about great changes in the way we learn.

4. see+宾语+宾语补足语

[教材原文] During the walk and my stay here in the town, I **saw the fish being fed** by people. You **see also some fish sculpted** on the wall.

我住在镇上期间,当我散步的时候,看到人们在喂鱼。墙上还有鱼形的浮雕。

[句式分析] 这两句是感官动词 see 的复合结构,第一句中 being fed 是现在分词一般式的被动语态作宾语补足语,表示动作正在被做;第二句中 sculpted 是过去分词作宾语补足语,表示被动和完成。

[归纳拓展]

“see+宾语+宾语补足语”的常用结构:

(1) see sb./sth. done (被动、完成)

(2) see sb./sth. doing sth. (主动、正在进行)

(3) see sb./sth. do sth. (主动、完成)

(4) see sb./sth. being done (被动、正在进行)

名师点拨

(1) 在变为被动语态时, see sb. do sth. 应改为 sb. be seen to do sth.。

(2) 能接不带 to 的不定式、现在分词和过去分词作宾语补足语的感官动词还有 feel、hear、observe、notice、watch 等。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

- ① When I passed the window yesterday, I saw him drawing (draw) a picture.
- ② When I approached him, I saw James being held (hold) up in the water by old Tom.
- ③ I saw all the dishes washed (wash) and put away.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之场景描写)我经常看见那位老人坐在院子里晒太阳。

I often see the old man sit in the yard, enjoying sunshine.

多义词汇 专练

1. They **floated** the idea of increased taxes on alcohol. B
A. v. 漂浮 B. v. 提出(想法或计划)
C. v. (使货币汇率)自由浮动
2. The princess was so confused that she could hardly **compose** her thoughts. C
A. v. 组成;构成
B. v. 创作;作曲
C. v. 使镇静

Unit 4 课后素养评价 (十四)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 单句语法填空

1. There wasn't a breath of wind and the willow branches were motionless (motion).
2. Beethoven is one of the greatest composers (compose).
3. The man waiting (wait) for her at the gate in the heavy rain was her father.
4. Zhangjiajie is most widely (wide) known for its amazing natural scenery.
5. Dreams can be a rich source of inspiration (inspire) for an artist.
6. It's clear that her painting has been influenced (influence) by Picasso so far.
7. As he said, if we want to be struck by inspiration, we must go deep into our lives.
8. We are very grateful to you for what you did for us.
9. This generation of mothers and adult daughters has a lot in common.
10. He is well known as a writer for his great novels.

II. 短语填空

bring out; turn to; set... in motion; come to life; on display; instead of

1. Some of her most famous photos are on display in this exhibition.
2. It was fantastic to see my creation come to life on the screen.
3. It's unwise of you to turn to the dictionary whenever you come across a new word.
4. The spices (香料) really bring out the flavour of the meat.
5. They agreed to this, and the plan was set in motion.
6. They raised prices and cut production, instead of cutting costs.

III. 完成句子

1. Kemp knocked loudly so as to be heard above the high babble of voices.
肯普大声地敲门,以压过叽叽喳喳的高声喧哗而让人听见。
2. They spent three years (in) building the highway.
修建这条高速公路花了他们三年的时间。
3. On their way to work, people saw a car hit by a truck.
在上班的路上,人们看见一辆小轿车被卡车撞了。
4. As you can see, we're still working.
正如你看到的,我们仍在工作。
5. She is very tired. She has been typing letters all day.
她很累。她一整天都在录入信件。

IV. 完形填空

A few weeks ago, I received a package containing a small batch (一批) of seeds from my friend. When I asked her what it would grow 1, a flicker of a smile crossed her face. "Just plant them and be patient. You'll see for yourself 2," she said.

I sowed the seeds in a beautiful flowerpot. In the first few days, I was excited to search for the slightest 3 of germination (发芽). But nothing happened. With 4 homework, I began to feel frustrated and a little bit disappointed. How much I 5 a splash of colour in my fast-paced life!

I watered the plant carefully. I placed the plant in the sunlight and rotated (旋转) it for a(n) 6 illumination (光照). On the fourth day, to my great surprise, a few light green sprouts (芽) 7.

Bending down and carefully studying the seedlings, I could almost 8 them growing. More days passed, the flowerpot soon became 9 with coriander (香菜) plants.

Now they are taller than the edge of the pot, 10 shaking their verdant (青翠的) leaves in the gentle 11 of the wind, as if they are merrily singing a song of 12 and freedom.

I am certain that after a few more days, my coriander plants will be ready for 13. Thanks to my friend and my patience, these plants have played a crucial part in 14 my everyday life. They may not be a main food on our table, but sprinkling some will surely add a 15 of flavour to our dishes to spice up (为……调味) our busy days.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者的朋友给她寄来一包种子,作者细心照料,最终收获了香菜的故事。

1. A. into B. for
C. up D. out

A 根据下文的“Just plant them and be patient. You'll see for yourself 2”可知,作者好奇种子会长成什么样子。故选 A。

2. A. gradually B. incredibly
C. ultimately D. intently

C 根据上文的“Just plant them and be patient.”可知,耐心地种植,最终会看到种子长成什么样子。故选 C。

3. A. samples B. signs
C. routes D. proofs

B 根据下文的“... of germination (发芽). But nothing happened.”可知,作者在寻找种子发芽的迹象。故选 B。

4. A. apparent B. distinct
C. conventional D. massive

D 根据下文的“I began to feel frustrated and a little bit disappointed”可知,作业量很大。故选 D。

5. A. allowed for B. longed for
C. provided for D. went for

B 根据下文的“a splash of colour”可知,作者渴望快节奏的生活中有一点色彩。故选 B。

6. A. intense B. violent
C. balanced D. exceptional

C 根据上文的“I placed the plant in the sunlight and rotated (旋转) it”可知,作者旋转植物是为了它能够得到均衡的光照。故选 C。

7. A. emerged B. hatched
C. reserved D. sank

A 根据上文的“a few light green sprouts (芽)”可知,植物发芽了。故选 A。

8. A. pray B. assess
C. forecast D. hear

D 根据下文的“as if they are merrily singing a song of 12 and freedom”可知,作者几乎能听到它们在生长。故选 D。

9. A. conflicted B. facilitated
C. crowded D. surrounded

C 根据下文的“I am certain that after a few more days, my coriander plants will be ready for 13.”可知,花盆里长满了香菜。故选 C。

10. A. subsequently B. constantly
C. extensively D. merely

B 根据下文的“shaking their verdant (青翠的) leaves in the gentle 11 of the wind”可知,在微风的轻语中,青翠的叶子不停地摇晃着。故选 B。

11. A. howl B. scream
C. thunder D. whisper

D 根据下文的“as if they are merrily singing a song of 12 and freedom”可知,在微风的低语中,青翠的叶子不停地摇晃着。故选 D。

12. A. initiative B. leisure
C. harmony D. luxury

B 根据上文的“merrily”可知,这些植物仿佛在欢快地唱着一首安逸自由的歌。故选 B。

13. A. possession B. consumption
C. exposure D. harvest

D 根据下文的“They may not be a main food on our table”可知,香菜过几天就可以收获了。故选 D。

14. A. breaking into B. relating to
C. brightening up D. wearing down

C 根据上文的“How much I 5 a splash of colour in my fast-paced life!”可知,这些植物在点亮作者的日常生活中发挥了关键作用。故选 C。

15. A. touch B. bunch
C. host D. lot

A a touch of 为固定短语,意为“少许,一点儿”。根据上文的“but sprinkling some”可知,此处表示洒上一些肯定会为我们的菜肴增添一丝风味。故选 A。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Learn *to*-infinitive, *-ing* and *-ed* forms as predicative and use them properly.
2. Find out people's attitude towards an artwork.
3. Master compound adjectives and guess a compound adjective's meaning.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The higher we climbed, the more **awe-inspiring** the scenery became. 令人惊叹的
2. A **cable** is a thick wire, or a group of wires inside a rubber or plastic covering, which is used to carry electricity or electronic signals. 电缆
3. A **trend** is a change or development towards something new or different. 趋势, 动向
4. A **contrast** is a great difference between two or more things which is clear when you compare them. 反差, 对比

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>abstract</u> <i>adj.</i> 抽象 (派的)	abstraction <i>n.</i> 抽象; 抽象概念 (反义词) concrete <i>adj.</i> 具体的
<u>wire</u> <i>n.</i> 金属丝; 电线	wireless <i>adj.</i> 无线的
<u>innovative</u> <i>adj.</i> 新颖的, 创新的	innovate <i>v.</i> 创新, 改革 innovation <i>n.</i> 革新, 创新

III. 补全短语

1. be tired from 因……而劳累
2. be sure of 确信; 对……有把握

3. look over one's shoulder 转过头来看
4. check out 检查; 结账离开
5. take one's breath away 使某人大为惊讶
6. make up 组成; 构成
7. respond to 对……作出反应
8. apart from 除……外; 撇开……来说

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: “not... until...” 的强调句结构
It wasn't until we went on a trip to The Hague last year that this dream came true!
直到去年我们去海牙旅行, 这个梦想才实现!
2. 句型公式: It is/was + *adj.* + to do sth.
It was amazing to be standing in front of her at last!
最终能站在她面前真是太棒了!
3. 句型公式: as if 引导状语从句
Her eyes are wide and her mouth is parted, just as if she were about to speak.
她的眼睛睁得大大的, 嘴张着, 就好像要说话似的。
4. 句型公式: with 复合结构
Wu Guanzhong remained interested in exploring ways of expression, with his style changing and developing throughout his career.
吴冠中一直对探索表达方式很感兴趣, 他的风格在他的职业生涯中不断变化和发展。

任务型课堂

contrast *n.* 反差, 对比

[教材原文] ...create a strong **contrast**.

……创造强烈的对比。

[归纳拓展]

(1) by contrast 相比之下

in contrast to/with 与……相比

in marked/sharp contrast to... 与……形成鲜明的对比

(2) contrast *v.* 对比, 对照

contrast with 与……形成对比

contrast... with... 把……与……对比

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Their old house was large and broad; by contrast the new London flat seemed cramped (狭窄的) and dark.

② In contrast to/with Western cultures, there are many outstanding characteristics in traditional Chinese culture.

③ Her actions contrasted sharply with her words.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之环境描写) 云层渐渐散开, 露出了蓝天, 这和她的情绪形成了鲜明的对比。

In sharp contrast to her mood, the clouds were breaking up to reveal a blue sky.

语法研习课

动词不定式、动词-ing 形式和动词-ed 形式作表语

语法感知

- ① The look on his face showed that he felt **astonished**.
 ② My special hobby is **collecting** stamps.
 ③ He is more **interested** in science than in art.
 ④ Dao Meilan's passion is **dancing**.
 ⑤ Our next aim is **to help** farmers increase food production.
 ⑥ Every artist's wish is **to create** something that expresses an idea.

观察句子,指出黑体部分所作的成分。

- ① 动词-ed 形式作表语 ② 动词-ing 形式作表语
 ③ 动词-ed 形式作表语 ④ 动词-ing 形式作表语
 ⑤ 动词不定式作表语 ⑥ 动词不定式作表语

语法精讲

一、动词不定式作表语

动词不定式作表语时常用于以下三种情况:

(1) 表示预定要发生的动作。

His wish is **to be** a doctor in the future.

他的愿望是将来当一名医生。

(2) 当主语是 aim, purpose, idea, plan, wish, dream, ambition, decision, choice 等词时,常用动词不定式作表语。

My **dream** is **to enter** Peking University.

我的梦想是考入北京大学。

(3) 主语为 what 引导的名词性从句时,表语多用动词不定式。

(2023·全国乙卷听力) So, **what I'm really looking for in the competition** is **to meet** someone who can touch me musically.

所以,我在比赛中真正想要的是遇到一个能在音乐上打动我的人。

What I want to do most in senior high school is **(to) improve** my English.

我在高中最想做的是提高我的英语水平。

(如果前面有实义动词 do 的形式,作表语的动词不定式常省略 to)

二、动词-ing 形式作表语

动词-ing 形式作表语表示通常的情况,多指抽象的、经常性的动作。动词-ing 形式作表语时相当于名词,用于解释主语的内容,表语和主语常常可以互换位置。

My job is **cleaning** the house three times a week.

我的工作是每周打扫三次房子。

三、动词不定式作表语和动词-ing 形式作表语的区别

动词不定式作表语强调的是一次性的、具体的、将要发生的动作;动词-ing 形式作表语强调的是一般性的、抽象的动作,不指某一次。

His job is **to paint** the walls.

他的工作是粉刷这些墙壁。

(动词不定式 to paint the walls 作表语,表示一次性的、具体的、将要发生的动作。)

His job is **teaching** English.

他的工作是教英语。

(动词-ing 形式 teaching English 作表语,表示一般性的、抽象性的动作,不指某一次。)

四、动词-ing 形式和动词-ed 形式作表语的区别

动词-ing 形式和动词-ed 形式作表语都相当于形容词作表语,但两者差别很大。

1. 动词-ing 形式作表语,翻译为“令人……的”“使人……的”,含有主动的含义,表示主语的特征。

This dog is **frightening**.

这条狗让人害怕。

(frightening 是动词-ing 形式作表语,表示主动,意为“令人害怕的”,说明狗的特征)

2. 动词-ed 形式作表语,翻译为“感到……的”。常修饰人,表示主语的状态。

This dog is **frightened**.

这条狗有些害怕。

(frightened 是动词-ed 形式作表语,意为“被吓坏了的,害怕的”,说明狗的状态)

语法冲关

I. 用括号内动词的适当形式填空

- The pupils will get confused (confuse) if they are made to learn too much.
- All of us were so disappointed (disappoint) at his absence.
- Though the trip was tiring (tire), we felt very happy.
- Your task today is to wash (wash) the curtains.
- The library is now closed (close) without doubt.
- I'm very delighted (delight) to hear from you.
- It is surprising (surprise) that he should have failed in such an easy exam.
- His aim is to buy (buy) a house of his own in Shanghai someday in the future.

II. 完成句子

1. My chief purpose is to point out the difficulties of the matter.

我的主要目的是指出这件事情的困难性。

2. His wish is to become an astronaut.

他的愿望是成为一名宇航员。

3. The result of the accident is shocking.

这一事故的后果令人震惊。

4. On hearing the good news, everyone was excited.

一听到这个好消息,大家都很兴奋。

Unit 4 课后素养评价 (十五)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

contrast... with; trend; abstract; make up; respond to; according to; be good at; check out; pay attention to; apart from

- We may talk of beautiful things, but beauty itself is abstract.
- Business in China is booming, and that trend is expected to grow.
- When your body learns to respond to some stress, it's able to protect you better from illness.
- The level of the two is quite different. His actions contrast sharply with his promises.
- The teacher asked the students to make up a story about a trip to the moon.
- Seaman visited about 30 countries, checking out the art scene in each.
- It was clear that the company also paid attention to the design.
- When Dereck was a kid, he was quiet and healthy. He was good at maths and science.
- Tom told me that nothing else mattered to him apart from his job.
- According to the forecast, it should brighten up later.

II. 单句语法填空

- My goal is to perform (perform) together with my daughter before the audience.
- Obviously, I was very disappointed (disappoint) at not getting the job.
- The purpose of new technology is to make (make) life easier.
- The film is so thrilling (thrill) that it is worth seeing again.
- Cleaning women in big cities usually get paid (pay) by the hour.
- He drove the car at such a frightening speed, which would make his mother feel frightened (frighten).
- What pleases him most is bathing (bathe) in the sea.

8. The online classroom provides an innovative (innovation) and interactive learning environment.

9. By contrast, Mrs Yang was much more outspoken.

10. He had an acting job at last, and not just any part, but the lead in a new film.

III. 阅读理解

In August, Jason M. Allen's piece *Théâtre d'opéra Spatial*—which he created with AI image generator Midjourney—won first place in the emerging artist division's "digital arts photography" category at the Colorado State Fair Fine Arts Competition. The definition for the category states that digital art refers to works that use "digital technology as part of the creative process".

Allen's award-winning image has led to debates about what, exactly, it means to be an artist and whether AI can truly make art. "It felt bad for the exact same reason we don't let robots participate in the Olympics," one social media user wrote. "Exciting times ahead for the world of art and innovation!" another said.

Yet while Allen didn't use a paintbrush, there was plenty of work involved, he said. First, he played around with phrasing that led Midjourney to generate images of women in elegant dresses and space helmets, in an attempt to mix Victorian-style costuming with space themes. Over time, with many slight changes to his written instructions, he created 900 different versions of what led to his final image. Then he improved the picture's quality through Gigapixel AI and finally had the images printed.

Allen is glad the debate over whether AI can be used to make art is attracting so much attention. "Rather than hating on the technology, we need to recognise that it's a powerful tool and use it for good so we can all move forward," Allen said.

Cal Duran, one of the judges for the competition, said that while Allen's piece included a mention of AI, he didn't realise that when judging

it. Still, he sticks to his decision to award it first place. “I think the AI technology may give more opportunities to people who may not find themselves artists in the conventional way,” he said.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要介绍了利用人工智能创作的作品获奖所引发的争论。

- Why has Jason's work led to debates?
 - It was a copy of a photograph.
 - It was created with the help of AI.
 - He challenged the older artists.
 - He broke the rule of the competition.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“Allen's award-winning image has led to debates about what, exactly, it means to be an artist and whether AI can truly make art.”可知, Jason 的作品会引发争论是因为它是在人工智能的帮助下创作、完成的。故选 B。
- What can be inferred from Paragraph 3?
 - Allen finished part of the drawing by hand.
 - Allen's attempt achieved immediate success.
 - Gigapixel AI transferred words into pictures.
 - Changes of description led to different results.

D 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可推知, 书面描述的变化导致了不同的结果。故选 D。

- What was Cal Duran's opinion on AI use in art?
 - It makes art more accessible to people.
 - It will replace artists in the near future.
 - It is widely criticised by social media users.
 - It becomes a popular tool among artists.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“I think the AI technology may give more opportunities to people who may not find themselves artists in the conventional way”可知, Cal Duran 认为人工智能在艺术中的使用会使人们更容易接触艺术。故选 A。
- What is the passage mainly about?
 - A famous art competition.
 - The trend of AI use in arts.
 - The winning of an AI-driven picture.
 - Start-up photographers' innovation.

C 主旨大意题。根据第一段的内容以及第二段中的“Allen's award-winning image has led to debates about what, exactly, it means to be an artist and whether AI can truly make art.”可知, 本文主要介绍了利用人工智能创作的作品获奖所引发的争论。故选 C。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

- Know different styles of artworks in the world and accept their diversity.
- Analyse an event in different ways and find out the positive and negative effects of it.
- Find what an invitation includes and the useful expressions used to give an invitation, and write an invitation for an art festival.
- Use the words and expressions to help you show your opinions.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

- The word “**Greek**” means belonging or relating to Greece. 希腊的
- If a word or expression is translated **literally**, its most simple or basic meaning is translated. 根据字面意思
- An **animation** is a kind of film in which drawings or puppets appear to move. 动画片

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
technician <i>n.</i> 巧匠	technique <i>n.</i> 技艺, 工艺
	technical <i>adj.</i> 技术的, 工艺的
	technically <i>adv.</i> 在技术上, 在工艺上

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
distinct <i>adj.</i> 清晰的; 明显不同的	distinctly <i>adv.</i> 明显地, 清楚地
	distinction <i>n.</i> 区别, 差别

III. 补全短语

- come to/into one's mind 进入某人的脑海
- take in 参观; 吸收; 理解; 收留; 欺骗
- for sure 一定, 肯定
- a variety of 各种各样的
- lead to 导致; 通往
- light up 点亮; 照亮
- as a result 结果; 因此
- rather than 而不是; 宁愿

9. interact with 与……互动
 10. label... as 把……称为
 11. be accessible to 接近,靠近,接触

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: whatever 引导让步状语从句
Whatever your opinion, people have been expressing their thoughts and ideas through art for thousands of years.
 不管你怎么看,人们数千年来一直在用艺术表达自己的思想和观点。
2. 句型公式: not only 置于句首引起的倒装
Not only can we interact with art, but also take part in its creation.

我们不但可以与艺术作品互动,还可以参与到艺术作品的创作。

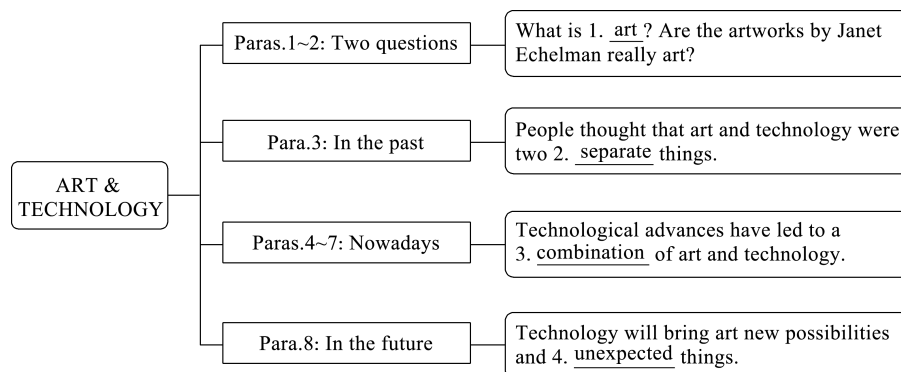
3. 句型公式: with+宾语+宾语补足语
With new technological tools at our fingertips, more and more people are exploring their creative sides. 通过触手可及的新兴科技工具,越来越多的人开始发掘他们具有创造力的一面。
4. 句型公式: the way that+定语从句
 A recent project used technology and data in the same way that Rembrandt used his paints and brushes.
 最近有一个科研项目使用科技手段和数据还原了伦勃朗的绘画方式。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

Part 1 课文理解

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. What's the purpose of the first paragraph?
 A. To explain what art is.
 B. To introduce the topic.
 C. To advertise the Chinese painting.
 D. To tell about Greek and Roman sculptures.
2. What has got art and technology combined with each other?
 A. Technological advances.
 B. People's thoughts and ideas.
 C. Artworks.
 D. Artists and technicians.
3. What's the author's attitude to the art-tech combination?
 A. Supportive. B. Indifferent.
 C. Doubtful. D. Disappointed.

答案: 1~3 BAC

○ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Not only can we interact with art, but also take part in its creation.
 [句子分析] 本句是一个简单句。not only 位于句首,所在句子用部分倒装。
 [尝试翻译] 我们不但可以与艺术作品互动,还可以参与艺术作品的创作。
2. With new technological tools at our fingertips, more and more people are exploring their creative sides.
 [句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。With new technological tools at our fingertips 是“with+宾语+宾语补足语”结构,作状语,其中介词短语充当宾语补足语。
 [尝试翻译] 通过触手可及的新兴科技工具,越来越多的人开始发掘他们具有创造力的一面。
3. A recent project used technology and data in the same way that Rembrandt used his paints and brushes.
 [句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。that 引导定语

从句,修饰先行词 the same way。

[尝试翻译]最近有一个科研项目使用科技手段和数据还原了伦勃朗的绘画方式。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What's special about Janet Echelman's artwork in Vancouver?

Part 2 语言梳理

1. take in 参观;吸收;理解;收留;欺骗

[教材原文] Once in front of the painting, they only have limited time to spend **taking in** its five metres of scenes along the Bian River in Bianjing. 即使面对画卷,人们也只能在有限的时间内来观赏长达五米的画卷上汴京汴河沿岸的景色。

[归纳拓展]

take back 收回;取回

take down 写下;拆掉;取下来

take off 脱下;起飞;腾飞

take on 雇用;呈现;承担

take over 接替;接管;占领

take up 开始做;从事;占用(时间或空间)

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The house where I grew up has been taken down and replaced by an office building.

② He didn't take in what the teacher said because his mind was focused on something else.

③ Charlie was taking off his shirt when the phone rang.

④ Our school has taken on a new look over the past few years.

⑤ Would you like me to take over the driving for a while?

⑥ I know how busy you are and naturally I wouldn't want to take up much of your time.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之情节描写) 当他到达山顶时,他发现呼吸困难了。

When he reached the top of the mountain, he found it difficult to take in air.

② (应用文写作之自荐信) 为了提高自己,今年夏天我要开始培养绘画这样的爱好。

To improve myself, I will take up a hobby like painting this summer.

Visitors can interact with it literally and change its colours and patterns.

2. What effect do you think technology will have on art in the future?

Technology will continue to influence the development of art, making art more popular in people's daily lives. (回答合理即可)

2. distinct adj. 清晰的;明显不同的

[教材原文] Similarly, such developments are making the line between art and technology less **distinct**.

同样地,这种发展正使得艺术和技术之间的界限更加不明显。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be distinct from 与……不同

(2) distinctly *adv.* 明显地,清楚地

(3) distinction *n.* 区别,差别

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Though they talked in a low voice, they could be heard distinctly (distinct).

② He draws a distinction (distinct) between art and culture.

③ These titles must be distinct from any other section title.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之问卷调查) 调查结果分为截然不同的两组。

The results of the survey fell into two distinct groups.

② (应用文写作之推荐信) 每个景点都很不同,所以在你去之前要安排好你自己的行程。

The attractions are quite distinct from each other, so arrange your own itinerary before you go.

3. 状语从句的省略

[教材原文] **Once in front of the painting**, they only have limited time to spend taking in its five metres of scenes along the Bian River in Bianjing. 即使面对画卷,人们也只能在有限的时间内来观赏长达五米的画卷上汴京汴河沿岸的景色。

[句式分析] Once in front of the painting 是省略句,Once 与 in front of 之间省略了 they are.

[归纳拓展]

状语从句的省略条件:

在时间、条件、让步等状语从句中,若从句的主语与主句的主语一致或从句的主语为 it,且从句的谓语含有 be 动词时,可以将从句中的主语和 be 动词省略。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① When completed (complete), the museum will be open to the public next year.

② While walking (walk) in the park, I met my former maths teacher.

(2) 写作微练

① (读后续写之情节描写) 正在我等待的时候,突然听到身后有人叫我。

While (I was) waiting, I suddenly heard someone calling me from behind.

② (读后续写之心理描写) 虽然我们又饿又累,但我们没有抱怨。

Although (we were) hungry and exhausted, we didn't make any complaint.

多义词汇 专练

1. **literally**: A. *adv.* 根据字面意思

B. *adv.* (加强语气)简直

C. *adv.* 真正地,确实地

① There are **literally** hundreds of prizes to win.

C

② I **literally** jumped out of my skin.

B

③ The word "planet" **literally** means "wandering body".

A

2. Being tall gave Tony a **distinct** advantage.

C

A. *adj.* 截然不同的

B. *adj.* 清晰的

C. *adj.* 确定无疑的

Unit 4 课后素养评价 (十六)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

- The lighthouse beam was quite distinct (清晰的) in the gathering dusk.
- We must encourage innovation (革新) if the company is to remain competitive.
- Sometimes you can't take some Chinese idioms literally (根据字面意思) because they have deeper meanings.
- Her husband is a good technician (技术员), so he likes fixing old computers.
- The films are a mix of animation (动画制作) and full-length features.

II. 单句语法填空

- He lay on the bed with a newspaper covering (cover) his face.
- She is the only person who replies to the invitation.
- It's better to have your car washed (wash) before you get into the city.
- They request that all the cleaning work (should) be finished (finish) this morning.
- They strolled (漫步) on San Antonio's River Walk and took in the sights.
- You should stay where you are, unless asked (ask) to leave.

III. 短语填空

rather than; come to one's mind; light up; for sure; come across; as a result; lead to; take part in; be unfamiliar with; look like

- The wild flowers look like a soft orange blanket (毯子) covering the desert.
- As a result, I have a good command of spoken English.
- This can lead to great stress, but have no fear!
- Yesterday more than 400 students from schools in Beijing took part in this activity.
- The meeting will be held in September, but nobody knows the date for sure.
- Their main job is to preserve health rather than treat illness.
- Last New Year's fireworks lit up the sky over the city.
- He came across this story while he was doing a computer search of local news articles.
- All of a sudden, it came to his mind that he could turn to his teammates for help.
- Beyond our expectations, our school designed a course for us students who were unfamiliar with computers.

IV. 完成句子

1. Whatever/No matter what you say, I won't believe you.
无论你说什么,我都不会相信你。
2. They talked as if they had met before.
他们交谈着好像以前见过面似的。
3. The living room is clean and tidy, with a dining table already laid for a meal to be cooked.
客厅干净整洁,餐桌已经摆好,饭即将煮熟。
4. Not only did he make a promise, but also he kept it.
他不仅做出了承诺,而且履行了诺言。
5. It was not until near the end of the letter that she mentioned her own plan.
直到接近信的结尾,她才提到了自己的计划。
6. When asked why he was late, he kept silent.
当问到为什么迟到时,他保持沉默。
7. She did take the job, but then she quit.
她的确接受了那份工作,但是后来她辞职了。

V. 语法填空

Jinan **1. is referred** (refer) to as the “City of Springs” due to the presence of over 1,200 natural springs scattered (散布) throughout the city. Baotu Spring, the most famous among them, is known for its clear water and picturesque surroundings. Visitors can walk through the nearby Baotu Spring Park, where they can enjoy nature and traditional Chinese **2. performances** (performance). If you walk by the Black Tiger Spring and see local people filling their bottles with spring water, don't be surprised. It is a benefit of living in Jinan—to enjoy spring water for free! Another landmark is Daming Lake. It is a large lake **3. circled** (circle) by gardens and pavilions (亭), which offers breathtaking views throughout the year.

Apart from its natural beauty, Jinan has a long history. The city has cultural heritage **4. dating** (date) back thousands of years. Qianfo Mountain enables visitors **5. to explore** (explore) numerous ancient Buddhist caves. For those having a liking **6. for** Chinese history and culture, Shandong Museum is a

must-see attraction. The museum houses **7. a** fine collection of exhibits, consisting of ancient sculptures, calligraphy and paintings.

8. Whether you're exploring the incredible springs or enjoying yourself in the city's rich history, Jinan promises an **9. unforgettable** (forgettable) travel experience. So pack your bags and set off on a journey to discover the **10. fascination** (fascinate) of Jinan.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假如你是李华,你校外教老师 Mr Smith 对中国传统文化很感兴趣。下周日你校将举行“成都宽窄巷子一日游”活动。请你给 Mr Smith 写一封邮件,邀请他参加。内容包括:

1. 发出邀请;
2. 活动安排及理由;
3. 期待回复。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;

3. 信的开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

参考词汇:成都宽窄巷子一日游 one-day tour of Kuanzhai Xiangzi Alley in Chengdu

Dear Mr Smith,

Knowing that you are interested in traditional Chinese culture, I'm writing to invite you to join us on the one-day tour of Kuanzhai Xiangzi Alley in Chengdu, which will be held next Sunday.

First, we'll set out for Kuanzhai Xiangzi Alley at 10:00 am by bus from the school gate. On arriving there, we'll take a walk along the alleys to feel the architectural style of the old buildings and local people's way of life. Additionally, we can try all kinds of local foods on the way. As scheduled, we'll go to a teahouse in the afternoon where we can taste all kinds of Chinese tea and get a lot about tea. Most importantly, we can watch Sichuan Opera while drinking tea, which is a typical art form reflecting Sichuan humanities features.

I'm looking forward to your reply.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

It was time to go home. “Remember to work on your class speeches for homework,” Miss Walker called, as everyone started talking and packing their schoolbags. Jenny felt sick. She hated having to read aloud in class. She was sure everyone got really bored with listening to her. Once, when Jenny was reading out her holiday diary, Lee was even looking at his watch, a silver and blue one which seemed just magical.

Jenny watched Lee walk ahead of her as they left school. He seemed so clever, and he had a certain sort of shining confidence. He was just one of those people who were good at everything. Jenny sighed. As she turned the corner, she saw Lee's watch lying right in the middle of the path.

Jenny knew she should just pick it up and return it to him, but she didn't want to run after him.

Jenny bent down quickly, picked up the watch and ran home. On arriving home, Jenny put it on almost without thinking. She was surprised it fitted so well. She walked to the mirror and started practising her speech. Words just flooded out of her. “I'm going to talk about swimming. I have been lucky. I've won lots of competitions. But when I'm in a race, I'm not really thinking about winning. I'm just loving the feeling of being in the water...” Jenny laughed with excitement. She walked across the room. She suddenly seemed to have a certain sort of

confidence. Turning back to the mirror, Jenny saw a flash of light from the watch in the glass. The flash of silver seemed almost magical. So maybe Lee's watch really did have something magic about it.

The next day, as the lesson began, Miss Walker asked who was going to be brave and go first. Nobody moved. Jenny slowly raised her arm. Before Miss Walker could say anything, there was a shout from behind. “She's stolen my watch!” Lee said angrily. “It went missing at school yesterday.”

注意:续写词数应为150左右。

Everybody was fixing their eyes on Jenny, waiting for an explanation. Embarrassed, Jenny didn't say anything. An awkward silence suddenly fell. Then came Miss Walker's voice, “Why is Lee's watch on your wrist?” Jenny hesitated for a while and decided to tell the truth. However, thinking about her well-prepared speech, the magic of the watch, she changed her mind. “But Miss Walker, could I give the speech first and then explain?” she made a request in a tone of begging.

Miss Walker smiled and asked the class to listen to Jenny's speech first. Jenny made her way to the platform with confidence. Words started flowing out of her. “How could she make it? We've never seen Jenny give such an amazing speech.” Whispers went around the classroom, and even Miss Walker nodded with approval. Immediately Jenny finished her speech, a storm of applause erupted from the class. Relieved, Jenny told everyone the truth, especially the magic of the watch. “But it's just an ordinary watch with no magic at all,” Lee announced.

迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

Part 1 应用文写作——邀请信

写作指导

邀请信是邀请收信人参加某项活动(如会议、报告、讲座、电影、典礼等)的书信,分为普通邀请信和正式邀请信两类。

1. 普通邀请信

普通邀请信的对象一般是刚认识的朋友或熟人,所以内容格式上的要求不是十分严格。首先表明邀请的意图;接着说明活动的时间、地点和内容;最后表达希望对方能够参加或者出席的愿望。

2. 正式邀请信

正式邀请信的发出者通常是具有正式身份或代表某一组织、机构或单位的人。被邀请者通常为政府官员、企业高管、专家学者等。因此,这类邀请信的语言要相对正式,态度要诚恳,语气要热情有礼。

典题示例

假如你是李华,你校将于12月9日在学校操场为你们高三学生举办成人仪式,你的美国朋友 John 对此类活动很感兴趣,请你发一封英文电子邮件邀请他来参加。内容主要包括:

1. 成人仪式的时间、地点;
2. 成人仪式的目的;
3. 活动内容:学习相关法律,唱成人曲,走过成人门等。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右,开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数;

2. 不要逐条翻译,可以适当发挥,以使行文连贯。

Dear John,

I'm Li Hua.

Looking forward to your reply at your earliest convenience.

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	以一般将来时为主
人称	以第一人称为主
要点	1. 讲述邀请的目的和意图 2. 具体描述成人仪式的活动过程和内容 3. 希望尽快得到对方的答复

Step 2: 要点补全

① It is aimed at (目的在于) celebrating our maturity.

② The grown-up ceremony will be scheduled (将被安排) on the school playground for us Senior Three students on December 9th.

③ We will firstly be informed of the duties and rights of a grown-up. We are supposed to (应该) have some knowledge of them.

④ We'll go through the Adult Gate in the company of our teachers and parents. It is bound to (一定会) be meaningful to all of us.

Step 3: 句式升级

① 用过去分词短语作状语合并 Step 2 中的①②句。
Aimed at celebrating our maturity, the grown-up ceremony will be scheduled on the school playground for us Senior Three students on December 9th.

② 用 that 引导的定语从句改写 Step 2 中的③句。
We will firstly be informed of the duties and rights of a grown-up that we are supposed to have some knowledge of.

③ 用 which 引导的非限制性定语从句改写 Step 2 中的④句。
We'll go through the Adult Gate in the company of our teachers and parents, which is bound to be meaningful to all of us.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Dear John,

I'm Li Hua. Aimed at celebrating our maturity, the grown-up ceremony will be scheduled on the

school playground for us Senior Three students on December 9th. I'm writing to invite you to participate in it.

During the activity, we will firstly be informed of the duties and rights of a grown-up that we are supposed to have some knowledge of. Then we are to sing the grown-up song together. Last but not least, we'll go through the Adult Gate in the company of our teachers and parents, which is bound to be meaningful to all of us.

Looking forward to your reply at your earliest convenience.

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua

○学以致用

假定你是李华,是校读书俱乐部的负责人。俱乐部将于下周三下午三点在报告厅举办英语朗诵比赛(recitation contest)。请你给外教 Tom 写一封英文电子邮件。内容如下:

1. 问他届时是否有空出席;
2. 邀请他担任比赛评委;

3. 请他向学生推荐合适的文学作品(literary works)。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右,开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

Dear Tom,

I'm Li Hua, chairman of our school's reading club. There will be an English Recitation Contest organised by our reading club at three next Wednesday afternoon in the lecture hall. So I'm writing to invite you to be present at it.

To make sure the contest is fair and successful, we would appreciate having you as a judge. If available then, could you do us the favour? By the way, it would be very nice if you could recommend some classic English literary works suitable for us students. Thanks for considering our request.

I'm looking forward to your reply at your earliest convenience!

Yours sincerely,
Li Hua



Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

I love to play the piano and I greatly enjoy performing my songs, so when the annual winter recital (音乐演奏会) was cancelled, I was disappointed. I had looked forward to it for a long time and had already prepared two of my best songs.

My mum had a wonderful idea, however, to turn this disappointing thing into something worthwhile. "You can perform your songs at Carriage House Senior Living," my mum suggested brightly. "I'm sure the seniors there who do not have families to visit them that often, would really appreciate the music and you could play more than just two songs."

I immediately thought this was a great idea. One of the things I did not like about the recitals was that I was limited to playing just a couple of songs. Playing the piano at Carriage House Senior Living seemed like a win-win situation because not only could I play more songs, but I would also have the chance to cheer up the residents there with some lively tunes.

My mum called Carriage House Senior Living and made arrangements for me to perform. In the coming days, I worked especially hard to polish up fifteen pieces that I thought the crowd would enjoy, including many old classics.

When the exciting day finally arrived, my family and I drove to Carriage House Senior Living. Walking through the enormous double doors, we stepped into an entryway that overlooked the spacious grand dining room. Right at the entrance to the dining room stood the piano, as if it were just waiting to make some music to liven the place up a bit. At nearly every table, several gray-haired women or men were seated enjoying their dinner and the company that the crowded room provided. Despite the conversations going on at various tables, isolation hung like a dark cloud in the room.

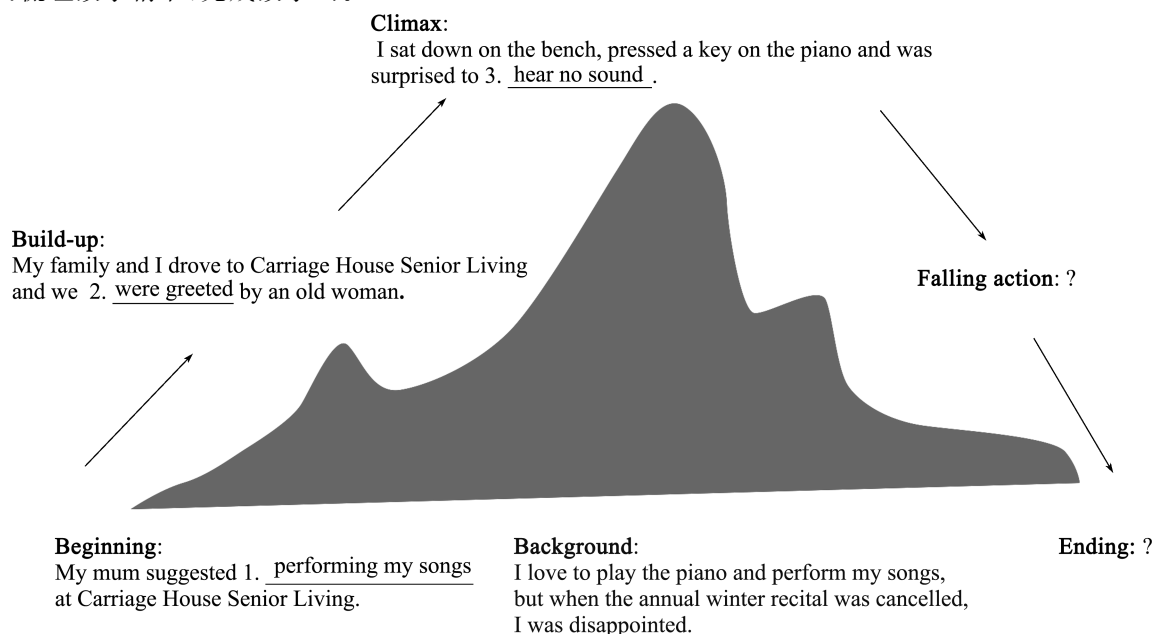
Almost immediately, we were greeted by an old woman with a walker who introduced herself as Phyllis, in charge of Carriage House Senior Living. She welcomed me and led me to the stage.

任务一:阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the article mainly talk about?

As a child who loves music, the author carefully prepared some piano pieces for the annual music concert. But the concert was cancelled. This made her very disappointed. Then her mother suggested she go to a nursing home to play for the elderly.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山。



任务三：回答下面的问题，并根据段落开头提示语，构思、完善故事发展的情节。

Paragraph 1: As I sat down on the bench, I pressed a key on the piano and was surprised to hear no sound. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. What did I feel at that moment? <u>I was nervous and embarrassed.</u> 2. What would happen next? <u>Phyllis came to the front and requested someone to help.</u> 3. How was the problem solved? <u>Several people stepped forward to help me plug in the piano and set the microphone.</u>
Paragraph 2: Nervousness melted away and I started to enjoy the performance with the old. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. What would the seniors do? <u>Some people got involved in the show and swayed in their chairs to the beat of the music.</u> 2. What was the result of the performance? <u>The performance ended up with a storm of applause from the crowd.</u> 3. What did I learn from the performance? <u>It was far better than a piano recital because almost everyone seemed to truly appreciate my music and I'm proud that I have the power to spread kindness to them.</u>

任务四：根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

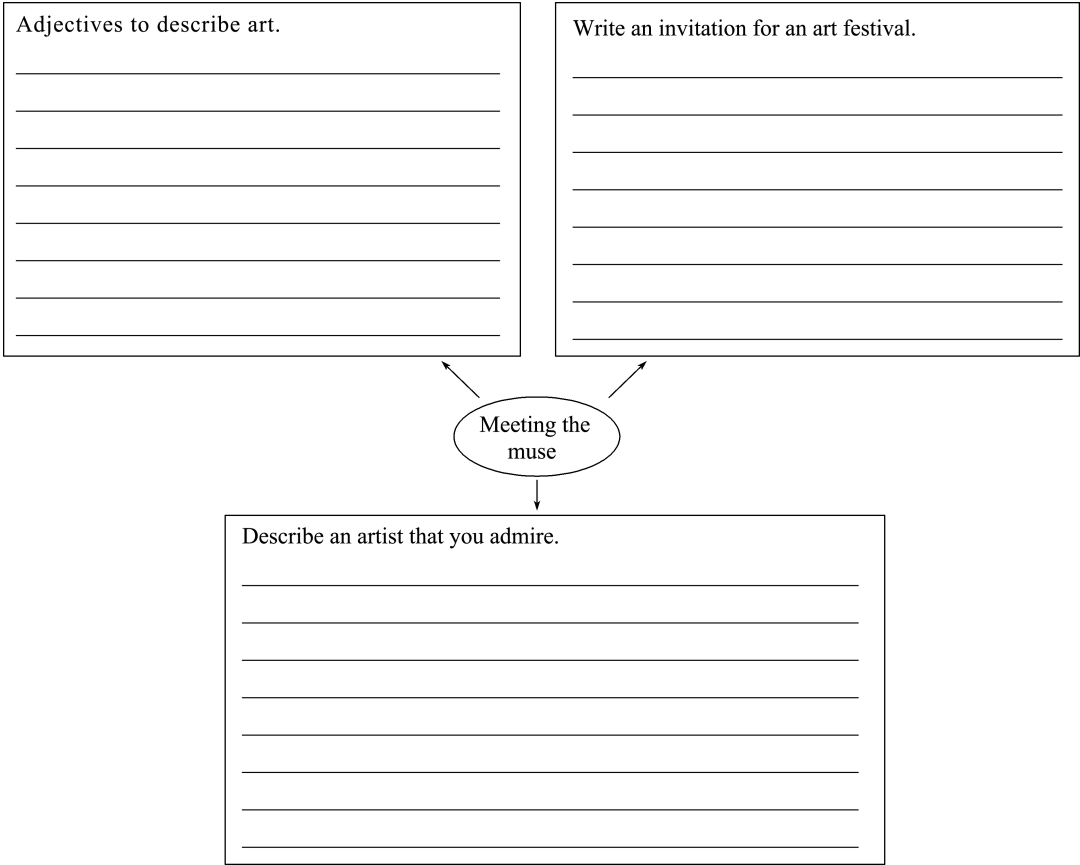
As I sat down on the bench, I pressed a key on the piano and was surprised to hear no sound. Feeling as if the whole world was watching me, I was struck dead with embarrassment. How could I perform the song without the piano? I was on pins and needles when Phyllis slowly made her way to the front of the crowd of dinners and announced in a comforting tone, "This girl has come to sing for us but the piano seems to be a little nervous." Almost immediately, there was scattered applause and several people stepped forward to help me plug in the piano and set the microphone. With everything ready, I took a deep breath and commenced my performance.

Nervousness melted away and I started to enjoy the performance with the old. One woman got up and began to animatedly dance in the room. Some of the people swayed in their chairs to the beat of the music while others tapped their toes. The performance ended up with a storm of applause from the crowd. I realised that it was far better than a piano recital because almost everyone seemed to truly appreciate my music and I'm proud that I have the power to spread kindness to them. It ended up being a blessing in disguise that the recital was cancelled, leading to me sharing the gift of music with those who needed it most.

★ ★ ★
重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容，完成思维导图。



答案：略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章，完成后面的题目。

Art is everywhere. Any public space has been carefully designed by an artistic mind to be both functional and beautiful. Then why is art still widely considered “the easy subject” at school, insignificant to wider society, a waste of time and effort?

Art can connect culture with commercial products; art generates money and holds significant emotional and cultural value within communities. When people attend a concert, they are paying for music, maybe even hotel rooms, meals, and transport, but they also gain an incredible experience.

What’s more, the arts can bring communities together, reducing loneliness and making people feel safer. Social bonds are created among individuals when they share their arts’ experiences through reflection and discussion, and their expression of common values through artworks in honour of events significant to a nation’s experience.

The arts clearly have a pretty positive impact on physical and psychological health. It is found that people who frequent cultural places or participate in artistic events are more likely to gain good health compared to those who do not; more engagement with the arts is linked to a higher level of people’s well-being. *The Public Health* discovered that music and art, when used in hospitals, help to improve the conditions of patients by reducing stress, anxiety and blood pressure.

Children who are involved with the arts make greater achievements in their education; those engaged with drama have greater literary ability while others taking part in musical practice exhibit greater skills in maths and languages. Kids with preference for the arts have a greater chance of finding employment in the future. Participating in the arts is essential for child development; encouraging children to express themselves in constructive ways could help to form healthy emotional responses in later life.

Vital to human life, art is celebrated and used across the world. Life without art would be boring, for art is a part of what makes us humans.

1. Why do art products differ from most other commercial products?

- A. Because their prices may climb as time passes.
- B. Because most people purchase them for collection.
- C. Because they are more expensive and less accessible.
- D. Because they have both commercial and cultural values.

2. By sharing their arts experiences, what can community members do?

- A. They can develop a stronger tie between them.
- B. They can keep the community safe from illnesses.
- C. They can learn to appreciate their own works of art.
- D. They can offer honourable solutions to their problems.

3. How does kids' engagement with the arts benefit them?

- A. It helps to make responsible people out of them.
- B. It inspires their creativity in designing their future career.
- C. It promotes their academic performance and emotional growth.
- D. It gives them more confidence in exhibiting their learning skills.

答案: 1~3 DAC

单元评估(四)

I. 阅读理解

A

Stuck at home? These famous museums offer virtual tours you can take on your sofa. According to Fast Company, Google Arts & Culture teamed up with over 2,500 museums and galleries around the world to bring you virtual tours and online exhibits.

Guggenheim Museum, New York

Google's Street View lets visitors tour the Guggenheim's famous spiral (螺旋式) staircase without ever leaving home. From there, you can discover incredible works of art from the Impressionist, Post-Impressionist, Modern and Contemporary periods.

Pergamon Museum, Berlin

As one of Germany's largest museums, Pergamon has a lot to offer—even if you can't physically be there. This historical museum is home to plenty of ancient works including the Ishtar Gate

of Babylon and of course the Pergamon Altar.

Van Gogh Museum, Amsterdam

Anyone who is a fan of this tragic, gifted painter can see his works up close (or almost up close) by virtually visiting this museum—the largest collection of artworks by Vincent van Gogh, including over 200 paintings, 500 drawings, and over 750 personal letters.

The J. Paul Getty Museum, Los Angeles

European artworks from as far back as the 8th century can be found in this California art museum. Take a street view tour to discover a huge collection of paintings, drawings, sculptures, manuscripts, and photographs.

To see more of Google Arts & Culture's collection of museums, visit the collection's website.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了几个可以使用虚拟现实技术参观的博物馆。

1. Which one will you visit if you like modern art?

- A. Pergamon Museum.
- B. Guggenheim Museum.
- C. The J. Paul Getty Museum.
- D. Van Gogh Museum.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“From there, you can discover incredible works of art from the Impressionist, Post-Impressionist, Modern and Contemporary periods.”可知,如果你喜欢现代艺术作品,你可以参观纽约的古根海姆博物馆。故选 B。

2. Who will be interested in Pergamon Museum?

- A. One who is fond of tragic films.
- B. One who enjoys European artworks.
- C. One who likes paintings of Van Gogh.
- D. One who is interested in ancient artworks.

D 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“This historical museum is home to plenty of ancient works”可知,对古代艺术作品感兴趣的人会对柏林的佩加蒙博物馆感兴趣。故选 D。

3. What is special about the J. Paul Getty Museum?

- A. It is one of the largest museums in the USA.
- B. It is the only home to artworks in California.
- C. It includes all forms of artworks in the world.
- D. It exhibits European artworks from the 8th century.

D 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“European artworks from as far back as the 8th century can be found in this California art museum.”可知,洛杉矶的保罗·盖蒂博物馆的特殊之处在于它展览来自 8 世纪的欧洲艺术作品。故选 D。

B

I developed my love for drawing when I was first able to hold a pencil at the age of 4. The first time I was able to bring life to a blank white piece of paper, I was crazy about it. As I grew older and the responsibilities of life began to increase, I lost the freedom to express my creative talent on a regular basis and my art talent suffered for it. One day I suddenly realised that what I loved most had become a meaningless part of my daily life.

I decided to attend an art school and took classes at night after work. The courses were interesting and educational but really didn't teach me the essence (本质) of what I wanted to focus on—the figure drawing.

I decided to quickly catch up with my education

process and hire a private instructor. After one month of instruction, I had made some progress but my pocketbook couldn't keep up with the costs involved.

This was when I realised the Internet was a perfect place for me to find the information required to learn how to draw figures in the correct way. After a lot of research online I finally found a technique called Figure Drawing Secrets that had enabled me to achieve my goal!

I am now building a file (文件夹) online and I am in the process of landing some fantastic freelancing (从事自由职业) opportunities. I want to share my story with those of you who may have given up your dream. No matter how old you are, as long as you learn, you will realise your dream! Click here for more.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者从爱好画画到实现梦想的故事,以鼓励那些追逐梦想的人。作者认为活到老,学到老。只要不放弃,梦想最终将会实现。

4. What does the underlined word “pocketbook” in the third paragraph mean?

- A. Notebook.
- B. Wallet.
- C. Skill.
- D. Instruction.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线词前面的“I decided to quickly catch up with my education process and hire a private instructor.”和下文的“couldn't keep up with the costs involved”可知,经过一个月的学习,作者取得了一些进步,但作者的钱包跟不上所需的费用。由此可知,pocketbook 意为“钱包”。故选 B。

5. Which is the most important part in the process of the author's realising his dream?

- A. His private instructor.
- B. The art school.
- C. The Figure Drawing Secrets.
- D. His art talent.

C 细节理解题。根据第四段中的“After a lot of research online I finally found a technique called Figure Drawing Secrets that had enabled me to achieve my goal!”可知,Figure Drawing Secrets 是作者实现梦想的过程中最重要的部分。故选 C。

6. Which of the following would be the best title of the passage?

- A. Where There Is a Will, There Is a Way

B. Experience Is the Best Teacher

C. Well Begun Is Half Done

D. Never Too Late to Learn

D 标题归纳题。结合文章主要内容,并根据最后一段中的“*No matter how old you are, as long as you learn, you will realise your dream!*”可知,文章讲述了作者从爱好画画到实现梦想的故事,主要告诉我们这样一个道理:活到老,学到老。故选 D。

7. Where does this passage most probably appear?

A. On the Internet.

B. In a diary.

C. In a magazine about art.

D. In a newspaper.

A 文章出处题。根据最后一段中的“*I am now building a file (文件夹) online and I am in the process of landing some fantastic freelancing (从事自由职业) opportunities.*”和“*Click here for more.*”可知,文章最有可能来自互联网。故选 A。

C

Cartoons suit the way we like information to be presented these days: graphically and in small amounts. We are used to cartoons and comic strips that take an ironic look at modern life or provide a bit of escapism. But recently we have seen an increase in the number of graphic novels: book-length comics with a single, continuous narrative. Historically, graphic novels were not popular outside France, Belgium, Japan, and the US. The exception is the worldwide popularity of a young reporter-detective from Belgium, Tintin.

The creation of the Belgian cartoonist Hergé, *The Adventures of Tintin* first appeared in a Belgian newspaper in 1929. Each story appeared as a cartoon strip week by week, but soon after was republished in book form. One of the main attractions for readers was that they were taken to parts of the world they had never seen and probably never would: Russia, the Congo, America. Hergé himself only travelled outside Belgium later in life, but his passion was educating his readers about other cultures and places.

Two things set Hergé apart as a graphic novelist. The first was his technical drawing skills: with just a few simple lines he could communicate a particular facial expression or movement. The

second was the careful research he put into his stories. In *The Crab with the Golden Claws*, Tintin follows an opium-smuggling ring (鸦片走私团伙) to North Africa; in *King Ottokar's Sceptre*, he makes an attempt at a military coup (政变) in a central European country. While telling these stories, Hergé also made a fine balance between serious topics and humour.

Tintin had more than his fair share of adventures, but perhaps the greatest is his journey to the Moon, told in *Destination Moon* and *Explorers on the Moon*. Written in 1953, sixteen years before the first Moon landing, the stories show a remarkable eye for technical detail and feeling for the nature of space travel. In the early 1950s, few could imagine what it was like to be looking down at our planet from outer space. And that is Hergé's true gift: to understand what a place was like without ever having been there.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了比利时漫画家 Hergé 创作的漫画作品《丁丁历险记》以及其受欢迎的原因。

8. What can be learned about cartoons from the passage?

A. They mostly involve detective stories.

B. They were just popular in several countries.

C. They present information in small amounts.

D. *The Adventures of Tintin* is the world's first graphic novel.

C 细节理解题。根据第一段首句可知,漫画以小篇幅图画的形式提供信息。故选 C。

9. Which of the following is an attraction of *The Adventures of Tintin* for readers?

A. The stories were created in Belgium, a European country.

B. The stories were the first graphic novel published in book form.

C. The stories used to be cartoon strips that appeared week by week.

D. The stories enable readers to learn about places they have never been to.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段第三句可知,《丁丁历险记》吸引读者的一个原因就是,这些故事让读者了解了自己从未去过的地方。故选 D。

10. Why are *The Crab with the Golden Claws* and *King Ottokar's Sceptre* taken for examples?

A. To show Hergé liked touching on serious

topics.

- B. To show Hergé based his stories on the research results.
- C. To illustrate Hergé himself had a good sense of humour.
- D. To illustrate Hergé was expert at applying technical drawing skills.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段第三、四句可知,作者以这两本书为例是为了说明他的故事是基于自己研究的结果。故选 B。

11. What can we learn about Hergé from the passage?

- A. He had been longing for a trip to the Moon.
- B. He never had any chance to leave Belgium for travelling.
- C. He could describe accurately those experiences he never had.
- D. He devoted himself to education before creating graphic novels.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“*And that is Hergé's true gift: to understand what a place was like without ever having been there.*”可知, Hergé 即使没有去过那个地方,也能准确描述那里是什么样子。故选 C。

D

According to a survey, more than two-thirds of US adults say that the arts “lift me up beyond everyday experiences”. Still, only 30 percent attended a concert of any type in 2017; 23 percent visited an art museum; 6 percent attended a literary event. Fewer than half actively created art of any kind.

What has caused this phenomenon is that we do not have time for art, and we are weighed down by our day-to-day responsibilities. Maybe you like to play a little background music while you work or do the chores, but most of us rarely, if ever, see a live performance, let alone visit a gallery. And reading poetry? Perhaps not since high school.

Too often, we let the realities of life get in the way of the arts, which can feel insignificant by comparison. But this is a mistake. The arts might be the single most in-depth experience you will ever be given to explore the nature and meaning of life. If you make time for consuming and producing art, you will find your life becoming fuller and happier.

Some philosophers address the problem of life consumed by work and material pursuits. They argue that art provides relief from this routine, expanding our perspective and bringing us closer to true reality.

Think of a time when you heard a piece of music and wanted to cry. Or recall your fast heartbeats as you stared at a delicate lifelike sculpture. Chances are that it probably stimulated (刺激) a sudden awakening, much like the shock from a lungful of pure oxygen after breathing in smoggy air.

If you are among those who feel that art is pure pleasure to experience and participate in, you might see it as a luxury item in your limited budgets of time and money. As such, it probably gets the same sort of treatment as any minor hobby. Don't make this error. Treat art more like exercise or sleep, a necessity.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了人们没有时间参加艺术活动这种现象以及艺术的重要性;作者认为艺术应该是一种生活中的必需品而不是奢侈品。

12. What does Paragraph 1 focus on?

- A. The theory of why people say they enjoy varied art forms.
- B. The percentage of how many people enjoy the arts.
- C. The mismatch between adults' thoughts and deeds to the arts.
- D. The harmony between everyday experiences and the arts.

C 段落大意题。根据第一段的内容可知,第一段主要讲的是在对待艺术方面,人们的言(喜欢艺术)和行(不参加艺术活动)不一致。故选 C。

13. What is a mistaken idea in the author's opinion?

- A. Art reveals the nature of life.
- B. Art gives way to material pursuits.
- C. Life without art is meaningless.
- D. Background music is a kind of art.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*Too often, we let the realities of life get in the way of the arts, which can feel insignificant by comparison. But this is a mistake.*”可知,艺术让位于物质追求是错误的想法。故选 B。

14. What does the author want to convey in

Paragraph 5?

- A. Art awakes people's talents.
- B. Art improves physical health.
- C. Art brings us closer to nature.
- D. Art makes life become fuller and happier.

D 推理判断题。根据第五段的内容可推知,作者在第五段想表达的是艺术使生活更充实、更快乐。故选 D。

15. What might be the best title?

- A. Art: A Habit, Not a Luxury
- B. Art: A Bridge, Not a Barrier
- C. Art: A Decoration, Not a Reality
- D. Art: A Pleasure, Not a Burden

A 标题归纳题。通读全文,尤其是最后一段的内容可知,文章主要论述了人们没有时间参加艺术活动这种现象以及艺术的重要性;作者认为艺术应该是一种生活中的必需品而不是奢侈品。由此可知,A 选项适合作为本文的标题。故选 A。

II. 七选五

How do you clean a huge 400-year-old painting that is a national treasure? If you said, "Very carefully," you'd be right. 16 But that's exactly what the Rijksmuseum, the Netherlands' national museum, is planning on doing.

The Night Watch is the most important painting in the history of the Netherlands. 17 For Dutch people, this painting is one of their greatest treasures. The country was shocked in 1975 when someone cut the painting with a knife. That time, about 40 years ago, was the last time that the painting had been repaired.

Since then, the painting has become dirtier. 18 That's why the museum is going to "restore" it—to clean it and try to make it look like it did back when Rembrandt first painted it.

Working on such a famous and important painting is a job that can't be done quickly. 19 They don't even plan to start on it until next July. Until then, experts hired by the museum will be carefully studying the painting with X-rays and other tools, and planning how they will restore it.

The Rijksmuseum does not want its visitors to miss out on seeing *The Night Watch* for several years. It is their most famous painting and gets over 2 million visitors a year. 20 This will allow the

experts to work, but also allow visitors to see both the painting and the work the experts are doing. For people who can't visit the Netherlands, the museum plans to set up a live camera to show the painting's progress over the Internet.

- A. It was even larger when Rembrandt painted it.
- B. You probably didn't say, "With the whole world watching."
- C. The museum expects the whole project will take a few years.
- D. Groups of soldiers were always painted standing straightly in rows.
- E. It was painted between 1639 and 1642 by the Dutch artist Rembrandt.
- F. Instead, the museum plans to build a special clear glass case around the painting.
- G. It has gotten a slightly cloudy coating on it that makes it hard to see the painting's true colours.

答案:16~20 BEGCF

III. 完形填空

I always had the preference to take on more than I should when I was young. At times, I wanted to prove to myself that I could 21 it. At other times, my purpose was to please someone and gain 22 for my efforts. Sometimes this led to 23 or frustration.

When I was an IT manager after college graduation, I was 24 to work with a wealthy customer and be a go-between (中间人) for my company. I took on the assignment 25, thinking that this might be my time to shine. 26, the customer's demands proved to be more than I could do with. And the company chose to 27 the customer and try to meet his unreasonable requirements rather than stick to what we had 28 offered in the contract. As you can imagine, this led to a lot of unexpected 29 and arguing with some of the staff who 30 to do anything outside their scope (范围) of work. I remember walking into my office one morning, opening my laptop and 31 the blank screen for long, thinking to myself: What should I do? That was a(n) 32 time in my life and then I finally had to give up my first job and 33 that company sadly.

Perhaps, I thought then, I could find the 34 that didn't involve dealing with difficult

people and difficult situations. But later I realised: Is this 35 in our modern world? No, it is impossible.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇夹叙夹议文。作者通过自己在第一份工作当中的经历意识到:生活中不可能不会遇到难题。遇到困难时要勇敢面对,不要轻易放弃。

21. A. send B. research
C. handle D. attempt
C 有时候,“我”想证明自己能处理(handle)好它。故选C。
22. A. recognition B. honour
C. information D. news
A 其他时候,“我”想取悦某人以赢得其对“我”努力的认可(recognition)。故选A。
23. A. patience B. pleasure
C. stress D. appreciation
C 根据下文中的“frustration”可知,此处应填一个词义与之相近的消极词汇,C项符合语境。
24. A. assigned B. hoped
C. forbidden D. persuaded
A 大学毕业后“我”成了一个IT经理,被指派(assigned)与一位富有的客户打交道。故选A。
25. A. strongly B. happily
C. unwillingly D. anxiously
B 根据下文可知,“我”认为这可能是发挥自己才能的时候,所以应是愉快地(happily)接受了任务。故选B。
26. A. Moreover B. Instead
C. Therefore D. However
D 上文讲“我”认为这可能是发挥自己才能的时候,下文说这位客户的要求“我”处理不了,上下文是转折关系。故选D。
27. A. look into B. meet with
C. wait for D. stand by
D 公司选择支持(stand by)客户,努力满足他的一些不合理的要求。故选D。
28. A. frequently B. fluently
C. originally D. gradually
C 公司尽力满足这位客户的一些不合理的要求而不是坚持当初(originally)签订的合同。故选C。
29. A. programmes B. problems
C. goals D. results
B 这导致了意想不到的问题(problems)。故选B。
30. A. longed B. refused
C. preferred D. agreed
B 一些员工拒绝(refused)做超出他们工作范围的任何事。故选B。

31. A. staring at B. aiming at
C. pointing at D. shouting at
A 记得一天早晨,“我”走进了办公室,打开手提电脑,盯着(staring at)屏幕很长时间。故选A。
32. A. funny B. easy
C. difficult D. amazing
C “我”应该怎么办?在“我”的人生中那是一段艰难的(difficult)时光。故选C。
33. A. left B. charged
C. shut D. lost
A 最终“我”放弃了“我”的第一份工作,伤心地离开(left)了公司。故选A。
34. A. lesson B. life
C. truth D. job
D 当时“我”认为,也许“我”能找到不和难对付的人和事打交道的工作(job)。故选D。
35. A. urgent B. necessary
C. reasonable D. possible
D 后来“我”意识到,这在现代社会可能(possible)吗?故选D。

IV. 语法填空

In the 17th century, the Netherlands experienced a period of **36. artistic** (art) prosperity known as the Dutch Golden Age. During this period, artists found **37. inspiration** (inspire) in Northern Renaissance painting techniques, contributing to masterpieces like *Girl with a Pearl Earring* by Johannes Vermeer. Known as the “Mona Lisa of the North”, this painting **38. represents** (represent) the best of Dutch art and it has become one of art history's most beloved paintings.

Girl with a Pearl Earring is Vermeer's most well-known work of art. **39. However**, it did not attain international fame until the end of the 20th century, **40. when** it was featured in a special exhibition in Washington, DC. The painting does not show a specific person. Instead, it shows **41. an** unknown girl dressed in grand clothing who, “like a vision coming from the darkness,” art historian Arthur K. Wheelock explained, “belongs to no specific time or place.” Vermeer is known for his ability to create shapes and forms **42. using** (use) light rather than line. This characteristic approach **43. to** modelling is particularly evident in *Girl with a Pearl Earring*.

In addition to its fascinating context and appealing beauty, the piece is celebrated for the mystery that surrounds it. “When you think about the Mona Lisa, she is also looking at us, but she

isn't engaging," Tracy Chevalier points out. "While *Girl with a Pearl Earring* is right there, there is nothing between her and us. She has this magical quality of being **44. incredibly** (incredible) open and yet mysterious at the same time—and that is **45. what** makes her so appealing."

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假设你是李华,你的朋友 Tom 邀请你下周去他们学校参加文化交流活动并向外国朋友介绍中国的传统绘画。但你正忙于准备期末考试,不得不谢绝邀请。请根据下面的要点用英语写一封信:

1. 谢绝邀请;
2. 说明理由;
3. 推荐朋友 Mary 参加,并说明原因。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;

3. 信的开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Tom,

Thank you very much for inviting to introduce the traditional Chinese painting to foreign friends, but I'm sorry to inform you that I can't make it. The reason is that I'm busy preparing myself for the coming final examination.

I strongly recommend my friend Mary to take my place next week. She began to learn painting at an early age and has a good knowledge of the traditional Chinese painting, which, together with her active personality and excellent spoken English, will help make your activity a success.

Sorry again for any inconvenience caused by my absence.

Yours sincerely,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Jatin and his younger sister, Neha, lived with their parents in a poor neighbourhood. Their mother was very sick and their father was struggling to find a job, and they had only a little money with which to buy food. As they had not paid the rent for several months, the landlord was breathing down their necks (盯着他们).

One day, Jatin took Neha's shoes to a shoe repairman to be fixed, but he lost them on the way home. It wasn't until he got home that he realised he had lost the shoes. He was afraid that his parents

would be angry and disappointed, so he begged his sister to keep it secret. Neha agreed and the two decided to share Jatin's running shoes. Neha's school hours were in the morning, so she would wear them first. After school, she would rush back and give them to Jatin. He could then run to his school, which began in the afternoon. Although he ran as fast as he could, Jatin often arrived late and was warned by the school.

A long-distance race was going to be held for the boys in the city. When Jatin learned that the third prize was a new pair of shoes, he decided to take part. He ran home excitedly and promised his sister that he would win her the new shoes.

The day of the race arrived. Jatin had a strong start, but halfway through the race he began to get tired and his legs began to ache. Getting more and more exhausted, he thought only of Neha and his promise to her. Dreaming of the new shoes he would win for his sister gave him strength, and he stayed right behind the two fastest runners, determined to finish third. Suddenly, as the finish line drew near, another runner collided (碰撞) with Jatin from behind and Jatin crashed to the ground.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Jatin looked up and he saw the other boys rushing ahead. Refusing to give up at this crucial point, Jatin clenched his teeth, jumped to his feet and ran as fast as he could. Finally, he was the fourth one to dash across the finish line. Jatin couldn't help sobbing at the thought of letting his sister down. But much to his surprise, the runner who collided with him was disqualified for breaking the rule and Jatin won the third prize. Jatin felt overjoyed and relieved during the award ceremony, holding the shoes close to his chest.

Filled with pleasure, Jatin walked home in no time. He could not wait to see his sister and share the good news. On his arrival, Jatin found Neha was walking around outside nervously and anxiously. "Neha, see what I have got for you," Jatin said excitedly, taking the prize out of his bag with his trembling hands. The instant Neha saw the shoes, her face lit up. So thrilled was she that she threw herself at Jatin. "Thank you! Jatin." Tears of joy welled up in their eyes as the brother and the sister hugged tightly together.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and nature, whose topic is understanding and exploring nature. Help students gain a preliminary understanding of nature, understand nature, actively explore and try to reveal the law of nature, and discover the mystery of nature. Through the biological species, biological evolution, biological diversity, nature plant language mystery, this unit makes students initially understand the origin of species and plant development, encourages thinking about nature, stimulates the exploration of nature and respect for the laws of nature, while helping them understand the significance of harmony between man and nature. At the same time, the unit tells the story of Darwin's work *The Origin of Species*, guiding students to experience the hardships of exploration, and learn the scientific spirit and innovative spirit of scientists who brave difficulties, ask bold questioning and conduct courageous inquiry.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能围绕本单元的主题语境内容,基于本单元提供的多模态语篇,了解本单元有关动植物及生物进化的词汇及表达。
		语法	过去完成时。
		语篇	能读懂、理解与探索自然相关的文章内容,恰当使用所学词汇与表达谈论、阐述相关话题。
		语用	初步了解中外科学家对大自然的探索,获取世界不同地区的动植物信息,深化对单元主题意义的理解。
	语言技能	听	能听懂与自然界生物多样性相关的话题。
		说	能就生物物种、生物进化、生物多样性、自然界植物语言奥秘等话题进行讨论,并能恰当使用所学词汇、句型描述与探讨和保护自然等相关的话题。
		读	能读懂、理解与探索自然相关的文章内容,了解本单元有关动植物及生物进化的词汇及表达。
		写	能通过植物观察日记分析观察日记的基本要素,并根据所给文段内容仿写水仙花的生长日记。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	通过运用各种学习策略,在自主、合作与探究式学习的过程中,结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题,不断监控、评价、反思和调整学习内容和进程,提高理解和表达能力。
文化意识	能更深刻地认识人与自然的关系,理解人与自然和谐相处的重要意义;能关注自然、热爱自然,培养与自然和谐相处的意识。
思维品质	能运用本单元所学知识,通过比较、分析并联系自身实际,介绍与自然相关的纪录片以及世界著名的自然历史博物馆,积极探索自然,培养不断探究、不断创新的思维意识。

◊ 必备知识

必背 单词	seed, distant, sample, evolve, suspect, ancestor, evolution, generate, characteristic, decline, blame, goat, primitive, worldwide, giant, myth, legend, detect, root, link, centimetre
重点 表达	answer the call, be a disgrace, of all time, come to exist, begin with, lead to, be similar to, look for, be regarded as, be native to, adapt to, a variety of, tiny amounts of, drive... away, link... to, call for, in some ways, as well as, communicate with
重点 知识	1. what 引导宾语从句 2. 主语+be+ <i>adj.</i> (+for sb.)+不定式 3. be said to... 4. way 后的定语从句
单元 语法	过去完成时
单元 写作	观察日志

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Understand the basic information of the three rare animals, master the relevant vocabulary about the animals, introduce the theme and pave the way for further reading and expression.
2. Activate the existing language and background knowledge, and stimulate the interest in the topic.
3. Talk about knowledge about animals and plants, and explore nature.
4. Be familiar with the topic context and get the general idea of the article.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一)核心词汇

1. distant *adj.* 遥远的
2. sample *n.* 样本
3. suspect *v.* 猜想, 怀疑, 觉得
4. evolve *v.* 进化
evolution *n.* 进化(论)
5. generate *v.* 产生, 创造
6. a variety of 各种各样的
7. date back to 追溯到, 起源于……
8. adapt to 适应
9. be crowded with 挤满, 堆满
10. answer the call 响应号召
11. of all time 有史以来

12. in question 讨论中的; 有疑问的, 被怀疑的

13. come to exist 开始存在

14. lead to 导致

15. be regarded as 被认为是……

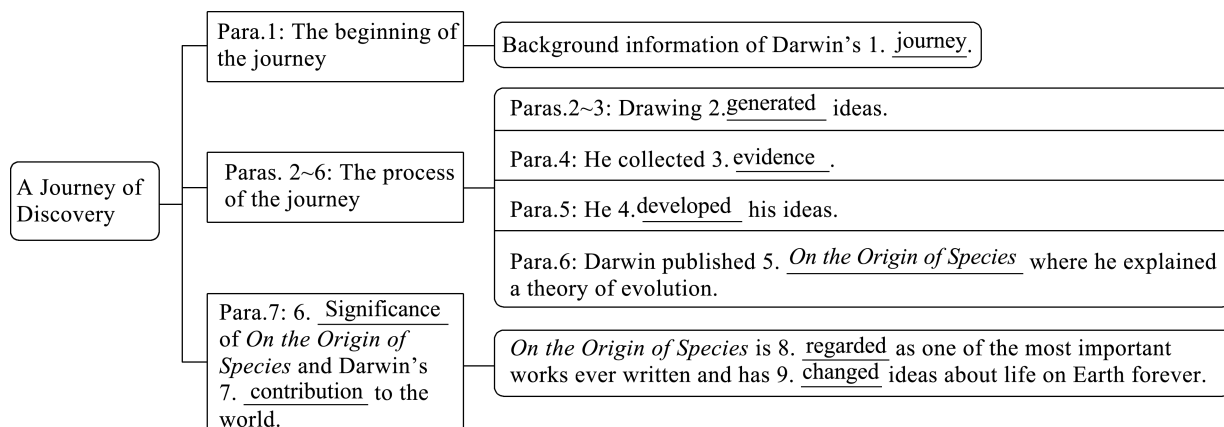
(二)阅读词汇

1. seed *n.* 种子, 籽
2. geologist *n.* 地质学家
3. ancestor *n.* (动物的) 原种, 祖先
4. finch *n.* 雀科鸣禽
5. beak *n.* 鸟嘴, 喙
6. first choice 理想选择; 首选
7. be a disgrace 是耻辱, 是丢脸的事
8. share... with... 和……分享……
9. at the same time 同时

○ 任务型课堂 ○

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Who answered the call to visit distant countries yet little known?
 - The captain's first choice.
 - A young man who had completed his degree in medical school.
 - A young man whose father was proud of him.
 - A young man whose father thought badly of him.
- Which inspired Darwin most on the Galápagos Islands?
 - Rocks.
 - Plants.
 - Animals.
 - Birds.
- According to Darwin, how did new species of plants and animals come to exist?
 - They came from the same place.
 - They appeared on Earth together.
 - They evolved from their ancestors.
 - They often changed themselves.
- What's most people's original attitude towards Darwin's theory of evolution?
 - Favourable.
 - Unacceptable.
 - Uninterested.
 - Neutral.

答案: 1~4 DDCB

○ 语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- After Darwin had spent some time in South America, his room on the ship was crowded with samples of the plants and animals he had collected.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。After 引导时间状语从句, he had collected 是定语从句, 修饰先行词 samples of the plants and animals, 省略了关系代词 that/which。

[尝试翻译] 达尔文在南美洲度过一段时间后, 船舱里他的房间堆满了他收集的动植物样本。

- When the *Beagle* reached the Galápagos Islands in 1835, Darwin saw a variety of new species, but it was the birds that interested him the most.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。When 引导时间状语从句, it was... that... 为强调句型。

[尝试翻译] 1835 年, 当贝格尔号抵达加拉帕戈斯群岛的时候, 达尔文发现了各种各样的新物种, 但最令他感兴趣的是鸟类。

- Darwin suspected that the finches had evolved from a common ancestor, which had arrived on the islands a long time before.

[句子分析] 本句是一个主从复合句。that 引导宾语从句, 该从句中 which 引导非限制性定语从句, 修饰先行词 a common ancestor。

[尝试翻译] 达尔文猜想这些雀科鸣禽是由一个共同的祖先进化而来的, 这个祖先很久以前就来到了这片岛屿。

○ 思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

- How did Darwin draw his conclusion?
By observing and analysing.
- How do you think the human species will evolve in the future?
The human species will evolve into a more advanced species in the future. (回答合理即可)

Unit 5 课后素养评价 (十七)**Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending****I. 阅读理解**

The rapid pace of global warming and its effects on habitats raise the question of whether species are able to keep up so that they remain in suitable living conditions. Some animals can move fast to adjust to a swiftly changing climate. Plants, being less mobile, rely on means such as seed dispersal (传播) by animals, wind or water to move to new areas, but this redistribution typically occurs within one kilometre of the original plant.

When the climate in a plant's usual range becomes hotter than it can tolerate, it must find new, cooler areas that might lie many kilometres away. One explanation for long-distance seed

dispersal is through transport by migratory (迁徙的) birds. Such birds swallow seeds when eating fruit and can move them tens or hundreds of kilometres outside the range of a plant species.

González-Vary and her colleagues reported how plants might be able to keep pace with rapid climate change with the help of migratory birds. The authors analysed the fruiting times of plants, patterns of bird migration and the interactions between fruit-eating birds and fleshy-fruited plants across Europe. Plants with fleshy fruits were chosen for this study because most of their seed transport is by migratory birds, and because fleshy-fruited plants are an important part of the woody-plant

community in Europe. The common approach until now has been to predict plant dispersal using models fitted to abiotic (非生物的) factors such as the current climate. González-Vary instead analysed an impressive data set of 949 different seed-dispersal interactions between bird and plant communities, together with data on entire fruiting times and migratory patterns of birds across Europe. The researchers also analysed DNA traces from bird wastes to identify the plants and birds responsible for seed dispersal.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了植物是如何适应气候变化的。

1. How do species adapt to climate change when it's too hot?
 - A. All animals will move away across great distances.
 - B. Some plants depend on migratory birds to carry seeds.
 - C. Some plants depend on animals, wind or water to move.
 - D. Plants' seeds disperse to cooler places of several kilometres away.

B 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“*One explanation for long-distance seed dispersal is through transport... a plant species.*”可知,植物会通过候鸟迁徙将其种子传播到远方,通过这种方式来适应过热的气候。故选 B。

2. Why did researchers mainly study fleshy-fruited plants?
 - A. Most of these can't fit rapid climate change.
 - B. Migratory birds like making nests in them.
 - C. Migratory birds transport their seeds.
 - D. They are favoured by most birds.

C 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“*Plants with fleshy fruits were chosen for this study because most of their seed transport is by migratory birds, and because fleshy-fruited plants are an important part of the woody-plant community in Europe.*”可知,该研究选择将肉质果实植物作为研究对象主要是因为它们的种子是由候鸟运输的。故选 C。

3. Why does the author mention “fleshy fruits” and “fruiting times” in Paragraph 3?
 - A. To explain relations between fruit plants and migratory birds.
 - B. To clarify the reason why birds migrate in fruiting times.
 - C. To present a fact that migratory birds eat flesh fruits.
 - D. To show that fruits depend on migratory birds.

A 推理判断题。第三段首句提到植物在候鸟的帮助下跟上快速的气候变化,结合本段中的“*The authors analysed the fruiting times of plants, patterns of bird migration and the interactions between fruit-eating birds and fleshy-fruited plants across Europe.*”可知,本段提到“肉质果实”和“结果期”是为了找出植物的果实与候鸟迁徙之间的联系,这样候鸟迁徙才能帮助植物果实传播,从而跟上气候变化。故选 A。

4. What is the text mainly about?

- A. The advantage of fruit plants.
- B. The destination of the bird migration.
- C. The adaptation of fruit plants to the climate change.
- D. The influence of climate change on plants and animals.

C 主旨大意题。通读全文,结合第三段首句可知,本文主要介绍了植物是如何适应气候变化的。故选 C。

II. 七选五

Why Walking Makes You a Better Worker?

We're busy at work, distracted (分心) by technology and often live in urban environments far from wild spaces. 1. The average American, for example, spends about 90% of their life indoors. But what happens if we make time for an hour outside each day?

2. You'll have to stand up and move, which is beneficial if most of your day involves sitting in front of a screen. Research shows short breaks can improve work enthusiasm, and a quick break in natural light will deliver a shot of vitamin D.

There's also a lot of work on the mental benefits of being in nature—on the state of being happy and on your brain's ability to make sense of life. “When people are all out in nature, even in urban nature, people tend to have more positive emotion and energy than when they are indoors. 3,” says Lisa Nisbet, associate professor at Canada's Trent University.

The idea that nature is good for us has been gaining ground since the 1980s. 4. Afterwards shinrin-yoku (森林浴), the Japanese concept followed that absorbing the atmosphere in forests can benefit your health. Researchers of shinrin-yoku have since found plenty of physical and mental benefits, while global studies suggest time in nature can, for example, restore our ability to focus, increase creativity, and even help us live longer.

Of course, many of us live in cities with no

ready access to forests or wilderness. 5. Various studies have shown that green environments in cities have beneficial effects.

- A. We also don't get out much
B. But it doesn't have to be a forest
C. People can get to a forest for a hike
D. In other words, people are happier in nature

- E. There are some obvious benefits of going outside
F. Green and blue spaces are better than busy city streets
G. First came the theory that humans have a basic desire to connect with nature

答案:1~5 AEDGB

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务目标

1. Understand key information by watching the video, learn and master the useful expressions.
2. Strengthen reading skills by skimming, scanning and summarising to solve comprehensive problems related to the text.
3. Analyse the textual structure and linguistic features of the text, and then use the relevant language to express yourself.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. I sow the **seed** in pots of soil-based compost. 种子, 籽
2. The **geologist** I contacted thinks this is an ideal place to drill. 地质学家
3. A **sample** of a substance or product is a small quantity of it that shows you what it is like. 样本
4. If you say that something is a **disgrace**, you are emphasising that it is very bad or wrong. 耻辱
5. Some festivals are held to honour the dead or to satisfy the **ancestors**. 祖先
6. A bird's **beak** is the hard curved or pointed part of its mouth. 鸟嘴, 喙

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>distant</u> <i>adj.</i> 遥远的	distance <i>n.</i> 距离; 间距; 遥远
<u>generate</u> <i>v.</i> 产生, 创造	generator <i>n.</i> 发电机
	generation <i>n.</i> (产品发展的) 代; 产生
<u>suspect</u> <i>v.</i> 猜想, 怀疑, 觉得	suspicion <i>n.</i> 怀疑; 疑心
	suspicious <i>adj.</i> 令人怀疑的; 可疑的

III. 补全短语

1. first choice 理想选择; 首选
2. of all time 一直, 始终; 有史以来
3. in question 讨论中的; 有疑问的; 被怀疑的
4. share... with... 和……分享……

5. date back to 追溯到
6. lead to 导致
7. be crowded with 挤满……; 充满……
8. at the same time 同时
9. come to exist 开始存在
10. adapt to 适应
11. a variety of 各种各样的
12. be regarded as 被认为是……

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: what 引导宾语从句

It seemed their beaks had evolved according to what food was available on that particular island.

它们的喙似乎是根据那个特定岛上的可觅得的食物进化而来的。

2. 句型公式: 过去分词短语作定语

The young man in question, Charles Darwin, was a geologist and naturalist, fascinated by rocks, plants and animals.

我们正在讨论的这个年轻人就是地质学家和博物学家查尔斯·达尔文, 他对岩石和动植物有着浓厚的兴趣。

3. 句型公式: enough to do

It was just an idea, but enough to inspire Darwin to look for more evidence.

这只是一个想法, 但足以激励达尔文去寻找更多的证据。

4. 句型公式: 强调句型

... but it was the birds that interested him the

most.

……但最令他感兴趣的是鸟类。

5. 句型公式:so... that...

But Darwin's scientific studies were so convincing

that more and more people started to believe his theory.

但是达尔文的科学研究是如此令人信服,以至于越来越多的人开始相信他的理论。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. distant adj. 遥远的

[教材原文] The captain of the ship, the *Beagle*, wanted someone who would “profit by the opportunity of visiting **distant** countries yet little known”.

贝格尔号的船长想要招募这样一名船员, 这名船员将能“借此机会访问遥远且至今鲜为人知的国度并从中受益”。

[归纳拓展]

(1) be distant towards/with sb. 对某人冷淡/疏远

be distant from 离……遥远

(2) distance *n.* 距离; 间距; 遥远

at a distance (of) 隔一段距离; 从远处

in the distance 在远处

from a distance 从远处

keep... at a distance = keep one's distance from...

与……保持距离

名师点拨 ■■■■

对于 distance 的提问多用 what, 而不用 how far 或者 how long, 表示长距离应用 a long distance 而不用 a far distance。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The village where I used to live is distant from Beijing.

② What is the distance from Beijing to Shanghai?

③ The noise of the car died away in the distance.

④ We saw them waving to us at a distance of two hundred yards.

⑤ In the dark of the night, the lights of the small town are like the distant (distance) fireflies, which are becoming dimmer and dimmer.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之环境描写) 令我们非常高兴的是, 远处的水声吸引了我们的注意, 把我们引到了河边。

Much to our delight, the sound of water in the distance caught our attention and drove us to the riverbank.

2. evolve v. 进化; 逐步发展, 逐渐演变

[教材原文] Maybe animals **evolved** as they adapted to their changing environments?

也许动物为了适应不断变化的环境会逐渐进化?

[归纳拓展]

(1) evolve from/out of 由……进化而来; 从……发

展/演变而来

(2) evolution *n.* 进化(论); 发展

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① And that was the answer to how new species of plants and animals came to exist: they evolved from earlier ancestors.

② I wish to see that you could enquire it in time and inform me the things' evolution (evolve).

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之传统文化介绍) 有趣的是, 汉字是由图画和符号演变而来的。

It is interesting that Chinese characters evolve from pictures and signs.

3. a variety of/varieties of 各种各样的

[教材原文] When the *Beagle* reached the Galápagos Islands in 1835, Darwin saw **a variety of** new species, but it was the birds that interested him the most.

1835年, 当贝格尔号抵达加拉帕戈斯群岛的时候, 达尔文发现了各种各样的新物种, 但最令他感兴趣的是鸟类。

[归纳拓展]

(1) variety *n.* [U]变化, 多样化; [C]品种

(2) various *adj.* 各种不同的, 各种各样的

(3) vary *v.* 相异; 改变

vary in 在某方面不同

vary from... to... 从……到……不同

vary with 随……而变化

名师点拨 ■■■■

(1) a variety of 后接可数名词复数作主语时, 谓语动词常用复数形式。

A great variety of patterns **were** provided to customers.

种类繁多的图案被提供给了顾客。

(2) “the variety of + 可数名词复数”意为“……的品种”, 作主语时谓语动词用单数形式。

The variety of goods in the shop **is** rich.

这家商店的商品品种丰富。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The shop has various (vary) clothes for customers to choose from.

②(2023·新课标Ⅱ卷)Yellowstone National Park offers a variety (various) of ranger programs throughout the park, and throughout the year.

③The price of tomatoes varies with the season.

④A variety of his books have been (be) published in recent years.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之推荐信)文学社推荐了**各种各样的好书**,鼓励我们从阅读中获得乐趣。

The Literature Society recommended various good books/a variety of good books/varieties of good books, encouraging us to get pleasure out of reading.

②(应用文写作之通知)艺术文化展定于下周举行,期间将进行**从唱歌、跳舞到朗诵诗歌**的各种表演。
The Art and Cultural Show is scheduled to be held next week, during which performances will be put on, varying from singing, dancing to reciting poems.

4. suspect v. 猜想,怀疑,觉得

[教材原文]Darwin **suspected** that the finches had evolved from a common ancestor, which had arrived on the islands a long time before.

达尔文猜想这些雀科鸣禽是由一个共同的祖先进化而来的,这个祖先很久以前就来到了这片岛屿。

[归纳拓展]

(1)suspect sb. of (doing) sth. 怀疑某人(做过)某事

suspect sb./sth. to be/as... 怀疑某人/某物是……

(2)suspicion *n.* 怀疑;疑心

under suspicion 被怀疑

(3)suspicious *adj.* 令人怀疑的;可疑的
be suspicious of/about sth. 对某事怀疑

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①Any man who has witnessed the attack is under suspicion.

②Some of his colleagues at work became suspicious (suspect) of his behaviour.

(2)写作微练

(读后续写之情节描写)只是在那个时候,我开始**怀疑我是否应该告诉她那件事**。

Just at that time, I began to suspect whether to tell her that matter.

5. what 引导宾语从句

[教材原文]It seemed their beaks had evolved according to **what food was available on that**

particular island.

它们的喙似乎是根据那个特定岛上的可觅得的食物进化而来的。

[归纳拓展]

what 引导的宾语从句的语序为陈述语序。what 在从句中可以作主语、宾语、表语和定语。

[即学即练]

(1)补全句子

①你知道那个女孩的父亲是干什么的吗?(what 作表语)

Do you know what the girl's father is?

②一座现代化城市已经在十年前还是一片荒地的地方建起来了。(what 作主语)

A modern city has been set up in what was a wasteland ten years ago.

③(2023·新课标Ⅰ卷)他决定去建造后来他称之为生态机器的东西。(what 作宾语)

He decided to build what he would later call an eco-machine.

④我们很难想象古代奴隶们的生活是什么样子的。(what 作定语)

It's difficult for us to imagine what life was like for slaves in the ancient world.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信)**我们发现**,只从外表来判断你吃的东西是不明智的。

What we discovered is that it's unwise to judge what you eat only by its appearance.

多义词汇 专练

1. suspect: A. *v.* 怀疑

B. *n.* 嫌疑人;可疑对象

C. *adj.* 可疑的;靠不住的

① He resigned after being **suspected** to be a criminal. A

②Some of the evidence they produced was highly **suspect**. C

③What a disgrace! Her son is a murder **suspect** in the case. B

2. He planted the first **seeds** of doubt in my mind.

B

A. *n.* 种子

B. *n.* 起源,起因

C. *n.* 种子选手

Unit 5 课后素养评价 (十八)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 单句语法填空

- As well as generating (generate) electricity, the Three Gorges Dam is intended to reduce the potential floods.
- It is still a question where the earliest life forms probably evolved (evolution).
- It is evident (evidence) that they suffered a sizable economic loss as a result of the war.
- The company has been continuously profitable (profit) for the last three years.
- It's an inspiring (inspire) story worthy of study; nonetheless, it's still a tragic military defeat.
- There is nobody to blame but yourself. You know, leaving the door unlocked is an open invitation to burglars.
- The survey used random samples (sample) of two thousand people across the Midwest, which is more convincing.

II. 短语填空

a variety of; adapt to; in question; of all time; answer the call; date back to; come to exist; be crowded with; in the distance; lead to

- As he walked along, he began to see another man in the distance.
- The meeting room was crowded with businessmen who came from all over the country.
- The vase is valued at \$3,000,000 and it dates back to the Ming Dynasty.
- When they moved to France, the children adapted to the change well.
- There is a variety of patterns to choose from.
- This book is regarded as one of the best-sellers of all time.
- Then you have to discover whether the painting in question has those characteristics.
- Certain forms of knowledge come to exist in certain places.
- Will China answer the call of Africa and finish the task in cooperation with the locals?
- He said drought had led to severe crop failure for the second year running.

III. 补全句子

- 正是因为遇上交通阻塞被困住才来晚的。(强调句型)
It was because I was stuck in the traffic that I came late.

- 李江和苏华在我们欢迎英国学生时应该穿什么服装的问题上没有达成一致。(what 引导宾语从句)
Li Jiang and Su Hua don't agree on what we should wear when greeting the British students.
- 马克·吐温享有良好的声誉,他被认为是美国最伟大的作家之一。(过去分词短语作定语)
Mark Twain, considered to be one of the greatest American writers, enjoys a good reputation.
- 这场比赛意义重大,要求每个人都准时到场。(so... that...)
The game is so significant that it is required that everyone should present themselves punctually.

IV. 完形填空

Ian Ellis was planning on doing some bird-watching. But instead, he took part in an incredible 1 !

As Ian looked through his telescope, he saw the curious 2 . A herd of cows surrounded something in the mud, so Ian set off to see what it was. And what he found was a complete 3 !

The preserve was only a few miles away from the ocean. Somehow, a 5-day-old baby seal (海豹) had found its way to the grassland and had become 4 in the mud. So Ian arranged for it to be taken to the 5 Natureland Seal Shelter.

At the shelter, the seal was named Celebration, and it was 6 that she was suffering from several diseases. But thanks to Ian discovering her, Celebration was right where she 7 to be in order to get well.

She 8 made some friends while she was there! Once Celebration 9 recovered, it was time to release her and her new friend, Charlie, back into the wild.

The two friends were 10 to the seaside by a shelter staff member, where Ian 11 them to say farewell to Celebration. He would do the honour of releasing her back to her true 12 .

Celebration was a bit more hesitant to 13 the human friends she'd made. She gradually made her way to the water and eventually swam out to sea, but not before 14 back to say goodbye one last time. Ian says overall it really was a 15 experience.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 Ian Ellis 抢救一只小海豹的故事。Ian Ellis 本来想去保护区观察鸟,结果通过望远镜意外发现一群奶牛围着一只陷在泥里的小海豹。他将海豹送进了海豹避难所医治。海豹在痊愈后被放归大海。

1. A. event B. rescue
C. ceremony D. get-together
B 下文提到,一只小海豹陷在泥里,Ian Ellis 参加了抢救(rescue)行动。
2. A. scene B. conflict
C. animal D. accident
A 根据下文的“A herd of cows surrounded something in the mud”可知,从望远镜里,Ian 看到了一个令人好奇的场景(scene)。
3. A. wonder B. puzzle
C. joke D. shock
D 根据语境可知,他发现了一件完全令人震惊(shock)的事。
4. A. excited B. trapped
C. satisfied D. injured
B 根据下文的“in the mud”可知,小海豹陷在泥里。become trapped in 的意思是“被困在……”。
5. A. modern B. convenient
C. safe D. nearby
D 根据常识可知,小海豹应该被送到附近的(nearby)海豹避难所。
6. A. discovered B. proved
C. ignored D. judged
A 根据上文的“At the shelter”及常识可知,来到避难所,会对小海豹做检查,结果发现(discovered)她受好几种疾病的折磨。
7. A. hoped B. learned
C. needed D. decided
C 根据上文的“Celebration was right where”可知,避难所正是她康复所需要(needed)的地方。
8. A. even B. still
C. never D. ever
A 根据下文的“made some friends while she was

there”可知,此处 even 表达强调,意思是“在避难所,她甚至还交了几个朋友”。

9. A. actually B. finally
C. fully D. eventually
C 根据下文的“recovered”可知,此处的意思是“当小海豹完全(fully)康复时”。
10. A. tested B. deserted
C. encouraged D. driven
D 根据下文的“to the seaside by a shelter staff member”可知,避难所的工作人员驱车(driven)把小海豹和她的朋友送到海边。
11. A. held B. fed
C. met D. forced
C 根据下文的“to say farewell to Celebration”可知,Ian 在海边会见(met)小海豹和她的新朋友,跟她告别。
12. A. home B. wish
C. aim D. responsibility
A 大自然应该是小海豹真正的家(home)。
13. A. protect B. join
C. leave D. appreciate
C 根据空处所在句“a bit more hesitant to 13 the human friends”可知,离开(leave)她结交的人类朋友,小海豹有点儿犹豫。
14. A. ringing B. turning
C. coming D. looking
B 根据下文的“back to say goodbye one last time”可知,在游向大海之前,小海豹转过身来(turning)作最后一次告别。
15. A. funny B. common
C. dangerous D. fantastic
D Ian 说,总的来说,这真的是一次美妙的(fantastic)经历。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Correctly use the past perfect according to the context.
2. Learn some information about biodiversity and use it to express yourself in different situations.
3. Enhance listening ability and understand the main idea of the listening material.
4. Share life experiences and give some advice or comments.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. If anything goes wrong, don't **blame** me. 责怪
2. That is one small step for a man, but one **giant** leap for mankind. 巨大的
3. If something exists or happens **worldwide**, it

exists or happens throughout the world.

遍及全世界

4. As is known to all, sheep and **goats** have a pair of horns (角). 山羊

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>characteristic</u> <i>n.</i> 特征, 特性	<u>character</u> <i>n.</i> 特征; 人物, 角色; 汉字
<u>decline</u> <i>v.</i> 减少	<u>declining</u> <i>adj.</i> 下降的; 衰落的
<u>primitive</u> <i>adj.</i> 原始的, 低等的	<u>primitively</u> <i>adv.</i> 最初地
<u>extinct</u> <i>adj.</i> 灭绝的	<u>extinction</u> <i>n.</i> 灭绝
<u>production</u> <i>n.</i> 生产; 产量	<u>produce</u> <i>v.</i> 生产 <i>n.</i> 农产品
	<u>product</u> <i>n.</i> 产品

III. 补全短语

1. be native to 源于……的, 原产于……
2. in the end 最后, 终于
3. speaking of 谈到, 谈及
4. fight off 抵抗; 击退
5. by contrast 相比之下
6. so far 到目前为止
7. carry out 实施

8. be home to 是……的栖息地
9. be harmful to 对……有害

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: so... that...
Some can be very small, like bacteria and viruses, which are so small that we cannot see them with only our eyes.
有些可能非常小, 比如细菌和病毒, 以至于我们只用眼睛是看不见它们的。
2. 句型公式: 同位语从句
There is evidence that all the different iguanas have developed from more primitive ones and share a common ancestor.
有证据表明, 所有不同的鬣蜥都是从更原始的鬣蜥进化而来, 并有着共同的祖先。
3. 句型公式: 主语 + be + *adj.* + to do
Gregor Mendel chose to study pea plants because their characteristics were easy to control.
格雷戈尔·孟德尔选择研究豌豆植株是因为它们的性状易于控制。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. **blame** *v.* 责怪, 指责; 把……归咎于 *n.* (对错误或坏事应负的) 责任

[教材原文] The extinction of the Pinta Island tortoise is **blamed** on humans.
平塔岛龟的灭绝归咎于人类。

[归纳拓展]

(1) blame... for (doing) sth. 因(做)某事而指责……; 把(做)某事归咎于……

blame sth. on sb. 将某事归咎于某人

sb. be to blame for (doing) sth. 某人因(做)某事而应该受到责备

(2) bear/take/shoulder the blame 承担责任

put/lay the blame (for sth.) on... (将某事)归咎于……

名师点拨 ■■■

to blame 含有被动意义, 不能用 “to be blamed” 结构。

He was blamed for the accident, but he blamed it on others. In fact, it is he, not others, that **is to blame** for it.

他因这起事故受到责备, 但他把它归咎于别人。事实上, 应该他, 而不是别人, 对此负有责任。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Lots of people find it hard to get up in the morning, and put the blame on the alarm clock.

②—Do you know who left the computer on all night long?

—It seems that Tom is to blame (blame). He played computer games last night.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之建议信) 当我们责怪他人时, 我们容易对自身的错误视而不见。

When we put/lay the blame on others, we would be blind of our own mistakes.

2. **decline** *v.* 减少; 下降; 衰退; 谢绝; 婉拒 *n.* 下降, 衰落

[教材原文] After goats in particular had been brought to the island, the Pinta Island tortoise population **declined**.

特别是山羊被带到岛上之后, 平塔岛龟的数量下降了。

[归纳拓展]

(1) decline to do... 谢绝/拒绝做……

decline by... 下降了……

decline to 下降至……

(2) a decline in 在……方面下降

be in decline 处于下降/衰退中

be on the decline 在衰退中; 在没落中; 在削减

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① There has been a steady decline in poverty over recent years.

- ②The crime rate in this area is on the decline.
 ③He declined to answer (answer) my questions.
 ④There was a decline in holiday sales over the past five years.
 ⑤Prices there are projected to decline by another 30 per cent or so.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之情绪描写)这使我非常伤心,因为我看到事情在走下坡路。

It makes me very sad, because I see that things are on the decline/in decline.

3. “主语+be+adj.(+for sb.)+不定式”句型

[教材原文] Gregor Mendel chose to study pea plants because **their characteristics were easy to control**.

格雷戈尔·孟德尔选择研究豌豆植株是因为它们的性状易于控制。

[归纳拓展]

(1)“主语+be+adj.(+for sb.)+不定式”是一个常用句型,其用法如下:

①不定式中的动词和句子的主语之间存在逻辑上的动宾关系,但在形式上用不定式的主动形式表示被动意义。不定式前面有时会通过介词 for 带上其逻辑主语。

②若不定式中的动词是不及物动词,其后要加上结构或含义所需的介词。

③此结构中的形容词多为表示主语性质、特征的词,如 difficult, hard, important, impossible, pleasant, comfortable, dangerous, heavy 等。

(2)该句型可转换为“It+be+adj.+不定式”。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①I like getting up very early in summer. The morning air is so fresh to breathe (breathe).

②To their surprise, they found that the lecture

given by the famous professor was easy to understand (understand).

③It was only after he had read the papers that Mr Brown realised the task was extremely difficult to complete (complete).

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之申请信)尽管解决这个问题很困难,但我没有放弃,因为我坚信“有志者,事竟成”。

①Even though the problem was difficult to solve, I didn't give it up because I firmly believed that where there is a will, there is a way.

②Even though it was difficult to solve the problem, I didn't give it up because I firmly believed that where there is a will, there is a way.

多义词汇 专练

1. **decline**: A. v. 谢绝 B. v. 减少 C. n. 下降

①In parts of southern California the **decline** was nearly 75 per cent. C

②At night, I offered to tell them a folk tale, but they **declined** with thanks. A

③The number of tourists to the place of interest **declined** by 10% last year. B

2. He was without question one of the **giants** of Japanese literature. C

A. n. 巨人

B. n. 大公司

C. n. 卓越人物

语法研习课

过去完成时

语法感知

①By the time he **was** 14, Mozart **had composed** many pieces for the harpsichord, piano and violin, as well as for orchestras.

②After they **had known** each other for many years, Beethoven said, “He is a good composer, but he **has taught** me nothing.”

③Before they **visited** India, they **had recorded** seven albums.

1. 句①中黑体部分使用的时态分别是 一般过去时 和

过去完成时。

2. 句②中黑体部分使用的时态分别是 过去完成时 和 现在完成时。

3. 句③中黑体部分使用的时态分别是 一般过去时 和 过去完成时。

语法精讲

一、构成: **had+过去分词**

二、功能

1. 表示在过去某一时刻或动作以前完成了的动作,也可以说过去的时间关于过去的动作,即“过去的过

去”。可以用 by, before 等介词短语或时间状语从句来表示,也可以用表示过去的动作来表示,还可以通过上下文来表示。

By nine o'clock last night, we **had got** 200 pictures from the spaceship.

到昨晚 9 点钟,我们已经收到 200 张飞船发来的图片。

2. 表示从过去的某一时刻开始,一直延续到过去另一时间的动作或状态,常和 for, since 构成的时间状语连用。

I **had been** at the bus stop for 20 minutes when a bus finally came.

当公共汽车最终到来的时候,我在汽车站已等了 20 分钟。

He said he **had worked** in that factory since 1949.

他说自从 1949 年以来他就在那家工厂工作。

3. 过去完成时常常用在 told, said, knew, heard, thought 等动词后的宾语从句(或间接引语)中,这时从句中的动作发生在主句表示的过去的动作之前。

(2023·新课标Ⅱ卷) It felt great to know that I **had helped** bring this family together again.

很高兴得知我帮助了这个家庭重新团聚。

4. 在状语从句中,当涉及在过去不同时间发生的两个动作时,通常遵循以下规则:发生在前的动作,用过去完成时;发生在后的动作,用一般过去时。如 when, before, after, as soon as, till/until 引导的复合句。

When I woke up, it **had** already **stopped** raining.

我醒来时雨已停了。

She didn't go to bed until she **had finished** her work.

她直到把自己的工作做完之后才睡觉。

名师点拨

如果两个动作紧接着发生,则常常不用过去完成时,特别是在包含 before 和 after 的复合句中,因为从句的动作和主句的动作发生的先后顺序已经非常明确,可以用一般过去时代替过去完成时。

After he arrived in England, Marx **worked** hard to improve his English.

马克思到达英国之后,努力提高他的英语水平。

5. 动词 think, want, hope, mean, plan, intend 等用过去完成时表示过去未曾实现的想法、希望、打算或意图等。

They **had wanted** to help but could not get there in time.

他们本来打算去帮忙,但没有及时赶到那里。

We **had hoped** to be able to come and see you.

我们本来希望能来看看你。

6. 过去完成时还可用在 hardly... when..., no sooner... than..., It was the first/second... time (that)... 等固定结构或句型中。

Hardly had he **begun** to speak **when** the audience interrupted him.

他刚开始演讲,听众就打断了他。

No sooner had he **arrived than** he went away again.

他刚到就又走了。

It was the third time that he **had been** out of work that year.

这是他那一年第三次失业了。

7. 在含有表示与过去事实相反的虚拟语气的 if 从句中,常用过去完成时。

If we **hadn't made** adequate preparations, the conference wouldn't have been so successful.

如果我们没有做充分准备的话,会议是不会开得这么成功的。

语法冲关

I. 单句语法填空

- I didn't know a thing about the verbs, for I had not studied (study) my lesson.
- She found the key that she had lost (lose).
- Did you have difficulty finding Ann's house?
—Not really. She had given (give) us clear directions and we were able to find it easily.
- It was the first time Jane and I had been (be) apart for more than a few days.
- We had hardly left (leave) the dormitory the next morning when we realised (realise) we had left (leave) our map in the room.
- I had intended (intend) to meet you at the airport, but someone came to see me just when I was about to leave.
- If you had taken (take) the medicine yesterday, you might be well now.
- Is Peter coming?
—No, he changed (change) his mind after a phone call at the last minute.

II. 完成句子

- Mr Smith died yesterday. He had been a good friend of mine.
史密斯先生昨天去世了。他以前是我的好朋友。
- I returned the book that I had borrowed.
我已归还了我借的书。

3. No sooner had I seen him than I knew he was the man the police were looking for.
我一见到他就知道他是警察要找的人。
4. It was the first time that he had taken the train to a distant place on his own since he was born!

这是他有生以来第一次独自一人乘坐火车到一个很远的地方去！

5. He had thought to send for a doctor but he didn't.
他原本想去请医生来的,但是没去。

Unit 5 课后素养评价 (十九)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

characteristic; hear of; on the decline; by the way;
primitive; speak of; be native to; be to blame

- The only apple that is native to North America is the crabapple (红果).
- From the chart, we can see that the number of dolphins in China is on the decline.
- Primitive humans needed to be able to react like this to escape from dangerous animals.
- It's typical of him to forget. No wonder that he was to blame for not finishing the task on time.
- Genes determine the characteristics of every living thing.
- I've heard of this film, but never actually watched it.
- By the way, when did you say this photo was taken?
- Speaking of where he wants to go, he says, "Compared with modern cities, the culture in western China attracts me more."

II. 单句语法填空

- The town government had to find a new place to rebuild it, for it had been ruined (ruin) by a strong earthquake.
- If it had not been (be) for his invitation the other day, I should not be here now.
- No sooner had the writer stepped (step) on the stage than the audience broke (break) into thunderous applause.
- I had thought (think) that he would give me some help but he didn't.
- I hear you worked very late yesterday.
—Yes, it had been (be) completely dark by the time I left (leave) the office.
- That was the first time I had been (be) to Beijing so I had great difficulty finding the hotel.
- The Smiths moved to Canada permanently in the 1980s, but before then they had visited (visit) it several times.
- I finally got first prize in the competition last week.
—You deserved it. You had worked (work) so

hard for several weeks.

- In my opinion, Jack is a person who is easy to persuade (persuade).
- We expect him to carry out his promises.
- He tried various jobs and in the end became an accountant.
- I didn't fail the exam; in fact I did rather well!

III. 阅读理解

Scientists have found the world's biggest seagrass ecosystem in the Bahamas. Seagrass refers to dozens of different species of flowering plants that live entirely underwater producing energy through photosynthesis (光合作用) by absorbing sunlight. Like their land-based relatives, seagrasses have roots and leaves and also produce seeds. Seagrasses grow in salty coastal waters around the world, usually in shallow waters where sunlight is more plentiful. Since seagrasses carry out the process of photosynthesis, they are known to be very effective at storing carbon dioxide, the greenhouse gas. This is because photosynthesis involves plants using sunlight to transform carbon dioxide into oxygen.

These underwater plants play an important role in carbon sequestration, in which carbon is stored in the environment rather than being allowed to float freely in the atmosphere where it can contribute to global warming. According to Gallagher, one of the new study's authors, carbon enters the ocean as part of the carbon cycle, and the seagrass takes in this carbon through photosynthesis via their leaves. This is part one. The second part is when the seagrass transports this carbon through itself, burying and storing it in its root system. Seagrass stores this carbon permanently.

The purpose of the study by Gallagher and his colleagues was to map seagrass in the Bahamas, using data from 15 tiger sharks equipped with tracking instruments that could also take images of the sea floor. That information was then combined with reports from 2,500 surveys by human divers.

Mark Huxham, professor of teaching and

research in environmental biology, said, “This brilliant study uses imaginative and exciting new technology, in partnership with tiger sharks. We know seagrass is important for the health of our seas and our planet, but there are major gaps in our understanding about it.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇新闻报道。文章主要介绍了科学家们发现了有史以来最大的海草生态系统,并解释了海草的作用以及重要性。

1. What is Paragraph 1 mainly about?
A. The cause of photosynthesis.
B. Living conditions for seagrass.
C. The environmental effect of seagrass.
D. The introduction of photosynthesis.
C 段落大意题。通读第一段的内容可知,本段主要介绍了海草对环境的影响。故选 C。
2. What does the underlined part “carbon sequestration”

refer to in Paragraph 2?

- A. Absorbing carbon from the air.
B. Reducing carbon in the roots.
C. Releasing carbon into the air.
D. Keeping carbon in sea plants.
D 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在句可知,carbon sequestration 是指水下植物把碳封存在水下,避免了这些碳挥发在大气中,和选项 D 意思一致。故选 D。
3. What may Mark Huxham agree with?
A. Scientists have fully studied seagrass.
B. The study contributes to a new technology.
C. There is still a lot of work to study seagrass.
D. Tiger sharks will be the focus of future studies.
C 推理判断题。根据最后一段的内容可知,对海草的研究还需要很多努力。故选 C。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Understand the text, master the key vocabulary related to the topic, and describe the communication modes between natural plants.
2. Analyse an event in different ways to find out the positive and negative effects of it.
3. Use the words and expressions to show your opinions.

自主式预习

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. **Pesticides** are chemicals that farmers put on their crops to kill harmful insects. 杀虫剂
2. Even if you plant the seeds upside down, the **roots** will still grow down. 根
3. Television stations around the world are **linked** by satellite to guarantee the quality of broadcast. 连接
4. The ants are no larger than one **centimetre** across but with awe-inspiring strength. 厘米

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>myth</u> <i>n.</i> (古代的)神话	<u>mysterious</u> <i>adj.</i> 神秘的
<u>legend</u> <i>n.</i> 传说,传奇(故事)	<u>legendary</u> <i>adj.</i> 传说中的
<u>detect</u> <i>v.</i> 发现,察觉(尤指不易觉察到的事物)	<u>detection</u> <i>n.</i> 发现,察觉 <u>detective</u> <i>n.</i> 侦探
<u>warning</u> <i>n.</i> 警示,警告	<u>warn</u> <i>v.</i> 警告
<u>fantasy</u> <i>n.</i> 幻想,想象	<u>fantastic</u> <i>adj.</i> 极好的;幻想的

III. 补全短语

1. after all 毕竟;终究
2. drive away 把……赶走
3. tiny amounts of 微量的
4. communicate with 和……交流
5. in some ways 在某些方面
6. steal... from 从……偷
7. call for help 呼救
8. serve as 用作;充当
9. side by side 并肩

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: be said to...
Alexander the Great and Marco Polo were said to have visited such a tree in India.
据说亚历山大大帝和马可·波罗在印度曾参观过一棵这样的树。
2. 句型公式: with 复合结构
With us long believing that talking plants are fantasy, new research has revealed something amazing...
我们一直认为植物会说话是幻想,但是新的研究

展现了某些惊人的东西……

3. 句型公式:现在分词作状语

Using the wood wide web, plants can share information and even food with each other.
利用树联网,植物可以彼此共享信息甚至食物。

4. 句型公式:way 后的定语从句

Scientists are learning more every day about the secret ways in which plants talk to each other.

科学家们每天都在学习更多关于植物相互交流的秘密方式。

5. 句型公式:enough to do

Maybe one day we will know enough about plant communication to be able to “talk” with them ourselves.

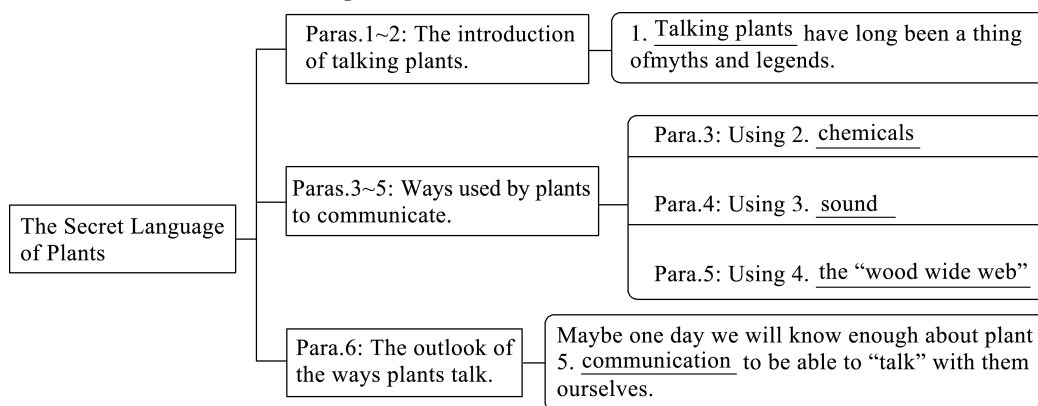
也许有一天,我们会对植物的交流有足够的了解,能够和它们“交谈”。

任务型课堂

Part 1 课文理解

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- Which plants communicate by making noises according to the text?
 - Corn and wheat.
 - Corn and chilli.
 - Wheat and chilli.
 - Chilli and rice.
- How does the fungal network connect?
 - By linking the roots of different plants to each other.
 - By linking the leaves of different plants to each other.
 - By linking the stems of different plants to each other.
 - By linking the fruits of different plants to each other.
- What can be inferred from the text?
 - Talking trees are not legends but scientific facts.
 - There is no use learning about how plants communicate.
 - The wasps attracted by the chemicals are harmful to the plants.
 - The “wood wide web” is absolutely safe in the

plant world.

答案:1~3 BAA

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- Scientists hope to learn more about this plant warning system, so that we can use it to grow crops without pesticides.
[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。so that 引导目的状语从句。
[尝试翻译]科学家希望能进一步了解这种植物警报系统,从而我们可以使用它来种植无农药的农作物。
- Some trees make clicking noises when there is not enough water, indicating drought is arriving.
[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。when 引导时间状语从句;indicating... 为现在分词结构作伴随状语。
[尝试翻译]在水分不足时,有些树木会发出咔嚓声,表示干旱即将来临。
- While the Internet is a worldwide network of computers linked by cables and satellites, the wood wide web is linked underground by fungi.
[句子分析]本句是一个让步状语从句。while 是连词,表示对比,意为“而,然而”。

[尝试翻译]虽然互联网是通过电缆和卫星连接的全球计算机网络,但是植物万维网则是在地下通过真菌连接而成。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What ways can plants use to communicate according to modern research?

Chemicals, sound and the wood wide web.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. link v. 把……联系起来;连接 n. 环;联系;纽带

[教材原文]Most surprisingly of all, plants have an amazing system of communication that can **link** nearly every plant in a forest.

最令人惊讶的是,植物有一套惊人的通信系统,几乎可以连接森林中的每一种植物。

[归纳拓展]

(1)link... to/with... 将……和……联系/连接起来

link... together 把……连接在一起

link up with... 与……联合;使与……衔接

(2)a link between A and B A与B之间的联系

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

Yellow is linked to/with confidence, self-respect and friendliness.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之传统文化介绍)在中国文化中,红色通常与高兴和喜庆联系在一起。

In Chinese culture, red is usually linked with joy and celebration.

②(应用文写作之倡议书)它可以给人们的生活带来新的兴趣点和焦点,并有助于将家与自然联系起来。

It can bring a new interest and focus into people's lives and help to make the link between home and nature.

2. drive away 把……赶走

[教材原文]Some of these chemicals **drive** insects **away**. Others attract insects—the wasps!

其中一些化学物质会驱走昆虫,另一些则会吸引昆虫——黄蜂!

[归纳拓展]

(1)drive off 开车离开

drive sb. crazy/mad 把某人逼疯

(2)go for a drive 去兜风

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

The servant detected the thief in the corner and drove him away.

2. What discoveries are described in the two reading texts in this unit and what do their meanings have in common?

Text 1 reveals the discovery of evolution and Text 2 reveals the discovery of communication between plants. They all reflect that there are numerous secrets in nature that remain to be explored.

(2)写作微练

(应用文写作之环境保护)噪音也是一种污染,巨大的噪音能使人发狂。

Noise is also a kind of pollution, and loud noises can drive/make people mad.

3. be said to... 据说……

[教材原文]Alexander the Great and Marco Polo **were said to** have visited such a tree in India.

据说亚历山大大帝和马可·波罗在印度曾参观过一棵这样的树。

[句式分析]本句属于“Sb./Sth. is said to do/to be...”句型,意为“据说……”。该句型可改写为“It is said that...”或“People say that...”。

[归纳拓展]

(1)在“It is/was + 过去分词 + that...”句型中,It是形式主语,that引导的从句作真正的主语。该句型可以转化为“Sb. + 谓语动词 + that...”或“Sb./Sth. + be + 过去分词 + to do sth./to be doing sth./to have done sth.”(根据不定式和谓语动词之间的关系来确定使用不定式的一般式、进行式还是完成式)。

(2)常用于该结构的动词有 say、believe、report、suggest、know、hope、require、demand、hope、order等,如:

It is believed that... = Sb./Sth. is believed to do sth.

人们都相信……;人们都认为……

It is reported that... = Sb./Sth. is reported to... 据报道……

It is suggested that... = Sb./Sth. is suggested to... 有人建议……

It is thought that... = Sb./Sth. is thought to... 人们认为……

It is known that... = Sb./Sth. is known to... 众所周知……

(3)在句型“It is suggested/required/demanded/ordered... + that 从句”中,that 从句中的谓语动词用“should + 动词原形”,should 可以省略。

(4)以上含有 hope、suggest、demand 等的复合句一般不可以转换为简单句。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① He is thought to have acted (act) foolishly. Now he has no one but himself to blame for losing the job.

② It is believed that printing was first invented by the Chinese.

(2) 句型转换

① A novelist is declared to give us a lecture on writing this afternoon.

→ It is declared that there will be a novelist giving us a lecture on writing this afternoon.

② It is said that he is working in that big company.

→ He is said to be working in that big company.

③ It is reported that he has written a new book about workers.

→ He is reported to have written a new book about workers.

(3) 写作微练

(应用文写作之演讲稿) **据报道**, 在未来几年中, 人工智能在各个行业的应用将呈现爆发性的增长趋势。

It is reported that in the coming years, the application of artificial intelligence in various industries will show an explosive growth trend.

4. **tiny amounts of** 微量的

[教材原文] The plant releases **tiny amounts of** chemicals from the leaves that are being eaten.

这种植物从正遭受啃食的叶子中释放出微量的化学物质。

[归纳拓展]

(1) a small/large amount of + 名词 少量/大量的……

amounts of + 名词 大量的……

the amount of + 名词 ……的数量

(2) amount to 合计; 总计; 相当于

名师点拨

a huge amount of 通常用来修饰不可数名词。
“a huge amount of + 名词”作主语时, 谓语动词用单数形式; “huge amounts of + 名词”作主语时, 谓语动词用复数形式。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① It is reported that a huge amount of money was spent (spend) on the bridge last year.

② It is reported that huge amounts of money were spent (spend) on the bridge last year.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之道歉信) 这周我有大量的工作要做。

I have a large amount of work to do this week.

5. **way** 后的定语从句

[教材原文] Scientists are learning more every day about the secret **ways in which plants talk to each other**.

科学家们每天都在学习更多关于植物相互交流的秘密方式。

[句式分析] 本句中含有定语从句 in which plants talk to each other, 修饰先行词 ways.

[归纳拓展]

(1) 当 way 表示“方式, 方法”时, 其后常接 that 或 in which 引导的定语从句, 也可将关系词 that 或 in which 省略掉, 此时先行词在从句中作状语;

(2) 当 way 在定语从句中作主语、宾语或表语时, 要用关系代词 that 或 which 引导定语从句, 作宾语时关系代词可以省略;

(3) 当 way 表示“方式, 方法”时, 其后还可接不定式或 of doing sth. 的形式。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The way that/which he had thought of to deal with the problem was of great significance.

② School activities are usually considered a good way to make (make) new friends and develop.

③ The boy was advised to adopt an effective way of memorising (memorise) new words.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之演讲稿) 从上个月发布的数据中, 我们可以知道人工智能技术已经改变了人们学习知识的方式。

From the data released last month, we can know that the AI technology has transformed the way that people learn knowledge/for people to learn knowledge.

多义词汇 专练

1. **root**: A. *n.* 起因, 根源 B. *n.* 根; 根茎

C. *n.* 起源

① Money, or love of money, is said to be the **root** of all evil. A

② Do you know that Flamenco has its **root** in Arabic music? C

③ In the garden, I pulled the plant up by the **root**. B

2. The two girls **linked** arms as they strolled down the street. C

A. *n.* 连接

B. *v.* 联系

C. *v.* 挽住

Unit 5 课后素养评价 (二十)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

1. There is a famous Greek myth (神话) in which Icarus flew too near to the sun.
2. She was a legend (传奇) in her own lifetime.
3. The tests are designed to detect (发现) the disease early.
4. These are vegetables grown without the use of pesticides (杀虫剂).
5. I pulled the plant up by the roots (根).
6. The video cameras are linked (连接) to a powerful computer.
7. Cooperation is a key element in the fight against cybercrime (网络犯罪).
8. A centimetre (厘米) can be infinitely divided into smaller units.

II. 单句语法填空

1. Most of us are in favour of his plan for tiny amounts of water are wasted (waste) during the production.
2. Officials believe that more than one person may be to blame (blame) for the fire.
3. The number of robberies in this area is on the decline.
4. It has a lot of words that are similar to words in Spanish.
5. She is said to have studied (study) abroad, but I don't know which country she studied in.
6. For example, you shouldn't put your bread on your plate.

III. 短语填空

tiny amounts of; communicate with; blame... on; decline to; in some ways; be characteristic of; after all; drive away; call for help; be linked with

1. The wide use of computers is characteristic of the Information Age.
2. Tom was in some ways a younger clone of his handsome and enthusiastic father.
3. The number of staff in this factory has declined to 1,000.
4. Why do you always blame your failure on others?
5. These scientists find that the Martian atmosphere contains only tiny amounts of water.
6. Television stations around the world are linked with each other by satellite.

7. Why are you so anxious? It isn't your problem after all.
8. I saw him drive away in the direction of the town.
9. Parents sometimes find it difficult to communicate with their teenage children.
10. Tell your child that if he ever gets a burn, he should immediately call for help.

IV. 补全句子

1. 他总是强烈渴望学习如何飞行。(how to)
He always had a strong desire to learn how to fly.
2. 有些喜剧演员就人们的行为方式或日常生活开玩笑。(way)
Some comedians tell jokes about the way people behave or about daily life.
3. 要学好汉语,你最好住在一个中国家庭里。(不定式作目的状语)
To learn Chinese well, you'd better live with a Chinese family.
4. 玛丽和她的姐妹们正在中国学习汉语。(as well as)
Mary as well as her sisters is learning Chinese in China.
5. 去年在这座桥上花费了许多钱。(amount)
Large amounts of money were spent on the bridge last year.
6. 有这么多人帮助我们,我们一定能解决这个难题。(with 复合结构)
With so many people to help us, we are sure to solve the difficult problem.

V. 语法填空

Camellias (山茶花) are available in a great range 1. of colours—red, pink, white and mixed colours. For the longest time, the golden camellias lived in a valley 2. which/that was unknown to the outside world.

In the 1960s, Chinese scientists announced their discovery of the golden camellias. It was an 3. amazing (amaze) announcement for the international gardening community. Also, the discovery made 4. it achievable to create yellow camellias, though creating a new kind of golden camellia was not very easy.

Unfortunately, in the past, golden camellias were cut down in large numbers because 5. locals (local) needed the limited land space for farming. In

1986, a nature reserve (自然保护区) **6. was built** (build) in a mountain valley from 200 to 500 metres above sea level, so the camellias could be well protected. Years ago, Huang Zainian and his brothers took up the work. In the past 10 years, the Huang brothers have made a great **7. contribution** (contribute) towards protecting the camellias. Even in hard times they didn't cut down any golden camellias.

Year after year, the Huang brothers spent much time working **8. and** eventually made their hard work pay off. Now the golden camellia is **9. the** city flower of the city. And life for the Huang brothers is greatly improved by **10. planting** (plant) golden camellias.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假如你随一个中学生代表团前往英国,在这期间你们参观了英国伦敦郊区的一个名叫 Camden Town 的小镇,请你把参观过程写成一篇日记。内容包括:

1. 到达小镇的时间;
2. 你对小镇的印象;
3. 小镇的建筑物;
4. 你们第二天的计划。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

April 14th, Thursday

Fine

We had a wonderful time today. Camden Town left a deep impression on me.

It was eight o'clock when we arrived. The town was quite different from what I had seen in other places before. After a short break, we paid a visit to the town. The architecture is astonishing. There are both high buildings and old-style houses. Strangely enough, they match each other so well that I even feel they make a beautiful picture.

Tomorrow we are to visit a local middle school, where we'll have a party with the students. I think it will be another pleasant day for all of us.

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

The big Town Hall clock was striking midnight when Frank began to cross the bridge. The dark night air was cold and a little wet, and the street lamp gave little light. Frank was anxious to get home and his footsteps rang loudly on the silent night.

When he reached the middle of the bridge, he thought he could hear someone coming near behind him. He looked back but could see no one.

However, the sound continued and Frank began to walk more quickly. Then he slowed down again, thinking there was nothing to fear in a town as quiet as this.

Just then, he heard short, quick steps closely behind him. By the time he reached the other side of the bridge, he could almost feel someone at his heels. He turned round and there stood a man in a large coat. A hat was pulled down over his eyes and very little of his face could be seen.

Frank said something about the weather in an effort to be friendly. The man did not answer but asked roughly where Oakfield House was. Frank pointed to a big house in the distance and the stranger continued his way.

Then Frank wondered why the stranger had wanted to find Oakfield House at such an hour. He knew that the people who lived there were very rich. Almost without realising what he was doing, he began following the stranger quickly.

The man was soon outside the house and Frank saw him look up at the windows. A light was still on and the man waited until it went out. When about half an hour had passed, Frank saw him climb noiselessly over the wall and heard him drop on the ground at the other side.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Now Frank knew what the man wanted to do. Everyone knew that Oakfield House was filled with artworks worth millions of dollars. It was clear to Frank that the family inside was in danger. Would the man have a weapon? Would he be strong enough to overpower him before he could harm the people inside? Frank's heart was racing with fear. He reached for his cellphone to call the police, but found it out of power. If only he had charged his phone before leaving the office, but it was too late.

Frank couldn't just stand in the dark and wait. He had to do something, even if it meant risking his own life. At his feet he silently found several good-sized stones, and he threw them with all his strength right at the windows of the house. The clatter woke up the people inside the house and a light came on upstairs. The man froze, not quite knowing what had just happened. Lights came on everywhere in the house and within a minute the night was filled with sounds of police sirens screaming towards Oakfield House.

★★★
迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

🏠Part 1 应用文写作——观察日志

○写作指导

1. 确定观察对象。确定观察对象是一个事物、一个场景,还是一个过程。
2. 确定观察顺序。对一个事物或一个场景,可以采用从上到下,从前到后,从外部到内部等空间顺序进行观察。对于一个过程,可以按照先后顺序(时间顺序)和逻辑顺序来观察。
3. 写出事物的特点或过程的特点。
4. 一般采用平实的语言。为了便于表达,可以采用对比、比喻等修辞手法。

○典题示例

下面是记录制作绿豆芽的过程的观察日记,请根据下面的内容用英语完成观察日记。

7月28日 星期六 雨 观察第一天

今天,我拿了十颗绿豆,找了一个空盒子,倒了些水,把这十颗绿豆放进去。然后我把它放在了厨房的窗台上。

7月30日 星期一 晴 观察第三天

今天下午,我看到几颗绿豆发芽了,绿豆芽长到了1厘米。我往盒子里倒了一些水,把它们放在向阳处,希望它们在阳光的照射下快快成长。

8月1日 星期三 晴 观察第五天

下午,我看到所有的绿豆都已经脱壳了,而且又长出了1厘米。我赶紧给它们换上新水。

8月3日 星期五 晴 观察第七天

今天,我给绿豆芽换水时,发现绿豆芽上的那条裂缝越来越大。我拿来尺子,量了量豆芽的长度,又长长了1厘米。

8月5日 星期日 晴 观察第九天

今天,我看豆芽比昨天长了许多。我急忙拿来尺子一量,发现我的绿豆芽又长长了1厘米。我想如果我的豆芽每天都长一点的话,我很快就可以吃到自己种的豆芽了。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	一般现在时
人称	第一人称
要点	1. 种豆芽的准备工作 2. 观察过程

Step 2: 要点补全

- ①I quickly pour some water (倒了些水) into the box and put them in the sunny place.
- ②I hope that they will grow rapidly in the sunshine (在阳光下).
- ③All the mung beans have been shelled and have grown another centimetre (又长了1厘米).
- ④I see it (看见了).
- ⑤I am changing water (换水) for mung bean sprouts.
- ⑥I find that the crack on the mung bean sprouts is getting bigger and bigger (变得越来越大).

Step 3: 句式升级

- ①用现在分词短语作状语连接 Step 2 中的①②句。
I quickly pour some water into the box and put them in the sunny place, hoping that they will grow rapidly in the sunshine.
- ②用宾语从句连接 Step 2 中的③④句。
I see that all the mung beans have been shelled and

have grown another centimetre.

③用 when 引导的时间状语从句连接 Step 2 中的⑤⑥句。

When I am changing water for mung bean sprouts, I find that the crack on the mung bean sprouts is getting bigger and bigger.

Step 4: 连句成篇

Saturday, July 28th Rainy Observation Day 1

Today, I take ten mung beans, find an empty box, pour some water, and put these ten mung beans in. Then I put it on the window sill of the kitchen.

Monday, July 30th Sunny Observation Day 3

This afternoon, I see a few mung beans coming out, and the sprouts grow to 1 cm. I quickly pour some water into the box and put them in the sunny place, hoping that they will grow rapidly in the sunshine.

Wednesday, August 1st Sunny Observation Day 5

In the afternoon, I see that all the mung beans have been shelled and have grown another centimetre. I quickly change the water for it.

Friday, August 3rd Sunny Observation Day 7

Today, when I am changing water for the mung bean sprouts, I find that the crack on the mung bean sprouts is getting bigger and bigger. I take a ruler and measure the length of the mung bean sprouts. It is another centimetre long.

Sunday, August 5th Sunny Observation Day 9

Today, I think the mung bean sprouts are much longer than yesterday. I quickly take a ruler and find that my little mung bean sprouts have grown by 1 cm. I think if my little mung bean sprouts grow a little every day, I can quickly eat my own little mung bean sprouts.

○学以致用

下面的观察日记记录了葱的成长过程,请根据内容用英语写一篇观察日记。

4月12日 星期四 阴有小雨

我拿着葱头到阳台上,找了一个有土的空花盆。我把土松开,再把葱头放进去,然后培土,最后浇水。

4月18日 星期三 晴

我坚持每天给它浇水。我到阳台上去看我的葱,发现它居然长高了一点。

4月26日 星期四 晴

我跑到阳台上去看我的葱。让我开心的是葱长高了,而且变得粗壮了。我真希望我的葱能茁壮成长。

5月2日 星期三 晴

我发现我种的葱长高了许多,连嫩绿色的叶子也转成深绿色的了。

5月7日 星期一 晴

今天,我去看葱,发现它长高了许多,粗了一点,我真希望它能够继续快速长大。

Thursday, April 12th Cloudy with light rain

I take the green onion to the balcony and find an empty flowerpot with soil. I loosen the soil, put the green onion in, then cultivate the soil, and finally water it.

Wednesday, April 18th Sunny

I insist on watering it every day. Today I go to the balcony to see my baby green onion, and find that it actually grows a little higher.

Thursday, April 26th Sunny

I run to the balcony to see my green onion. What makes me happy is that the green onion is growing high and thick. I really hope that my green onion can grow well.

Wednesday, May 2nd Sunny

I find that the green onion I plant grows so much that even the green leaves turn dark green.

Monday, May 7th Sunny

Today, I go to see my green onion and find that it grows a lot higher and a little thicker. I really hope it can continue to grow rapidly.

Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

My story started one autumn morning, at the bend on a path.

I was 13 years old, and I was on the way to school. It was the first time that I had caught sight of a fox. Fascinated to the point that I forgot all fear, I dared to go up to it. I had never come so close to a wild animal. There was nobody else around, only me and the fox.

“Hey, fox!” I tried to greet it, though my voice was so weak that it felt like I was saying hello to myself. It didn’t hear me. It stayed there and I watched it. My heart was beating flat out. It was so cute. For a moment, I thought I might be able to touch it.

Throughout the day at school, I could only think of the fox at the big beech (山毛榉) tree. At my return to the place where we met, I was sure I’d find it there.

And I did. This time I gathered a little bit more courage and called out to it, “Fox!” Of course it escaped. But that only made me long to meet it again. I decided that if I could find its kennel (洞) and catch it, I would try and tame (驯服) it, making it my friend.

Thus, I spent most of my free time in the forests trying to find the fox during the following months. But I never saw it again before winter came. During the winter, I followed its footprints far across the fields. Suddenly I was alarmed by the howling of wolves near me. Frightened, I ran away, stumbled and hurt my ankle. It healed very slowly, so that I had to stay at home during the winter, reading a book about foxes and other forest animals.

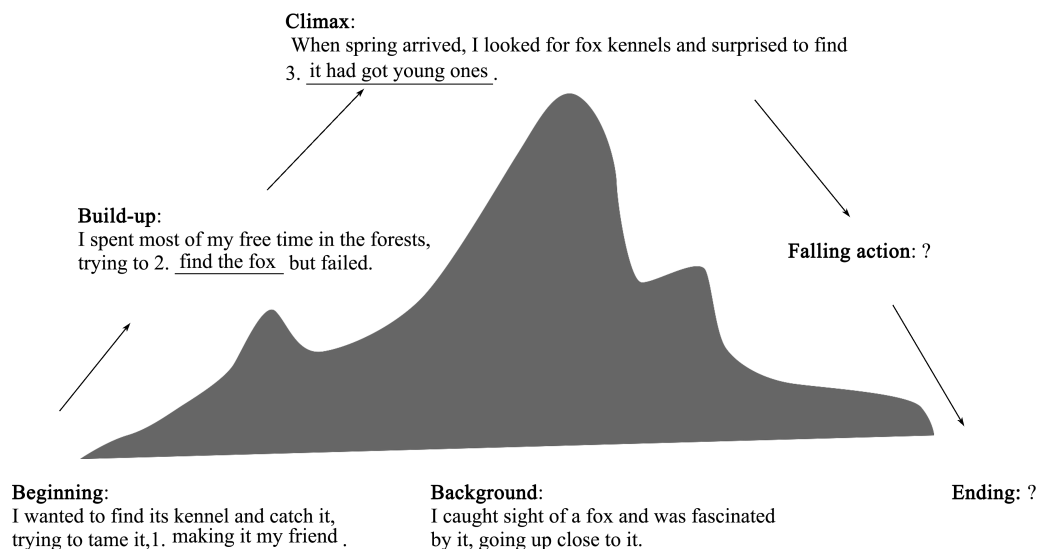
When spring arrived, I was free again. I looked for fox kennels and waited for my fox. To my amazement, it had got young ones but kept moving because of my observations; therefore I decided to observe the fox from a longer distance.

任务一: 阅读文章,回答问题。

What does the text mainly talk about?

The text mainly talks about how to live with animals harmoniously. At the age of 13, I encountered a fox on my way to school and became interested in it. I tried to find its cave and make friends with it but failed. When the next spring came, I continued my search and found that the fox had already had young foxes, but they kept changing places because of my approach. So I decided to observe them from a distance.

任务二: 梳理故事情节,完成故事山。



任务三：回答下面的问题，并根据段落开头提示语，构思、完善故事发展的情节。

Paragraph 1: Finally, it would make me get close. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. What did I think? <u>I felt joyful. Maybe the fox accepted me as part of nature instead of a threat.</u> 2. What did I do next? <u>I tried to offer it a good feeding service and it came over and began to enjoy what I brought. It even allowed me to pat it on the back gently.</u> 3. What did I decide to do at last? <u>I decided to take it back home for better company and caring.</u>
Paragraph 2: To my surprise, the day after I took it home, it fled. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. What did I feel seeing the scene? <u>I began to doubt whether I did something wrong. I recalled what I had done to it. Nothing unhappy to the cute fox! I wondered why the fox fled. I was in a great loss.</u> 2. How did I know why the foxes fled? <u>I would get information from the book and the Internet.</u> 3. What was my understanding of the fox's return to nature? <u>I suddenly realised that it was the call of the wild that attracted the fox back to where it should belong to. I couldn't offer it the natural habitat.</u>

任务四：根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

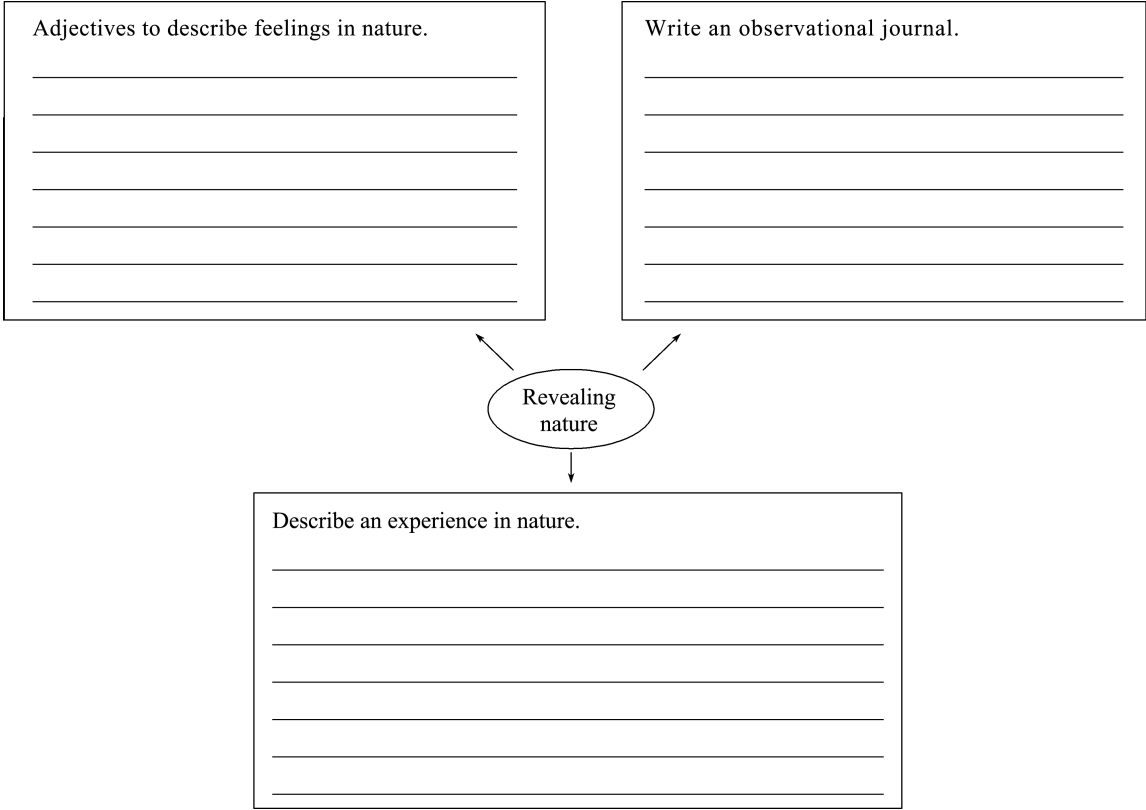
Finally, it would make me get close. One day, as I sat quietly under the shade of a tree, the fox cautiously approached, its bright and soft eyes fixed on me. I held my breath, not wanting to startle the little creature. As it came closer, I could see the trust in its eyes, and I knew that it had got accustomed to my presence and that our bond had deepened. Over time, I was able to bring it food and even stroke its fur and occasionally, it would huddle peacefully against me as we sat on the green grass, like two old friends. And just like what I'd do to an old friend who seemed to need help, I took it home, thinking I could better take care of it and we could better enjoy each other's company.

To my surprise, the day after I took it home, it fled. It jumped out of an open window and in no time vanished into the woods. As I watched it slip away, with a nimbleness and grace that was a joy to behold, darting through the underbrush with a fluidity that spoke of its wild nature, I suddenly realised that perhaps the wild called to it more strongly than I ever could. I should never have tried to keep it as a tame pet, because wild creatures were supposed to be roaming in their own home, rather than being confined in mine. I didn't see it then—not even with the help of that book about foxes, but now, on looking back, I know that my self-acclaimed “love” for it was not love at all, but possession.

★ ★ ★
重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容，完成思维导图。



答案：略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章，完成后面的题目。

Plants can often tell when they're in danger—by smell. But not all leaves sniff (嗅) out threats equally well. In corn plants, baby leaves do this best, new data show.

"They recognise that danger is around the corner," says Lei Wang. He's a plant biologist at the University of Bern in Switzerland. He and his colleagues shared the new findings in *Current Biology*.

Many plants are known to beef up their chemical defenses when they're about to get bitten by "insects". One way plants sense such threats is through smell. They can detect smell molecules (分子) floating through the air. Those molecules may spread from an insect's saliva (唾液). Or they may come from neighbouring plants that have already been attacked and are on death's door.

Originally, Wang and his team set out to identify airborne chemicals that plants receive as warning scents (气味). But when they started their study, they found that the adult corn leaves they tested did not produce many anti-predator chemicals in response to the smells.

So the researchers turned to baby leaves. These are much more fragile than the adult leaves that scientists usually study. In the lab, the team exposed young and adult corn leaves to a common danger—signalling scent. This green-leaf compound is similar to the smell of freshly cut grass. A corn plant might encounter this scent if a nearby plant was in danger. The researchers measured how much danger signal each leaf released in response to the warning smell.

New leaves were more sensitive than adult leaves. Even though the adult leaves were worse at “smelling”, they did release small amounts of defense chemicals. Other research shows that these leaves can process danger signals other than scent (such as insects munching on them). They can respond to these attacks, too, by issuing chemicals aimed at tackling the threat.

Wang hopes his research may lead to the breeding (培育) of smarter crops—ones more resistant to insects. In the long run, that should reduce the need for harmful pesticides.

1. What can be learned from the text?

- A. Plants defend themselves in various ways.
- B. Plants sense danger from insects' saliva.
- C. Freshly cut grass was used in the research.
- D. Adult corn leaves cannot produce defense chemicals.

2. What does Wang hope to achieve with his research?

- A. To reduce the use of poisonous pesticides.
- B. To improve the taste of crops.
- C. To breed more profitable plants.
- D. To create safer pesticides.

3. What is the best title for the text?

- A. Scientists Developing Smarter Crops
- B. New Study Revealing the Secret of Plants
- C. Plants Recognising Danger in Different Ways
- D. Young Corn Leaves Smelling Danger Better

答案: 1~3 BAD

单元评估(五)

I. 阅读理解

A

Are you seeking wildlife volunteer opportunities to support animal conservation efforts? If so, Animal Care and Wildlife Conservation volunteer abroad projects by International Volunteer HQ (IVHQ) are good choices for you. You'll have the unique chance to support the protection of natural habitats, learn about wildlife conservation techniques and study and monitor animal behaviour.

IVHQ has over 13-year experience working with responsible and trusted wildlife conservation organisations, animal sanctuaries (保护区) and animal shelters around the world. This means you can volunteer abroad with confidence, knowing that your volunteer work with animals and other like-minded travellers will be rewarding and life-changing.

● Our wildlife volunteer opportunities, such as wild elephant conservation in Sri Lanka or wolf conservation in Portugal, are popular options for

animal volunteering. Also, you can join one of our animal volunteer projects in South America or Central America. Here you'll be volunteering in animal shelters and dog rescue centres, providing support in feeding, caring for, and playing with domestic animals.

● If you're looking for marine (海洋的) and sea turtle conservation or diving volunteer opportunities, IVHQ offers marine conservation volunteer opportunities across a wide range of destinations including Belize, Costa Rica, Spain and more!

● You don't need to have experience in conservation or animal rescue to make a difference to IVHQ's animal volunteer programmes. With IVHQ, you can volunteer abroad with animals for one week or 24 weeks at any time of the year.

How to get started:

▲ Pick a destination and a project and apply for free.

▲ Meet your personal volunteer travel expert.

▲ Pay the registration fee to secure your place

and upgrade your MyIVHQ account.

▲ Get ready to volunteer abroad and we'll support you every step of the way!

Contact:

info@volunteerhq.org

+64-6-758-7949/International

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了一个志愿者服务机构,这个机构可以给想参与志愿者活动的人提供很多机会。

1. What do we know about IVHQ?

- A. It was founded over two decades ago.
- B. It aims to build a wildlife conservation organisation.
- C. It can provide high-quality volunteer projects.
- D. It has more volunteer projects at home than it does abroad.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段的内容可知,IVHQ 可为人们提供优质的、有意义的志愿者项目。故选 C。

2. Which is a suitable destination for participants wanting to help little pet animals?

- A. Portugal.
- B. South America.
- C. Sri Lanka.
- D. North America.

B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“Also, you can join one of our animal volunteer projects in South America or Central America. Here you'll be volunteering in animal shelters and dog rescue centres, providing support in feeding, caring for, and playing with domestic animals.”可知,如果想帮助一些小宠物,可选择去南美洲。故选 B。

3. What is a requirement for the programme?

- A. Paying a fee for registration.
- B. Having some related experience.
- C. Working for at least 24 weeks.
- D. Applying for a project one week in advance.

A 细节理解题。根据 How to get started 部分中的“▲ Pay the registration fee to secure your place and upgrade your MyIVHQ account.”可知,这个项目的一个是支付注册费用。故选 A。

B

When Johnny, a homeless man, spent his last \$20, he wasn't looking at it as an investment—but it's about to pay him huge profits. After he helped a woman who ran out of gas, she returned the favour by raising a lot more on the Internet.

Kate McClure, 27, was driving to visit a friend when she ran out of gas halfway. “He saw me pull over and knew something was wrong,” she wrote. “He told me to get back in the car and lock the doors. A few minutes later, he came back with a red gas can, using his last 20 dollars to make sure I

could get home safe.”

She couldn't repay him at that time because she had no cash with her. “I have been stopping by his spot for the past few weeks. I repaid him for the gas and gave him some clothes.” Kate decided to do more for him, so she started a crowdfunding (众筹) campaign on a website, and it quickly gained far beyond its initial \$10,000 goal. When it reached \$100,000, the fundraising page was shut down for a time at Johnny's request. Because he didn't want to seem like he was taking advantage of the situation. Finally, Kate said that she restarted it because the public interest had not decreased. She also added that Johnny planned to donate the rest to a good cause.

According to the *New York Post*, Johnny wants to get a job at an Amazon warehouse and a department manager from the tech company has already reached out, saying he wants to help Johnny.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了无家可归的 Johnny 拿自己最后的 20 美元帮助了 Kate, Kate 为感谢他给他筹款的故事。

4. What did Johnny do with his \$20?

- A. He bought Kate some gas.
- B. He bought Kate a can of food.
- C. He bought Kate some clothes.
- D. He rented a car for Kate to visit her friend.

A 细节理解题。根据第二段中的“A few minutes later, he came back with a red gas can, using his last 20 dollars to make sure I could get home safe.”可知,Johnny 用他最后的 20 美元给 Kate 买了汽油。故选 A。

5. Why was the fundraising page closed for a time?

- A. Because people had no more interest in donation.
- B. Because Kate was too busy to make efforts for it.
- C. Because the goal to raise \$10,000 had been achieved.
- D. Because Johnny was unwilling to be considered greedy.

D 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“When it reached \$100,000, the fundraising page was shut down for a time at Johnny's request. Because he didn't want to seem like he was taking advantage of the situation.”可知,应 Johnny 的要求,筹款页面一度关闭,因为他不想让人觉得他是在利用这一形势。由此可以推断出,Johnny 不愿意被认为是贪婪的。故选 D。

6. Which of the following best describes Johnny?

- A. Homeless and hopeless.
- B. Lucky and popular.
- C. Kind and helpful.
- D. Honest and strict.

C 推理判断题。根据第二段中的“A few minutes later, he came back with a red gas can, using his last 20 dollars to make sure I could get home safe.”可知, Johnny 用他最后的 20 美元给 Kate 买了汽油, 让她能够安全到家。再根据第三段中的“She also added that Johnny planned to donate the rest to a good cause.”可知, Johnny 打算把剩下的钱捐给慈善事业。综上可以推断出 Johnny 善良且乐于助人。故选 C。

7. What does the author want to tell us from the text?

- A. Practice makes perfect.
- B. Well begun is half done.
- C. Do good and good will come to you.
- D. Little investments produce huge profits.

C 写作意图题。根据文章大意可以推断出, 作者想要通过此文告诉我们: 善有善报。故选 C。

C

For many of us, our workplace can be dark, depressing and dull. Windowless rooms and airless open-plan floors can kill motivation and cause a loss in worker performance, possibly even their health.

But a refreshing trend is taking root in workplace design: nature. There's growing evidence showing that workplaces which include natural elements, such as plants, light, colours and shapes, have noticeable and measurable benefits for both companies and their employees.

The positive effects touch on everything from worker happiness and creativity to increased productivity, improved profits, and the improved ability to attract the best workers. It's all based on the principle of biophilia (亲生命性)—the innate relationship between humans and the natural world and other living systems. And it's easier to achieve at the office than you think.

“People just don't like using lights in a building with no plants, no views, no natural light,” says Sir Cary Cooper CBE, professor at Lancaster University in the UK. He led a 2015 study on the impact of biophilia in the workplace that surveyed 7,600 workers in 16 countries and found that even small nature-inspired changes can have a great effect.

Responding to the Human Spaces Global Report, those who worked in environments with

natural elements reported a 15% higher level of well-being, a 6% higher level of productivity and a 15% higher level of creativity. One third of them said the design of an office would affect their decisions to work for a company. Even so, 58% said there were no live plants at their workplaces and 47% reported having no natural light.

An earlier, 2014 study by Cardiff University in Wales also showed that plants in the office make people happier and more productive. But more research is needed into biophilia, experts say.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇科普类短文。一项研究表明, 办公室里的自然元素能让人更快乐、更有效率地工作。

8. What's the purpose of the first paragraph?

- A. To compare different ideas.
- B. To express the author's worry.
- C. To introduce the topic of the text.
- D. To describe the conditions of the workplace.

C 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容可知, 本段主要陈述很多人的工作场所的弊端, 包括扼杀员工的工作积极性、影响员工的健康等, 为下文叙述展开了铺垫。由此可推断出, 第一段的目的是引出文章的主题。故选 C。

9. What does the underlined word “well-being” mean in Paragraph 5?

- A. Welfare.
- B. Happiness.
- C. Richness.
- D. Honour.

B 词义猜测题。根据画线词所在句可知, 那些在有自然元素的环境中工作的人的幸福感提高了 15%。故选 B。

10. What can we infer from the text?

- A. Experts will do research in biophilia further.
- B. It's very easy to be successful in a natural workplace.
- C. Over 50% workers are not satisfied with their workplaces.
- D. People will not work for a company without a good environment.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段中的“‘But more research is needed into biophilia, experts say.’”可推断出, 专家们将进一步开展亲生命性的研究。故选 A。

11. What's the main idea of the text?

- A. People like working in the office with lights.
- B. Natural elements can bring health to the people in the office.
- C. Companies should offer a better environment to their employees.

D. Natural elements can make people work happily and efficiently.

D 主旨大意题。根据第二段第二句及全文内容可知,文章主要介绍了一项研究,结果表明办公室里的自然元素能让人更快乐、更有效率地工作。故选D。

D

In the thick forest, a New Caledonian crow carefully removes a branch, pulls off unwanted leaves and makes a tool from the wood. The crow is a perfectionist. When it's satisfied, the bird advances the finished tool into a hole in the tree and fishes out a wriggling grub (蠕动的幼虫).

The New Caledonian crow is one of the only birds known to make tools, a skill once thought to be unique to humans. The remarkable originality that Christian Rutz, a behavioural ecologist at the University of St Andrews in Scotland, observed changed his understanding of what birds can do. He started wondering if there might be other ignored animal abilities. Experiments have shown that different crow groups in the forest have distinct vocalisations (发声). Rutz wanted to know whether these vocalisations could help explain cultural differences in tool-making among the groups.

New technology powered by artificial intelligence (AI) is ready to provide exactly these kinds of insights. Whether animals communicate with one another in terms we might be able to understand is a question of enduring question. "With recent breakthroughs in AI, people realise that we are on the edge of fairly major advances in regard to understanding animals' communicative behaviour," Rutz says.

Beyond creating chat-bots that attract people and producing art that wins fine-arts competitions, machine learning may soon make it possible to crack (破解) things like crow calls, says Aza Raskin, one of the founders of the nonprofit Earth Species Project. Cracking animal vocalisations could aid conservation and welfare efforts. It could also have a shocking impact on us. Raskin compares the coming revolution to the invention of the telescope. "We looked out at the universe and discovered that Earth was not the centre," he says. The power of AI to reshape our understanding of animals, he thinks, will have a similar effect. "These tools are going to change the way that we see ourselves in relation to everything."

【语篇解读】文章主要讲述了人工智能有望帮助我们了解动物之间的交流行为。

12. What does the author intend to do in Paragraph 1?

- A. Show the New Caledonian crow can make tools.
- B. Explain why the New Caledonian crow is a perfectionist.
- C. Tell the New Caledonian crow often makes mistakes.
- D. Describe how the New Caledonian crow lives in the forest.

A 推理判断题。根据第一段的内容和第二段中的“The New Caledonian crow is one of the only birds known to make tools, a skill once thought to be unique to humans.”可知,作者在第一段描写新喀里多尼亚乌鸦制作工具觅食的行为是为了展示它能制作工具。故选A。

13. What does Rutz tend to agree?

- A. It is humans and crows that can make tools.
- B. Humans may fail to notice some animals' abilities.
- C. The New Caledonian crow is the smartest bird.
- D. The New Caledonian crow has various sounds.

B 推理判断题。根据第二段第二、三句可知,Rutz看到新喀里多尼亚乌鸦会制作工具,因此他怀疑动物还有其他被忽视的能力。由此可知,他可能认为人类可能没有注意到一些动物的能力。故选B。

14. What does Raskin suggest doing in the last paragraph?

- A. Chatting with AI.
- B. Looking out into space.
- C. Using AI to crack animal calls.
- D. Connecting with the outside world.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段第一、二句可知,他建议用人工智能破解动物的发声。故选C。

15. What may be the best title for the text?

- A. Earth Is Not the Centre
- B. Start Your Mind and Study Deeply
- C. Protect Animals to Make the World Better
- D. AI Could Help Us Understand Animals

D 标题归纳题。通读全文,尤其是第三段第一句和最后一句可知,本文主要讲述了人工智能有望能帮助人类理解动物的交流行为。由此可知,D项“人工智能可能帮助我们理解动物”最适合作为本文标题。故选D。

D 根据下文的“I'm only doing what he does”可知,这是孩子们的申辩,指责是对方先开始的。故选 D。

23. A. work B. control
C. breath D. curiosity

B 根据上文内容可知,他们处于一个恶性循环中,而且这种循环持续的时间越长,失控的情况就越多。故选 B。

24. A. pay B. help
C. share D. park

A 一天在超市里,正当“我”要付钱的时候,“我”看到一个管状的容器,里面装着小巧别致的巧克力。故选 A。

25. A. hands B. eyes
C. budget D. pocket

C 根据上文的“One day in the supermarket”及下文“but I bought them anyway”可知,巧克力不在作者购物的预算中。故选 C。

26. A. awarded B. offered
C. showed D. gave

C 根据下文可知,在家里,“我”把孩子们召集在一起,给他们看巧克力。故选 C。

27. A. like B. buy
C. need D. make

B 根据上文可知,大儿子问妈妈为什么买巧克力。故选 B。

28. A. masters B. stoppers
C. friends D. designers

B 作者告诉孩子们它们是让争吵停止的东西。故选 B。

29. A. surprised B. upset
C. content D. bored

A 根据上文的“They are argument 28”和之后作者的解释可知,孩子们对妈妈说的话不理解,感到惊讶。故选 A。

30. A. frowned B. whispered
C. admitted D. agreed

D 根据下文的“and I gave them each a piece of chocolate”可知,孩子们表示同意,愿意品尝。故选 D。

31. A. example B. rule
C. news D. result

B 根据下文的“Whoever stops an argument 32 one, even though mother stops it.”可知,

这是作者提出的规则。故选 B。

32. A. gets B. finds
C. uses D. buys

A 无论谁停止了争吵,谁就会得到一块巧克力。故选 A。

33. A. place B. reason
C. way D. meaning

C 在接下来的几天里,“我”用了一种不同的方式来停止争吵。故选 C。

34. A. came down B. made up
C. set out D. broke out

D 每当口角爆发。故选 D。

35. A. selfless B. silent
C. cautious D. mad

B 根据上文的“Who's going to stop this argument?”可知,每个人就都沉默了。故选 B。

IV. 语法填空

The silent killer—air pollution causes seven million premature (过早的) **36. deaths** (death) a year, not just in **37. developing** (develop) countries but also in the UK and the USA as well. In China, people are well aware of the health problems it brings.

I check every part every day. If it has heavy air pollution, I will prepare masks for my family. I dislike **38. it** when the air is bad. Because bad air makes it difficult for me to breathe. I think it does influence my **39. performance** (perform) at work. A new research in China has also found a link between air quality and levels of intelligence. In the study, 25,000 people living across China **40. were tested** (test) in language and maths skills last year. They found the results of those **41. who** lived in more polluted areas were **42. negatively** (negative) impacted, especially in languages. It adds to a growing body of evidence that air pollution has an effect not just on the lungs and heart **43. but** on the brain.

This research shows that the longer we are exposed to air pollution, the **44. more** (many) problems we're storing up for later life. Campaigners hope this study will persuade the British government **45. to think** (think) hard before it publishes its clean air strategy next year.

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,作为学校的一位学生代表参加“国际中学生交流营”活动。请用英文写一篇演讲稿,呼吁人们共同应对自然灾害,保护地球家园。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

Dear friends,

I am very honoured to be here to give you a speech.

As we all know, with global warming becoming more and more serious, various natural disasters are occurring frequently, which cause thousands of people to lose their lives and leave more people homeless. What's worse, many people haven't realised that it is human activities that contribute to the disasters. What really shocks me is that people don't stop doing damage to the earth.

Only when people take effective measures can some natural disasters be prevented. Let's work together and make our earth a better place to live in.

Thank you!

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

"I'm going to school today!" announced my little brother, Trevor, bouncing to the breakfast table.

Mum looked at me. "Isn't it great, Annie? You'll both be at the same school! And I can't help remembering your first day of school when I had to calm you down by blowing kisses."

Actually, it was not great at all. School used to feel like my thing. But now he would sit in my old classroom, with my old teacher. Enough! I hated to see the naughty Trevor as part of my school life.

As we arrived at the school gate, Trevor turned to me, looking worried and hesitant, and asked whether he could play with me during the break. I shook my head and reminded him of the school rules: You small kids play in the kindergarten area. I stay on the big playground!

I pulled Trevor forward and led him to his classroom, where he was greeted by his teacher,

Mrs Morena, "Hello, Trevor! Want to come and meet the other kids?"

Trevor nodded and let go of my hand. I disappeared in a flash, excited to join my friends. When the bell rang, I was given a seat by an open window where I could see the kindergarten room if I looked out. I faced forward, trying to focus on what the teacher was saying. For no reason, a question continuously crossed my mind: How was Trevor?

During the break, I forgot all about Trevor. It was great to be back at school! I was running to the slide when a loud cry rang out across the playground. It sounded familiar.

I looked to the kindergarten area. Trevor was sitting in the sandbox, tears on his face.

"I want to go home!" he howled. Mrs Morena was talking to him, but he was still crying.

I took another step towards the slide. Then Trevor cried again. My feet turned, and I was running towards him. But there was a fence between the kindergarten area and the big playground, and I couldn't go where he was.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Then, I did the best thing I could think of. I stood on the very edge of my playground and called, "Trevor!" He looked up and ran to the fence. I blew him a kiss. He stopped crying. I blew another one, and he began to smile. "What are you doing?" Lisa asked. "When my mum used to drop Trevor off at daycare, she'd calm him down by blowing kisses like this," I explained. "Can I try?" she asked. "Yes," I said, and she blew Trevor a kiss. Soon Emma and Grace were blowing kisses, too. Trevor just smiled.

Soon the bell rang and the school was over. Mrs Morena came to get him, and he pulled a long face again. I had an idea. "Trevor! I'll be in that window over there." I pointed. "I'll blow kisses through your window, OK?" As Mrs Morena led him inside, she lowered herself so Trevor could whisper in her ear. I ran to my classroom and looked out to see her opening the kindergarten window. I blew a kiss. Trevor was inside his classroom. He blew a kiss back and smiled.

单元概览

学习导航

The theme of this unit is humans and nature, whose topic is focusing on the protection of the natural environment and natural heritage sites. This unit introduces the Chinese and foreign famous natural heritage sites, including Huanglong, Iguazu Falls, Mount Kilimanjaro and Australia's Ulura, to make students feel the beauty and magic of nature, experience the charm of natural heritage sites, inspire their desire to protect natural heritage sites, and convey the concept of harmonious coexistence between man and nature.

学习目标

核心素养	具体要求		
语言能力	语言知识	词汇	能围绕本单元的主题语境内容,基于单元提供的游记、广告等多模态语篇,综合运用各种语言技能,了解本单元有关生态环保话题的词汇及表达。
		语法	能厘清现在完成进行时的概念及用法,并在具体语境中应用。
		语篇	能读懂与保护自然遗产相关的文章内容。
		语用	能运用本单元所学知识,通过辩论、分析并联系生活实际,辩证地看待问题,分析利弊,做出正确的评判。
	语言技能	听	能听懂与生态旅游相关的话题并谈论环境保护问题。
		说	能恰当使用所学词汇与表达说服他人,并学会表示折中、妥协的表达方式,深化对单元主题意义的理解。
		读	能运用阅读策略,从文本中提取信息并解读文本。
		写	能分析招聘广告的基本要素,并根据所给文段内容,仿写招聘广告。

续表

核心素养	具体要求
学习能力	通过运用各种学习策略,多渠道开展调研,有效进行自主学习;利用网络资源,筛选、整合信息,编辑自然遗产保护宣传册;并能结合单元所提供的反思性和评价性问题不断监控、评价、反思和调整自己的学习内容和进程,提高自己的理解和表达能力,最终促进自身语言能力、文化意识、思维品质和学习能力的综合提升。
文化意识	通过了解世界各地的自然遗产,增强爱护环境、保护自然遗产的意识。
思维品质	能找到合理的解决方法,创造性地表达自己的观点,实现知识与思维能力的拓展与迁移。

◦ 必备知识

必背 单词	steadily, massive, delicate, landmark, splendid, leisure, radiation, mirror-like, wander, scenery, economy, jungle, disturb, emission, operator, conservationist, candidate, applicant, favour, advertise, genuine, salary, negotiable, preference, qualification, waist
重点 表达	reach out, put... into operation, catch one's eye, at one's leisure, bring... to life, all over the country, be about to do, a sense of, fly by, among the top concern, highlight the importance of, be made up of, under threat from, in favour of, become aware of, be home to, call for, give preference to, in addition to, be advertised as
重点 知识	1. “疑问词+不定式”结构 2. “should have done”结构
单元 语法	现在完成进行时
单元 写作	招聘广告

探 · 究 · 构 · 建

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas— Comprehending

学习任务目标

1. Discuss the content of the pictures, summarise their common features, and activate the existing language and background knowledge.
2. Watch the video of World Heritage Sites, understand the relevant knowledge and the general idea of the video, and extract key information from the video.
3. Think about how to protect natural heritage sites while developing economy.
4. Master the key words through skimming, get the main information of the text, understand the special meaning of “Sky Railway” to the author, and grasp the author’s writing intention.

○ 自主式预习 ○

写出下列词汇的汉语意思

(一) 核心词汇

1. wander *v.* 徘徊
2. steadily *adv.* 平稳地
3. leisure *n.* 空闲, 闲暇
4. scenery *n.* 风景, 景色
5. splendid *adj.* 壮丽的
6. massive *adj.* 巨大的
7. delicate *adj.* 脆弱的
8. at one’s leisure 在某人空闲时
9. put... into operation 使开动; 使运转; 使……实施; 使……生效
10. pass by 经过
11. work on 致力于; 忙于
12. bring... to life 使更有趣; 使更生动

13. reach out 伸出; 伸手拿……

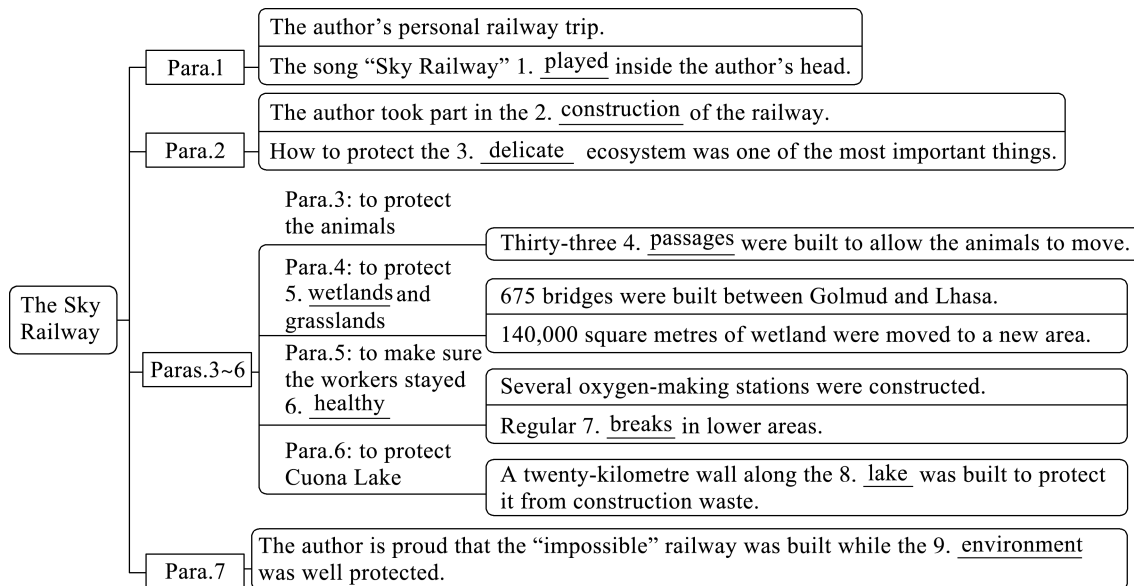
(二) 阅读词汇

1. landmark *n.* 地标
2. antelope *n.* 羚羊
3. plateau *n.* 高原
4. radiation *n.* 辐射
5. mirror-like *adj.* 如镜面般的
6. wetland *n.* 湿地
7. permafrost *n.* 永久冻土层
8. grassland *n.* 草原
9. catch one’s eye 引起某人的注意, 吸引某人的视线
10. overcome the challenges 攻克难题
11. among the top concerns 高度重视的事情之一
12. thanks to 多亏; 由于

任务型课堂

文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

- According to the third paragraph, what are the texts used for?
 - To make the bridge strong.
 - To let the wildlife eat grass.
 - To protect the safety of the wildlife.
 - To make sure the train passes quickly.
- What can we know from the fifth paragraph?
 - It takes much time to travel to the highest station.
 - The conditions at the station are very tough.
 - Workers often have a rest in higher areas.
 - Measures are taken to ensure workers' health.
- How did the author feel about the Qinghai-Xizang Railway?
 - Proud.
 - Curious.
 - Regretful.
 - Annoyed.
- Why is the Qinghai-Xizang Railway called the Sky Railway?
 - Because of its location.
 - Because of so many challenges.
 - Because of the magical landscapes.
 - Because of people's admiration.

答案: 1~4 CDAB

语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

- Sitting back in my seat, I can't quite believe that

I'm about to travel along the railway that many foreign experts claimed was "impossible".

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。Sitting back in my seat 是现在分词短语作时间状语;第一个 that 引导的是宾语从句;第二个 that 相当于 which, 还可以省去, 引导定语从句, 修饰先行词 the railway。

[尝试翻译]靠坐在火车的座位上,我仍然不敢相信,我将要沿着许多外国专家声称“不可能建成”的铁路开始一段旅程。

- To prevent damage to wetlands and grasslands, 675 bridges with a total length of about 160 kilometres were built between Golmud and Lhasa.

[句子分析]本句是一个简单句。To prevent damage to wetlands and grasslands 是不定式短语作目的状语; with a total length of about 160 kilometres 是 with 引导的介词短语作后置定语, 修饰前面的主语 675 bridges。

[尝试翻译]为了避免破坏湿地和草原,我们在格尔木和拉萨之间建造了 675 座大桥,总长度约 160 千米。

- Using thousands and thousands of sandbags, we built a twenty-kilometre wall along the lake to protect it from construction waste.

[句子分析]本句是一个简单句。本句是主干为“主谓宾状”结构的句子, Using thousands and thousands of sandbags 是现在分词短语作方式状语; we built a twenty-kilometre wall 是主谓宾部分; along the lake 是介词短语作地点状语; to

protect it from construction waste 是不定式短语作目的状语。

[尝试翻译] 沿着湖边,我们用成千上万个沙袋筑起了一道二十千米的保护墙,以保护它免受建筑废料的污染。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十一)

Section I Starting out & Understanding ideas—Comprehending

I. 阅读理解

Most gardeners spend the winter eagerly waiting for the return of warm weather when they can get back outside, digging in the dirt and growing things. Brighten the holidays for the gardeners in your life (yourself included!) by giving them the perfect garden gift.

Best Gardening Gift for Houseplants: Brass Watering Can (\$ 42)

Make watering houseplants easier with this watering can that looks like an antique (古董) from Grandma's house. It holds a litre of water and is small enough to reach beneath the leaves and put water directly on the soil, avoiding waste of water.

Best Outdoor Gardening Gift: Fiskars Pruning Shears (\$ 13)

Pruners (修剪工具) are important garden tools. Just as cooks need a range of knives for cutting different foods, gardeners need various pruning shears for cutting different sizes of branches and stems. It's perfect for harvesting tomatoes, cutting flowers, or deadheading faded blooms.

Best Eco-Friendly Gardening Gift: Behrens Compost Can (\$ 30)

When you have a compost (堆肥) pile outside, it's super handy to have a convenient container to keep food wastes inside. This steel compost can provides a stylish place to temporarily store those potato peels and eggshells. Best of all, it comes with a special design that will trap bad smell.

Best Organising Gardening Gift: Canvas Garden Utility Bag (\$ 30)

Give the gift of organisation with this canvas bag that keeps a gardener's hand tools in one convenient place. The bag has lots of pockets, so your gardener friend has room for all their garden tools. They can carry it out to the garden and have their tools close at hand.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要向读者介绍了几款适合给园丁们的礼物。

1. What did the author do?

A railway worker.

2. Use your own words to describe the Qinghai-Xizang Railway.

It's a miracle and a great achievement by Chinese people.

1. Why is the Brass Watering Can a good gift for gardeners?

A. It looks very attractive.

B. It prevents leaves from dying.

C. It enables gardeners to use water efficiently.

D. It holds enough water for all garden plants.

C 细节理解题。根据第二段第二句可知, Brass Watering Can 可以避免浪费水, 能更有效地利用水。故选 C。

2. Why does the writer mention cooks and knives in the third paragraph?

A. To stress the importance of pruning shears.

B. To explain the use of pruners in helping cooks.

C. To show the advantages of pruning shears over knives.

D. To tell readers to choose pruning shears of the suitable size.

A 推理判断题。根据第三段中的“Pruners (修剪工具) are important garden tools. Just as cooks need a range of knives for cutting different foods, gardeners need various pruning shears for cutting different sizes of branches and stems.”可知, 作者举例厨师和刀是说明修剪机对园丁来说也很重要。故选 A。

3. Which is the best gift for a gardener who wants to keep his tools in an orderly way?

A. Brass Watering Can.

B. Fiskars Pruning Shears.

C. Behrens Compost Can.

D. Canvas Garden Utility Bag.

D 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的“The bag has lots of pockets, so your gardener friend has room for all their garden tools. They can carry it out to the garden and have their tools close at hand.”可知, Canvas Garden Utility Bag 有很多口袋让你有序地放你的园艺工具。故选 D。

II. 七选五

People may appreciate the mighty sea and those

deep, dark lakes when it comes to waters. 1 However, ponds are an important body of water as they fight climate change, improve biodiversity, and help conservation, according to the Revelator Organisation. So if you are thinking about creating a beautiful and enriching element to your garden this spring, consider a pond.

2 In Switzerland, less than ten percent of the ponds from the last 200 years remain. And in the UK, less than a quarter of the ponds that existed at the start of the 20th century are still around.

Nowadays, a European organisation called PONDERFUL is trying to give ponds power by increasing awareness of their importance. They are the unsung heroes of the natural world and are in the front line of climate action, supporting wildlife and capturing harmful emissions.

Adding even a tiny pond in your garden can achieve natural wonders and will actually better all other ecosystems, according to Pond Informer, an online guide about ponds. 3 For example, ponds

are a shelter for frogs that eat insects and keep the ecosystem balanced.

They also offer a space for birds to bathe, cool off and drink. 4 They help with pollination, spread seeds, and control insects. Swallows can eat hundreds of thousands of insects each night, bugs that may just munch on your garden during the day!

With help now on the way, Switzerland has made hundreds of new ponds thus increasing the population of birds and frogs, including the endangered European tree frog. 5

- A. Ponds are simply disappearing.
B. Tiny ponds are usually ignored.
C. In turn, these birds can benefit your garden.
D. Your pond can play a part in your community.
E. People can have a great time by creating the ponds.
F. A pond becomes home to many plants and animals.
G. Small, shallow ponds are being restored on former golf courses in the UK.

答案:1~5 BAFCG

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas— Language points

学习任务目标

1. Master the key words through skimming, get the main information of the text, understand the special meaning of “Sky Railway” to the author, and grasp the author’s writing intention.
2. Understand main details in the text through intensive reading and feel the greatness of the builders.
3. Perceive the language features of the text through reading, learn and master the topical vocabulary and phrases in the text, and use the vocabulary to introduce the Qinghai-Xizang Railway.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. There are efforts under way to designate the bridge a historic **landmark**. 地标
2. An **antelope** is an animal like a deer, with long legs and horns, which lives in Africa or Asia. 羚羊
3. There is good **grassland** here for your cattle and horses to graze on. 草原
4. **Wandering** in the street, I caught sight of a tailor’s shop. 徘徊
5. A **plateau** is a large area of high and fairly flat land. 高原

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>steadily</u> <i>adv.</i> 平稳地	<u>steady</u> <i>adj.</i> 平稳的

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>leisure</u> <i>n.</i> 空闲, 闲暇	<u>leisured</u> <i>adj.</i> 有空闲的; 悠闲自在的
	<u>leisurely</u> <i>adj.</i> 慢悠悠的; 不慌不忙的 <i>adv.</i> 悠闲地; 从容不迫地
<u>splendid</u> <i>adj.</i> 壮丽的	<u>splendidly</u> <i>adv.</i> 壮丽地
<u>radiation</u> <i>n.</i> 辐射	<u>radiate</u> <i>v.</i> 辐射; 发射
<u>massive</u> <i>adj.</i> 巨大的	<u>massively</u> <i>adv.</i> 大量地; 大规模地
	<u>massiveness</u> <i>n.</i> 巨大; 大量

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>delicate</u> <i>adj.</i> 脆弱的	<u>delicately</u> <i>adv.</i> 脆弱地
<u>scenery</u> <i>n.</i> 风景, 景色	<u>scene</u> <i>n.</i> 情景; 场景

III. 补全短语

1. put into operation 投入运行; 使实施
2. among the top concerns 高度重视的事情之一
3. catch one's eye 引起某人的注意, 吸引某人的视线
4. at one's leisure 在某人空闲时
5. bring... to life 使更有趣; 使更生动
6. reach out 伸出; 伸手拿……
7. thanks to 多亏; 由于

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式: 不定式作后置定语
The first landmark to catch my eye is the splendid Qingshuihe Bridge, the world's longest bridge built over permafrost.
第一个吸引我眼球的地标是壮观的清水河大桥, 它是世界上最长的高原冻土铁路桥。
2. 句型公式: with 复合结构
A group of Tibetan antelopes is moving under the

bridge, with some stopping to eat grass at their leisure. 一群藏羚羊正从桥下走过, 有的则停下来悠闲地吃草。

3. 句型公式: before 引导时间状语从句
The journey has been flying by, and before I know it, we have reached Tanggula Station.
旅途一瞬即逝, 不知不觉, 我们就到了唐古拉站。
4. 句型公式: 形容词作状语
Located at over 5,000 metres above sea level, this is the highest railway station in the world.
它位于海拔 5 000 多米的地方, 是世界上海拔最高的火车站。
5. 句型公式: as 引导时间状语从句
As we pass Cuona Lake, I feel a sense of pride and achievement.
当经过措那湖时, 一股自豪感和成就感在我心中油然而生。
6. 句型公式: “疑问词+不定式”结构
How to protect the delicate ecosystem was among the top concerns.
如何保护脆弱的生态系统是需要我们高度重视的问题之一。

○ 任务型课堂 ○

1. put... into operation 投入运行; 使实施

[教材原文] In which year was the completed Qinghai-Xizang Railway **put into operation**?
青藏铁路是哪一年建成通车的?

[归纳拓展]

(1) operation *n.* 行动; 手术

be in operation 在运转; 在工作中; 在使用中
come into operation 开始工作; 开始生效

(2) operate *v.* 操作; 起作用; 动手术

operate on 给……动手术

(3) operator *n.* 电话员; 操作员; 经营者

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Until the rail links are in operation, passengers can only travel through the tunnel by coach.

② In the good care of the nurses, the boy is gradually recovering from his heart operation (operate).

③ He dialed the operator (operate) and put in a call for Rome.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之申请信) 他们正在努力工作, 以尽快将新计划付诸实施。

They are working hard to put the new plan into operation as soon as possible.

② (应用文写作之环境保护) 为了阻止环境继续受到污染, 一项新政策将于下个月开始实施。

To keep the environment from being continually polluted, a new policy will come into operation next month.

2. overcome *v.* 克服

[教材原文] Taking years to complete, the Qinghai-Xizang Railway is a record of all of our efforts to **overcome** the most difficult engineering challenges.

青藏铁路用了多年的时间才建成, 它记录了我们为克服最困难的工程挑战所做的一切努力。

[归纳拓展]

overcome fear/difficulties 克服恐惧/困难

overcome one's shyness/shortcomings 克服羞怯/缺点

overcome the enemy/one's opponent 战胜敌人/对手

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

My parents always tell me that any difficulty can be overcome (overcome) with determination.

(2) 写作微练

(读后续写之心理描写) 她设法克服了恐高症, 爬上了山顶。

She managed to overcome her fear of heights and climbed to the top of the mountain.

3. catch one's eye 引起某人的注意,吸引某人的视线

[教材原文] The first landmark to **catch my eye** is the splendid Qingshuihe Bridge, the world's longest bridge built over permafrost.

第一个吸引我眼球的地标是壮观的清水河大桥,它是世界上最长的高原冻土铁路桥。

[归纳拓展]

eye 构成的其他短语:

fix one's eyes on 注视;盯着看

keep an eye on 照看;留意

keep an eye out for 密切注意;提防

have an eye for... 对……有鉴赏力

look sb. in the eye(s) 直视某人,正视某人

in one's eyes 在某人的眼里,依某人看

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① I was cleaning out an old box when an old card caught my eye (eye).

② He sat there, fixing his eyes on the famous picture.

③ Have you forgotten something? I can keep an eye on your kids if you want to go and get it.

④ As is known to all, in her teacher's eyes (eye), Linda has an eye for art.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之通知) 申请者应该注意提交申请的最后期限。

Applicants should keep an eye on the deadline for submitting your applications.

4. leisure n. 空闲, 闲暇

[教材原文] A group of Tibetan antelopes is moving under the bridge, with some stopping to eat grass at their **leisure**.

一群藏羚羊正从桥下走过,有的则停下来悠闲地吃草。

[归纳拓展]

(1) at leisure 有空;清闲;不慌不忙

at one's leisure 在某人空闲时

have no leisure to do... 没有空做……

(2) leisured *adj.* 有空闲的;悠闲自在的

(3) leisurely *adj.* 慢悠悠的,不慌不忙的 *adv.* 悠闲地;从容不迫地

名师点拨 ■■■■

leisure 可用于名词前作定语,其意为“空闲的”,如 leisure time,意为“空闲时间”。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① I'm now at leisure to visit my friends.

② The boy sat there, playing with his toy leisurely (leisure).

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之社会现象描述) 如今,随着生活节奏加快,人们的闲暇时间越来越少了。

Nowadays, as the pace of life accelerates, people have less and less leisure time.

② (应用文写作之推荐信) 你可以在这里悠闲地坐一下午,不用说一句话。

You can spend a whole afternoon sitting here at leisure/leisurely, without saying a word.

5. bring... to life 使更有趣;使更生动

[教材原文] Water birds playing in the lake, and cattle and sheep wandering the grasslands **bring the scenery to life**.

湖中水鸟嬉戏,草原上牛羊漫步,使景色充满生机。

[归纳拓展]

come to life 变得更有趣;变得活跃

lead/live a... life 过着……的生活

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① The match finally came to life in the second half.

② What amazed us was that the distinguished artist brought the statue to life.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之推荐信) 作者生动的描述使这一历史事件栩栩如生,让读者仿佛身临其境。

The author's vivid descriptions brought the historical event to life, allowing readers to experience it as if they were present.

② (应用文写作之传统节日) 在中秋节,街道上张灯结彩,人们欢声笑语,整个老城充满活力。

On the Mid-Autumn Festival, the streets are decorated with lights and people are filled with happy laughter, the whole old city coming to life.

③ (读后续写之情节描写) 经过多年的努力工作,她终于过上了平静的生活。

After years of hard work, she finally lived a peaceful life.

6. “疑问词+不定式”结构

[教材原文] **How to protect the delicate ecosystem** was among the top concerns.

如何保护脆弱的生态系统是需要我们高度重视的问题之一。

[句式分析] 句中 How to protect the delicate ecosystem 为“疑问词+不定式”结构,在句中作主语。

[归纳拓展]

“疑问词+不定式”结构可在句中作主语、宾语、表

语、宾语补足语等句子成分。作主语时,谓语动词常用单数形式。

(1)在“疑问词+不定式”结构中,不定式必须用主动式而不能用被动式。

(2)“疑问词+不定式”结构可转换为从句。

(3)why 或 why not 后加不定式时,不定式省略符号 to。

(4)whether 后可接不定式,而 if 不可。

[即学即练]

(1)单句语法填空

①What to do is (be) not decided yet.

②The problem is how to put (put) the plan into practice.

③We discussed what to do and where we should go.

(2)写作微练

①(应用文写作之汇报信)他们正在讨论如何应对这个困难的局面。

They are discussing how to deal with this difficult situation.

②(应用文写作之咨询信)我们一直想知道遇到麻烦时去哪里寻求帮助。

We've always wondered where to go for help when we're in trouble.

多义词汇 专练

1. **delicate**: A. *adj.* 纤细的 B. *adj.* 脆弱的

C. *adj.* 熟练的 D. *adj.* 精致的

①The eye is one of the most **delicate** organs of the body. B

②I admire your **delicate** handling of the situation. C

③The food is served on a **delicate** plate with a beautiful pattern of flowers. D

④His mother held the baby's **delicate** hands gently. A

2. The road **wanders** along through the hills. C

A. *v.* 闲逛;徘徊

B. *v.* 走神

C. *v.* 蜿蜒

Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十二)

Section II Starting out & Understanding ideas—Language points

I. 单句语法填空

- Who was the last to finish (finish) the marathon that day?
- This is a new ship and has been put into operation recently.
- Do you ever stop to think that maybe she deserved punishing/to be punished (punish)?
- After wandering around, we found ourselves back at the hotel.
- She reached out for me with trembling hands.
- Her mother at length agreed to this arrangement.
- Our library contains books and magazines for everyone to read at their leisure.
- Will you please keep your eyes on my house while I'm on vacation?
- She claimed to be (be) the greatest living fan of Picasso.
- Do you want to find unexpected love and admiration (admire)?

II. 短语填空

bring... to life; such as; put... into operation; find out; at one's leisure; work on; make sure; catch one's eye

- For some reason, the word caught my eye, and I spent some time looking up its meaning.

- She made sure that the child took the medicine on time.
- I suggest you take the magazines away and read them at your leisure.
- A trial (试验) run is needed before the machine is put into operation.
- Every art and craft requires different techniques to bring the materials to life.
- In this paragraph there are many nouns, such as boy, girl, and book.
- Students can gain valuable experience by working on the campus radio or magazine.
- What have researchers found out about people's earnings?

III. 完成句子

- He rushed out of the room before I could say a word.
我还没来得及说一句话他就冲出了房间。
- The problem is where to find the financial aid.
问题是要到什么地方寻求经济援助。
- Satisfied with what he did, the teacher praised him in class.
老师对他所做的事情很满意,因此在班上表扬了他。
- As the time went on, the weather got worse.
随着时间的推移,天气更加糟糕了。

IV. 完形填空

My father was born in a small town in the US. He wasn't sure what he wanted from 1, but something told him to 2 and begin a new adventure.

He began that adventure travelling to cities in the US before going on to Australia, New Zealand and the Philippines. He took my mother and us three daughters with him and went wherever the road 3 him.

It's easy to feel 4 when you're on the road. We made lots of new friends on our trip—most of them are mechanics, since we often spent hours in repair shops. But that was a way much 5 than sitting by the roadside while waiting for the engine to 6 when it was 40°C outside.

Getting along well sometimes seemed 7. There were always a lot of arguments, especially among us back seat passengers about who had to 8 in the middle. But even if it was hard, we learned a lot about 9. When we were travelling in the Philippines, we drove to Quezon City one day. It should have been an hour's drive but was nearly three thanks to bad roads and heavy traffic. "Did you put our suitcases in the car?" my father asked my mother as we arrived there. From the back seat, we saw her 10 turn towards my father. "No," she said. "I thought you did." That was how a seven-hour car trip turned into a 16-hour one, which was mostly spent in 11.

On occasions like that, we had to learn to let go of our anger because we were 12 in a rolling box with the same people for the rest of the journey. Even if I sometimes felt like opening the car door and 13 one of my sisters out, I kept my feelings to myself.

This is why road trips were like 14 universities to us. We earned our PhDs in how to get along with other people just by travelling in our old car.

If we were 15 given a second chance at life, we would do it all over again. Only this time would I put the suitcases in the car myself.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇夹叙夹议文。文章讲述了小时候“我”随父亲和母亲以及“我”的姐妹开车旅行的经历。在此过程中，“我们”学会了忍让以及和别人相处。这个颠簸的旅程是一所移动的大学，让“我”受益匪浅。

1. A. move B. life
C. experience D. belief

B 根据上文内容可知，“我”的父亲出生在美国的一个小镇上；结合该句中的“He wasn't sure what he wanted”以及下文叙述他带着全家开车旅行可

推知，那时他不确定想从生活中要些什么。故选 B。

2. A. live up B. struggle on
C. get out D. walk around

C 根据该句中的“begin a new adventure”可推知，他得到启示：他要走出去，去开启新的冒险经历。get out 意为“离开，从……出来”。故选 C。

3. A. took B. drove
C. served D. controlled

A 根据该句中的“wherever the road”并结合语境可知，他带着(took)妈妈和“我们”这三个女儿，沿路旅行。故选 A。

4. A. anxious B. upset
C. helpless D. lonely

D 根据该句中的“when you're on the road”和下文介绍的沿路交朋友可推知，在路上时，很容易感到孤独(lonely)。故选 D。

5. A. better B. easier
C. safer D. cleverer

A 由于外面的温度达到 40 摄氏度，所以去修理店要比坐在马路边等候好得多。故选 A。

6. A. break down B. cool off
C. clear up D. turn over

B 根据该句中的“when it was 40°C outside”可知，外面气温高达 40 摄氏度。据此可推知，该处指等待发动机冷却下来。故选 B。

7. A. available B. alternative
C. necessary D. impossible

D 根据下文的“it was hard”并结合语境可知，友好相处有时似乎是不可能的(impossible)。故选 D。

8. A. settle B. rest
C. sit D. watch

C 根据上下文内容可知，三姐妹关于谁坐在中间有很多争吵。故选 C。

9. A. sharing B. respect
C. communication D. tolerance

D 根据该句中的“But”可知，尽管这很难解决，但是“我们”学会了忍耐(tolerance)。故选 D。

10. A. suddenly B. sensitively
C. calmly D. slowly

D 根据语境可知，“我们”在后座看到母亲慢慢地转过头对父亲说：“没有，我还以为你放了”。故选 D。

11. A. silence B. vain
C. panic D. disappointment

A 根据上文内容可知，母亲忘记将手提箱放进车里；结合该句和下文中的“we had to learn to let go of our anger”可知，“我们”学会了控制自己的怒气。七小时的行程最终变成了十六小时的行程，“我们”的大部分时间都在沉默。故选 A。

12. A. buried B. crazy
C. stuck D. impatient

C 根据语境可知,在像上文提到的情况下,“我们”必须控制自己的怒气,因为“我们”被困在同一辆车里。be stuck in 为固定搭配,意为“被困在……”。故选 C。

13. A. dragging B. pushing
C. helping D. sending
B 根据下文中的“I kept my feelings to myself”可知,“我”控制住了自己的情绪。据此可推知,此处表示有时“我”想要打开车门将“我”的一个姐妹推(push)出车外。故选 B。

14. A. unusual B. common
C. free D. mobile
D 根据该句中的“road trips”以及下文中的“We earned our PhDs”可知,对于“我们”来说,公路旅行就如可移动的(mobile)大学。故选 D。
15. A. somewhere B. anytime
C. somehow D. anyway
C 根据语境可知,如果“我们”能以某种方式(somehow)在人生中获得第二次机会的话,“我们”还是会去旅行。故选 C。

Section III Using language

学习任务目标

1. Master the structure and usages of the present perfect continuous tense.
2. Figure out the differences between the present perfect tense and the present perfect continuous tense.
3. Learn to use the present perfect continuous tense to talk about the changes in our daily life.

○ 自主式预习 ○

- I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思
1. A **jungle** is a forest in a tropical country where large numbers of tall trees and plants grow very close together. 丛林
2. What I mean is that it sends fewer **emissions** into the atmosphere when burned. 排放物
3. I heard a lion **roar**. 吼叫
4. The last thing you'd want is a constant **reminder** of a bad experience. 提醒人的事物
5. Something that is **appropriate** is suitable or acceptable for a particular situation. 合适的;适合的

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>economy</u> <i>n.</i> 经济	<u>economic</u> <i>adj.</i> 经济的; 经济学的
	<u>economical</u> <i>adj.</i> 经济的; 节约的; 合算的
<u>disturb</u> <i>v.</i> 干扰, 扰乱	<u>disturbing</u> <i>adj.</i> 引起烦恼的; 令人不安的
	<u>disturbed</u> <i>adj.</i> 心神不安的; 烦恼的
<u>operator</u> <i>n.</i> 经营者	<u>operate</u> <i>v.</i> 操作; 运转; 做手术
	<u>operation</u> <i>n.</i> 运转; 手术

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>conservationist</u> <i>n.</i> (动植物或古旧建筑的) 保护工作者; 环境保护主义者	<u>conservation</u> <i>n.</i> 保存; 保护

- III. 补全短语
1. in turn 依次, 轮流; 反之; 反过来
2. brush off 擦掉
3. bat away 击打; 甩掉
4. pull off 脱掉; 摘掉
5. in harmony with 与……和谐相处
6. use up 用完; 耗尽
7. reach an agreement 达成协议
8. provide... for ... 为……提供……
- IV. 补全句子
1. 句型公式: 现在完成进行时
I try to bat away the huge insects, which have been flying around my head in a black cloud for quite a while.
我试图赶走这些巨大的昆虫, 它们已经在我的头上以一团乌云状盘旋了很长一段时间。
2. 句型公式: do all one can to do sth.
We must do all we can to protect it.
我们必须尽我们所能来保护它。
3. 句型公式: as 引导时间状语从句
As tourism develops, people are becoming increasingly concerned about the environment.
随着旅游业的发展, 人们越来越关注环境。

4. 句型公式:介词+宾语从句

Here in our city, there is a heated discussion about whether a hotel should be built at White Beach.
在我们的城市里,有一个关于是否应该在白沙滩上建一个旅馆的热烈讨论。

5. 句型公式:even though 引导让步状语从句

Even though the owner of the company guarantees that the design will be in harmony with its beautiful surroundings, the local people are still concerned that...

尽管公司的所有者保证设计与优美的环境相协调,当地人还是担心……

任务型课堂

disturb v. 干扰,扰乱

[教材原文] disturb the wildlife

干扰野生生物

[归纳拓展]

(1) disturb sb. with sth. 用某事打扰某人

It disturbs sb. to do... 做……打扰某人/使某人焦虑。

(2) disturbing adj. 引起烦恼的;令人不安的

(3) disturbed adj. 心神不安的;烦恼的

be disturbed by/about/at 因……而感到心神不安

(4) disturbance n. (受)干扰;骚乱

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① It's very disturbing (disturb) that there has been an increase in crime in the last six months.

② Not until then did Megan pour out what had been making her disturbed (disturb) the whole day.

③ A lot of people wake up every day with a sense of being disturbed (disturb).

④ Then came the disturbing (disturb) news that Dolly had become seriously ill.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之投诉信) 最近,校园附近工厂的噪音

严重打扰到我们学生,这引发了许多的不满。

Recently, we students have been greatly disturbed by the noise from the factory near our school, which has given rise to many complaints.

② (应用文写作之劝慰信) 你不应该总是用你的个人问题打扰你的朋友。

You shouldn't disturb your friends with your personal problems all the time.

多义词汇 专练

1. disturb: A. v. 干扰,扰乱

B. v. 弄乱

C. v. 使焦虑,使不安

① Don't **disturb** the papers on my desk. B

② The letter shocked and **disturbed** me. C

③ If you get up early, don't **disturb** others. A

2. It seems a false **economy** to me to cut down on libraries. B

A. n. 经济 B. n. 节约,节俭

C. n. 经济制度

语法研习课

现在完成进行时

语法感知

① The train **has been racing** along steadily since it left Xining.

② All this time, the song "Sky Railway" **has been playing** inside my head.

③ Wild animals such as these Tibetan antelopes **have** now **been using** these passages for years.

④ The journey **has been flying** by, and before I know it, we have reached Tanggula Station.

⑤ The Qinghai-Tibet Plateau **has been attracting** people's admiration for centuries.

1. 现在完成进行时的构成

现在完成进行时是由“have/has been + 现在分词”构成的。

2. 现在完成进行时的用法

(1) 表示动作从过去某时开始,一直延续到现在。

现在完成进行时常和 all this time、his week、this month、all night、all morning、recently 等状语以及 since 和 for 引导的状语连用。

(2) 表示一个近期内时断时续、重复发生的动作。

语法精讲

一、构成: have/has been doing

二、用法

1. 表示从过去某时开始一直持续到现在的动作,并且还将持续下去。

The Chinese **have been making** paper for two thousand years.

中国有 2 000 年的造纸历史。(动作还将继续下去)

I **have been learning** English since three years ago.

三年以来我一直在学英语。(动作还将继续下去)

2. 表示在说话时刻之前到现在正在进行的动作。

We **have been waiting for** you for half an hour.

我们已经等你半个小时了。(人还没到,还会继续等)

3. 表示某种感情色彩。

Too much **has been happening** these days.

这几天发生的事情太多了。

4. 表示一个重复的动作。

I **have been bidding** goodbye to some friends today.

我今天和几个朋友告了别。

三、现在完成进行时和现在完成时的区别

1. 现在完成时强调的是某个刚刚完成的动作,或某个过去的动作对现在的影响或产生的结果,也可表示延续性;现在完成进行时则强调动作的延续性,有时表示性质。

I **have thought** it over.

我已经考虑过这件事了。

I **have been thinking** it over.

我一直在考虑这件事。

She **has put** coal on the fire.

她已经往火里加了煤。(这件事已结束)

She **has been putting** coal on the fire.

她一直在往火里加煤。(一直在做这件事)

Her father **has taught** maths for ten years.

她的父亲教数学十年了。(是否延续下去,视上下文而定)

Her father **has been teaching** maths for ten years.

十年来她父亲一直在教数学。(将延续下去)

2. 现在完成进行时可以表示动作的重复,现在完成时一般不表示动作的重复。

Have you been meeting him recently?

你最近经常见到他吗?

Have you met him recently?

你最近见到他了吗?

3. 现在完成进行时有时含有感情色彩,而现在完成时一般则平铺直叙。

What **have you been doing**?

你最近做了什么?(惊异)

What **have you done**?

你最近做什么了?(仅是一个问题,让对方回答)

4. 有些现在完成进行时的句子等同于现在完成时的

句子。

They **have been living in** this city for ten years.

= They **have lived in** this city for ten years.

他们已经在这个城市住10年了。

语法冲关

I. 单句语法填空

- All these years they have been contributing (contribute) articles to our magazine.
- I have drunk (drink) five cups of coffee this afternoon.
- It's a long time since you came (come) to see me.
- Alice hasn't seen (not see) much of Henry lately.
- I'm glad to tell you that you have passed (pass) the exam.
- You know, I have been looking (look) for a job for three months, and this is my first formal interview.
- My sister stayed (stay) in Beijing for three months last year.
- The little boy is dirty all over because he has been playing/has played (play) in the mud all morning.
- I wondered (wonder) if you were free this afternoon.
- Here he is! We have been waiting (wait) anxiously for him since last night.

II. 语法填空

My wish is 1. to go (go) to a key university. I 2. have been studying (study) for many years. But I am poor 3. at English since I went to junior school. My English teacher told me to insist 4. on listening and writing. I 5. have been listening (listen) to English every morning to improve it. Because I 6. have wasted (waste) a lot of time, it was hard to catch up with other students. After 7. going (go) to high school, I 8. have been staying (stay) up late into the night and 9. have been getting (get) up early in the morning. I 10. have been writing (write) two compositions every day. I think I should spare no effort to improve my English and achieve my dream.

Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十三)

Section III Using language

I. 词语填空

operator; conservationist; disturb; be concerned about; even if

1. It is about time our operators respected the law and their own code of conduct.
2. Although he was busy calculating (计算) a problem, his sister disturbed him occasionally.
3. There have been so many conflicts in the world recently. As a result, people are concerned about the world peace.
4. He is so busy. He cannot afford enough time with his son even if he wants to.
5. John, a conservationist, says India will have 300 to 400 tigers in four years.

II. 单句语法填空

1. Since the time humankind started gardening, we have been trying (try) to make our environment more beautiful.
2. —Excuse me, which movie are you waiting for?
—The new *Star Wars*. We have been waiting (wait) here for more than two hours.
3. No doubt the theatre had contributed to the area's development and economic (economy) growth.
4. Their savings had been used up to pay lawyers' fees.
5. These behavioural changes may in turn be harmful to the health.
6. Despite the previous rounds of talks, no agreement has been reached (reach) so far by the two sides.
7. After a short rest, we went on a trip to the mountains.
8. When he awoke, he found himself being looked after by an old woman.

III. 阅读理解

No sooner had my husband, Jimmy, and I found coverage of the tornado (龙卷风) from the TV than it was on top of us. It was the loudest thing I have ever heard. The wind began to roar (咆哮) through the house. We had three flights of steps (三段楼梯) to get to the first floor. The closet down there was underneath a brick staircase, which seemed like the strongest place in our house to wait things out.

It felt as if there were no floor underneath me as the wind lifted me off my feet. As we finally

reached the last flight of steps, our front door blew out. Glass flew everywhere. Suddenly, a three-foot-long tree branch hit the doorframe. It flew over our heads, missing us by inches. Had we been one step up, it would have killed us.

We got close to the staircase only to hear the loud sound of our garage door coming off. The back wall of the house followed and was torn off into the darkness outside. By the time I reached the closet, the tornado had been over us for about a minute. Jimmy pushed me down to the closet floor, but he couldn't get inside himself because of the wind. I got Jimmy's arm and tried to bring Jimmy with it. My knees were full of glass, but at that moment, I felt no pain. If I had let go, Jimmy would have flown right out the back of the house and into the bay. All of a sudden, Jimmy lifted off his feet like people in tornadoes do in the movies. I thought he was gone. And then everything stopped. He landed on his feet. In those first quiet moments, I couldn't believe it was over.

The tornado lasted four minutes. To us, it felt like a lifetime. In that time, four of the twelve town houses in our unit were completely destroyed. Of the houses left standing, ours suffered the most damage. Amazingly, none of us were severely injured.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了作者和丈夫经历龙卷风而幸存下来的故事。龙卷风虽然只持续了四分钟,但作者感觉像是一生那么长。

1. What do we know from the text?

- A. Their house was one of the houses in the unit that were completely destroyed.
- B. It was hard to make it to the first floor because there was no floor underneath them.
- C. They decided to hide in the brick staircase because it was the strongest place to hide.
- D. If the tornado hadn't stopped in time, Jimmy would have been blown away into the darkness.

D 细节理解题。根据倒数第二段中的“If I had let go, Jimmy would have flown right out the back of the house and into the bay. All of a sudden, Jimmy lifted off his feet like people in tornadoes do in the movies. I thought he was gone. And then everything stopped.”可知,如果龙卷风没有及时停止的话,Jimmy 就会被刮走。故选 D。

2. What happened first when they got close to the staircase?
- A. They heard that the garage door came off.
- B. The author was pushed down to the closet by Jimmy.
- C. A tree branch hit the doorframe and flew over their heads.
- D. The back wall of the house tore off into the darkness outside.
- A 细节理解题。根据第三段前四句可知,“我们”靠近楼梯时,只听到车库门掉了下来,紧接着就是后面的墙不知道被吹到了哪里。当“我”挣扎到小房间时,龙卷风已过境一分多钟了。Jimmy把“我”推了进来,自己却进不来。故选A。
3. Which of the following words can best describe their experience?
- A. Thrilling but smooth.
- B. Frightening but lucky.

- C. Suffering and miserable.
- D. Painful and unfortunate.
- B 推理判断题。根据作者对这次龙卷风的描述可知,这次经历非常令人恐惧,根据最后一段中的“Amazingly, none of us were severely injured.”可知,他们也很幸运。故选B。
4. Which of the following might be the best title for the text?
- A. Love Defeats Everything
- B. A Tornado on the Way
- C. An Unforgettable Experience
- D. The Lifelong Four Minutes
- D 标题归纳题。文章主要讲述了作者和丈夫经历龙卷风而幸存下来的故事。虽然龙卷风只持续了四分钟,但作者感觉像是一生那么长。根据最后一段中的“The tornado lasted four minutes. To us, it felt like a lifetime.”可知,“The Lifelong Four Minutes”作为标题最为贴切。故选D。

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

学习任务目标

1. Understand the text, master the key vocabulary related to the topic and describe the best job in the world.
2. Analyse an event in different ways and find out the positive and negative effects of it.
3. Use the words and expressions to show your opinions.

○ 自主式预习 ○

I. 根据语境写出句中黑体单词的汉语意思

1. The applicants can fill in the application form and send it to us **via** email.
通过(某人、某机器等)传送(某物);借助于
2. The **candidate** must meet the following qualifications: a diploma and work experience. 申请者
3. The word “**genuine**” is used to describe people and things that are exactly what they appear to be, and are not false or an imitation. 真的,真正的
4. The employer offers an annual **salary** of \$ 40,000 to the employee. 薪金,工资
5. Before climbing the cliff (悬崖), he tied the rope around his **waist**. 腰,腰部

II. 拓展词汇知变形

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>applicant</u> <i>n.</i> 申请人	<u>apply</u> <i>v.</i> 申请;使用;应用
	<u>application</u> <i>n.</i> 申请;申请书;运用

续表

教材词汇	拓展词汇
<u>favour</u> <i>n.</i> 支持,赞同;喜爱;恩惠 <i>v.</i> 喜爱;偏袒	<u>favourable</u> <i>adj.</i> 赞成的;有利的
	<u>favourite</u> <i>adj.</i> 最喜爱的
<u>advertise</u> <i>v.</i> (为……)做广告(宣传)	<u>advertisement</u> <i>n.</i> 广告
	<u>advertiser</u> <i>n.</i> 广告人
<u>negotiable</u> <i>adj.</i> 可协商的	<u>negotiate</u> <i>v.</i> 谈判;协商
	<u>negotiation</u> <i>n.</i> 谈判;转让
<u>preference</u> <i>n.</i> 优先(权)	<u>prefer</u> <i>v.</i> 更喜欢;偏爱
<u>qualification</u> <i>n.</i> 技能条件,资格	<u>qualified</u> <i>adj.</i> 具备……的知识(或技能);有资格的;有条件的
	<u>qualify</u> <i>v.</i> (使)具有资格;(使)合格

III. 补全短语

1. in favour of 支持;赞同

2. in addition to 除……之外
3. be made up of 由……组成
4. under threat 遭受威胁
5. a number of 一些,若干,许多
6. become/be aware of 意识到;明白,理解
7. relate to 与……有关;认同,理解
8. remove... from 从……中除去……
9. be open to 对……开放
10. know about 了解,知道……的情况

IV. 补全句子

1. 句型公式:过去分词短语作状语

Located off the coast of North-east Australia, the Great Barrier Reef is the largest living thing on the planet.

大堡礁位于澳大利亚东北部近海处,是地球上最大的生物体。

2. 句型公式:现在分词短语作状语

To get this job, the candidates had to make a short video showing how much they knew about the reef.

要想得到这份工作,申请者需要制作一个短片,展示他们对大堡礁的了解程度。

3. 句型公式:should have done

Ben later joked that the job should have been advertised not as the “best”, but the “busiest job in the world”!

本后来开玩笑说,这份工作不应该被宣传为“最棒的”,而应该是“世界上最忙的工作”!

4. 句型公式:whether... or...引导主语从句

Whether it was a genuine job offer or an eye-catching marketing event isn't really important.

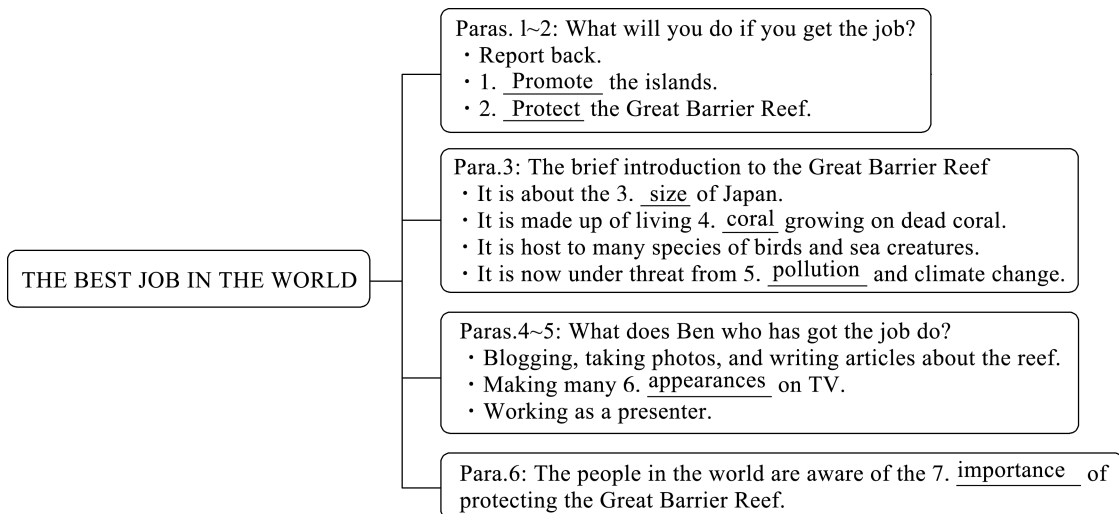
无论这是一个真正的工作机会还是一场吸引眼球的营销活动,其实都不重要。

◦ 任务型课堂 ◦

Part 1 课文理解

○ 文本整体理解

Activity 1: Finish the structure according to the text



○ 文本细节领悟

Activity 2: Choose the best answer for each question according to the text

1. How would you report back about the Great Barrier Reef?
A. Weekly blogs. B. Photo diaries.
C. Video updates. D. All the above.
2. Which statement is RIGHT according to the text?
A. The Great Barrier Reef cannot be seen from outer space.
B. This job is not attractive at all.
C. This job requires you to stay on the islands for six months.
D. Nowadays, the Great Barrier Reef is very safe.
3. What must the candidates do to get this job?

A. Have similar work experience.

B. Prove themselves qualified.

C. Major in this field.

D. Be healthy.

4. Which of the following doesn't Ben have to do as an island caretaker?

A. Making samples.

B. Taking photos.

C. Appearing on TV.

D. Writing a book.

5. What can we infer from the text?

A. If we protect it, the Great Barrier Reef will remain a safe habitat for wildlife.

B. Long ago, people knew the importance of protecting the Great Barrier Reef.

C. To protect the Great Barrier Reef, people don't have to do a lot of things.

D. The Chinese didn't compete for the job.

答案:1~5 DCBAA

○语言知识运用

Activity 3: Analyse the difficult sentences and translate them

1. Key duties include exploring the islands of the reef and finding out what the area has to offer.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。句子的主语是 duties,谓语是 include,what 引导宾语从句。

[尝试翻译]主要职责包括探索大堡礁的各个岛屿,探寻当地的自然资源。

2. The most important thing was that people all over the world became aware of the beauty of the ocean in the area.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。that 引导表语从句。

[尝试翻译]最重要的是全世界的人都认识到了这片大海的美丽。

3. What's more, they came to understand the delicate balance that the environment exists in and what can, and must, be done to protect the reef.

[句子分析]本句是一个主从复合句。that the environment exists in 为 that 引导的定语从句,what 引导的宾语从句作 understand 的宾语。

[尝试翻译]而且,他们开始理解环境存在于微妙的平衡之中,以及人类能够,且必须采取什么行动保护大堡礁。

○思维品质培养

Activity 4: Think and answer the following questions

1. What did the candidates have to do to prove that they were qualified for the job?

The candidates had to make a short video showing how much they knew about the reef.

2. How is the theme of nurturing nature presented differently in the two reading texts of this unit?

In the first reading text, the author uses his own experience to describe the challenges of building the railway and the solutions to these problems. In this way, the author wants to tell us that we should protect nature while constructing and developing human society. In the second reading text, the author explains the best job in the world, its requirements and its duty to raise the public awareness of the beauty of nature, and to understand the delicate balance of nature.

Part 2 语言梳理

1. applicant n. 申请人

[教材原文] Out of the thousands of applicants, eleven were selected, including a young woman from China.

在数千名申请者中,有十一人被选中,其中还包括一个年轻的中国姑娘。

[归纳拓展]

(1) apply v. 申请;使用;应用

apply (to sb.) for... (向某人)申请……

apply to do sth. 申请去做某事

apply... to... 把……运用于……

apply to 适用于……(to 为介词)

apply oneself to (doing) sth. 致力于/集中精力于(做)某事

(2) application n. 申请;申请书;运用

(3) applied adj. (尤指学科)应用的

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Over the next months, he applied himself to improving (improve) the technique.

② The new technology, if applied to farming, will help increase the grain output.

③ (2023·全国乙卷) There has been a rise in the number of students applying for food courses at UK universities and colleges.

④ As the wages were low, there were few

applicants (apply) for the job.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之感谢信) 她已成功申请了这所大学的入学名额。

She has successfully applied for a place at the university.

② (应用文写作之发言稿) 团队合作的精神适用于各种团体活动,帮助我们更顺利地完成任务。

The spirit of teamwork and cooperation applies to various group activities, helping us complete tasks more smoothly.

2. requirement n. 要求;必要条件;需要的东西

[教材原文] What are the requirements of the job? 这份工作的要求是什么?

[归纳拓展]

(1) meet/satisfy one's requirements 满足某人的要求

(2) require v. 需要;要求

require sb. to do sth. 要求某人做某事

require doing } 需要被做(用法同

require to be done } need, want)

require+that... 要求…… } (从句用

It's required that... 有人要求…… } 虚拟语气)

名师点拨

(1) requirement 后接同位语从句或表语从句时,从句应用虚拟语气,即从句中的谓语动词形式用“should+动词原形”,should 可省略。

(2) require 表示“要求”时,其后的宾语从句要用虚拟语气,即从句中的谓语动词形式用“should+动词原形”,should 可省略。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① One of the requirements (require) for being admitted to the university is that you (should) pass (pass) the English test organised by it.

② It is required that drivers (should) wear (wear) the safety belts while driving a car.

③ Some social apps were popular among the children even though they supposedly require users to be (be) at least 13.

④ Relearning the art of seeing the world around us is quite simple, although it takes practice and requires breaking (break) some bad habits.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之校园生活)老师要求我们每天早上跑步,然后大声朗读英语。

① The teacher requires us to run and then read English aloud every morning.

② The teacher requires that we (should) run and then read English aloud every morning.

③ We are required to run and then read English aloud every morning.

④ It is required that we (should) run and then read English aloud every morning.

3. qualification n. 技能条件,资格

[教材原文] All applications welcome, but preference will be given to those with diving **qualifications**.

欢迎所有申请,但优先考虑那些具有潜水资格的人。

[归纳拓展]

(1) qualify v. (使)具有资格;(使)合格
qualify (sb.) as (使某人)有资格做……

qualify (sb.) for (使某人)有……资格

(2) qualified adj. 具备……的知识(或技能);有资格的;有条件的

be qualified for 有……的资格;适于担任……;胜任……

be qualified to do sth. 有资格做某事

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① Why do you think you are qualified for this position?

② This exam will give me the qualification (qualify) to be a lawyer.

③ At the end of the third year, my son hopes to

qualify as a lawyer.

(2) 写作微练

(应用文写作之推荐信)凭借他丰富的经验,他**有资格承担这个具有挑战性的任务**。

With his extensive experience, he is qualified for this challenging task.

4. “should have done”结构

[教材原文] Ben later joked that the job **should have been advertised** not as the “best”, but the “busiest job in the world”!

本后来开玩笑说,这份工作不应该被宣传为“最棒的”,而应该是“世界上最忙的工作”!

[归纳拓展]

“should have done”结构的用法:

(1) 表示根据一般的规律而做出的判断,翻译为“应该(已经)……”。

(2) 表示过去应该做的事情却没有做,翻译为“本应该做……”。其否定式 should not have done 翻译为“本来不应该……却……”。

(3) 用来谈论与预期不符的事实,并且表达惊讶的情绪,翻译为“竟然……”。

[即学即练]

(1) 单句语法填空

① (2023·浙江1月卷) Board without her? I should have reminded (remind) her at the office yesterday. She may have totally forgotten it.

② It is a great pity that the young man should have missed (miss) such a golden opportunity.

(2) 写作微练

① (应用文写作之日记)我们**本应该早点离开家**以避免交通堵塞。

We should have left home earlier to avoid the traffic jam.

② (应用文写作之道歉信)他**本不该**未经仔细考虑就**做出那个决定**。

He should not have made that decision without thinking carefully.

多义词汇 专练

1. advertise: A. v. (为……)做广告

B. v. 宣传

C. v. 征聘

① We are currently **advertising** for a new sales manager. C

② They no longer **advertise** alcohol or cigarettes at sporting events. A

③ Don't **advertise** the fact that you are looking for another job. B

2. He made a **genuine** attempt to improve conditions. B

A. adj. (感情、欲望等)真正的

B. adj. 真诚的

C. adj. (物品)真的

Unit 6 课后素养评价 (二十四)

Section IV Developing ideas, Presenting ideas & Reflection

I. 单词拼写

1. Compared with the former candidate (候选人), the latter is more fluent in oral English.
2. He did all he could to win his favour (支持, 赞同).
3. On closer examination it was found that the signature was not genuine (真的, 真正的).
4. You pay income tax on all your earnings, not just your salary (工资).
5. Through DNA tests, we can know people's food preferences (优先权).
6. In this job, experience counts for more than some paper qualifications (技能条件).
7. Her hair hung down to her waist (腰, 腰部).

II. 单句语法填空

1. While I was looking through the news online, up came an advertisement (advertise) for cars.
2. You will surely pass the final exam if you really apply yourself (you) to your study.
3. It strikes me that nobody is really in favour of the changes.
4. The academic committee is made up of professors from five departments.
5. In your opinion, can the skills of negotiation (negotiate) be taught?
6. In addition to these arrangements, extra ambulances will be on duty until midnight.

III. 短语填空

relate to; under threat; in defence of; be qualified for; have a preference for; be made up of

1. My diet is made up of meat, fish, vegetables, fruits, water, and milk.
2. Many of my friends enjoy dancing, but I have a preference for singing.
3. There is no doubt that he is qualified for the work.
4. During a war, all people will fight with enemies in defence of our own home.
5. The second paragraph relates to the situation in Scotland.
6. These ancient woodlands (林地) are under threat from new road developments.

IV. 完成句子

1. Whether she comes or not makes no difference to me.
她来不来对我来说没有影响。
2. When we got a call saying she was short-listed, we thought it was a joke.
当我们接到电话说她入围了时, 我们以为这是个玩笑。
3. I should have helped Peter with his work, but I had a lot of things to do myself.
我本应该帮助彼得的工作, 但是我自己有很多事情要做。
4. My decision is that all of us are to start at 6 o'clock tomorrow morning.
我的决定是我们所有人于明天早上 6 点出发。
5. With all the things she needed bought, she went home happily.
带着她买的所有她需要的东西, 她高兴地回家了。

V. 语法填空

China's second national botanical garden opened on Monday in Guangzhou after the country's first one **1. was shown** (show) in Beijing in April. **2. Built** (build) on the current South China Botanical Garden in the eastern part of the city, its **3. establishment** (establish) was approved by the State Council.

With a total area of 333 hectares of exhibition and **4. scientific** (science) research, it is the world's largest south subtropical (亚热带的) botanical garden, as well as one of China's **5. oldest** (old) institutions for botanical research and conservation.

It is home **6. to** about 17,000 sorts of conservation plants away from their natural habitats, including 643 rare and endangered plants **7. and** 337 wild plant species on national key protection lists.

So far, 36 species of rare and endangered plants, including Camellia azalea, Michelia guangdongensis and Dunnia sinensis, **8. have returned** (return) to the wild thanks to the garden.

In the next three to five years, **9. a** national factory off-site conservation (迁地保护) centre will

be established there, to **10. effectively** (effect) protect 95 percent of rare and endangered plants in South China.

VI. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

你校学生会需要招聘一名留学生做英语学习顾问。请你写一则招聘广告。要点如下：

1. 母语是英语,汉语流利者优先;
2. 解答英语学习问题,协助组织英语活动;
3. 每周工作四个小时,报酬面议;
4. 联系人:李华(Tel:1122-3344)。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯。

English Advisor Wanted

An English advisor is wanted. The responsibilities of the advisor include helping students to practise their oral English, answering their questions, and helping organise activities such as singing English songs, English evenings, or lectures on interesting topics.

The applicant should be a native speaker of English and fluency in Chinese is preferred. The advisor is expected to work 4 hours per week.

If you are interested in the job, please call Li Hua at 1122 - 3344 for an interview. Payment for the service will be discussed during the interview.

The Students' Union

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

Jim slumped on the couch. Mother's Day was coming up, and he didn't have a present. "How can I buy a present without any money?" he thought.

Jim picked up the newspaper that was lying on the couch. He noticed a large advertisement on the front page. The local department store was sponsoring a contest. "Tell us why your mum is special and win a shopping spree (疯狂购物) for her," said the ad.

"This is perfect!" thought Jim. He ran to his room with the newspaper. Taking a pencil and a blank piece of paper from his desk, he started to write.

"My mum is the best mother in the world. She always makes lunch for me to take to school, and

she never forgets my dessert. She reads as many books to me before bed as I want. She always remembers to check under the bed for monsters. And she gives the best hug, but never in front of my friends, who would laugh at me for hugging my mum."

Jim liked what he had written. He copied it neatly and got an envelope and a stamp from his dad. He ran to the mailbox with his entry (参赛作品). "Mum will love having a shopping spree," he thought.

Jim checked the mailbox every day for his prize. Days passed by, and then weeks. Soon it was the day before Mother's Day. Jim still hadn't heard anything about the contest.

"What am I going to do now?" he wondered. He didn't have a present, and he didn't have a shopping spree, and he still didn't have any money. He had to think of something. Jim closed his eyes and curled his toes and thought so hard that his ears hurt.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Suddenly he had an idea. He fumbled in his drawers and fortunately found a piece of delicate and fragrant paper. He sat straight on his chair, and began to write a letter in his best handwriting as a Mother's Day present. "Dear Mum, I'm writing this to tell you that you are the best mother in the world..." With a sincere heart, Jim finished the letter and sealed it in an envelope, his lips curving into a smile.

The next morning Jim handed his present to his mum. After finishing reading the letter, his mum swept him into her arms with her eyes wet as if she wanted to squeeze the breath out of him. "Thank you, my dear!" she sniffled, hugging Jim more tightly. Leaning against his mum's shoulder, Jim slowly explained why he chose to write a letter as a gift. After hearing the reason, his mum gently combed her fingers through his hair, saying, "To me, your letter is better than a thousand shopping sprees." Indeed, love should be made known to loved ones.

★ ★ ★
迁 · 移 · 应 · 用

★ Part 1 应用文写作——招聘广告

○写作指导

1. 标题: 英语招聘广告的首行应居中且要写上... needed 或... wanted。标题要简洁、醒目, 让人一目了然。
2. 广告的正文: 要有对招聘单位或个人的简要介绍、招聘职位的描述以及工作职责、应聘资格、待遇、应聘方法等的描述。
3. 广告的语言应简明易懂, 尽量使用短语、短句, 使读者一目了然。同时注意增强文字的感染说服力。

○典题示例

假设你是在中国留学的美国留学生 Tom, 请你根据下面提供的信息, 在你所在的国际学校的校内贴吧上发布一则广告, 寻找周末能帮助你学习书法(calligraphy)的校友。

- 要点: 1. 你是本校高一美国留学生, 酷爱中国书法艺术;
2. 已练习一年多, 想找一位擅长书法的同学帮助自己;
3. 男女不限, 希望在周末能抽出时间对自己进行指导;
4. 有意者请向 *tom@mail.com* 发送邮件。

注意: 词数 80 左右。

Step 1: 审题谋篇

文体	应用文
时态	一般现在时
人称	第一人称

续表

要点	1. 自我介绍 2. 招聘对象和要求 3. 应聘方式
----	----------------------------------

Step 2: 要点补全

- ① I am Tom, a Senior 1 student (高一的学生) of our school who is from America.
- ② I have been practising Chinese calligraphy (练习中国书法) for more than one year.
- ③ And now I want to find a schoolmate (想找一个校友).
- ④ The schoolmate is experienced at (在……方面有经验) calligraphy.
- ⑤ No matter whether (无论是) you are a boy or a girl.
- ⑥ You are expert at (擅长) calligraphy and have spare time on weekends (在周末), and you can be my little teacher.
- ⑦ Anyone may send your email to (发送电子邮件至) the following address *tom@mail.com*, if you would like to help me.

Step 3: 句式升级

- ① 用定语从句合并 Step 2 中的③④句。
And now I want to find a schoolmate who is experienced at calligraphy.
- ② 用条件状语从句改写 Step 2 中的⑤⑥句。
No matter whether you are a boy or a girl, as long as you are expert at calligraphy and have spare time on weekends, you can be my little teacher.
- ③ 用定语从句改写 Step 2 中的⑦句。
Anyone who would like to help me may send your email to the following address *tom@mail.com*.

Step 4: 连句成篇

A Calligraphy Teacher Wanted

Hello! I am Tom, a Senior 1 student of our school who is from America, and I'm a calligraphy fan. I have been practising Chinese calligraphy for more than one year. And now I want to find a schoolmate who is experienced at calligraphy. No matter whether you are a boy or a girl, as long as you are expert at calligraphy and have spare time on weekends, you can be my little teacher. Anyone who would like to help me may send your email to the following address tom@mail.com. I am looking forward to your reply.

○学以致用

一家电脑公司拟招聘两名英语翻译,请你写一份词数 80 左右的招聘启事。应聘条件如下:

1. 男女不限,年龄在 25 岁以下;

2. 本省居民;
3. 能熟练运用英语;
4. 熟悉电脑操作。

请有意者在这两个月内将中英文简历、近照两张邮寄给 BNA 电脑公司的 Mary 小姐。

Help Wanted

A computer company wants two English translators who can meet the following requirements. No matter whether you are male or female, if you, under 25 years old, are living in this province, and able to use English expertly and operate computers, you can apply for it. Anyone who is willing to, please send your resume in Chinese and English within two months, including two recent photos, to Miss Mary of BNA Computer Company.

 Part 2 读后续写

阅读文章,完成任务。

Last summer, Hilda worked as a volunteer with dolphin trainers at a sea life park. Her job was to make sure the tanks were free of any items so that the trainers could train the dolphins to fetch specific items. However, one day after cleaning, one of the dolphins, Maya, presented Hilda with a candy wrapper from the tank. When Katherine, the trainer, saw this, she blamed Hilda for her carelessness. Upset but not discouraged by this event, Hilda decided to do some spying on Maya.

The next morning, Hilda arrived at the park early. She put on her scuba gear (水下呼吸器) and jumped into the tank for her usual, underwater sweep. Finding nothing in the tank, she climbed out of the water just in time to see Katherine jumping in on the other side. After what happened yesterday, Hilda knew what she was doing. She watched as Katherine performed her underwater search, but Hilda wasn't surprised when she surfaced empty-handed.

During the tank sweeps, Maya had been swimming playfully, but now the dolphin stopped suddenly and swam to the back part of the tank where the filter (过滤) box was located. She stuck her nose down behind the box and then swam away. What was Maya doing back there? Hilda wondered. She jumped back into the water and swam over to take a look behind the box, and her question was answered. Hilda then swam across the tank following Maya's path and emerged from the water to find Katherine removing her scuba gear. As Katherine turned around, her mouth dropped open. There was Maya at the edge of the tank with a comb (梳子) in her mouth waiting for her treat.

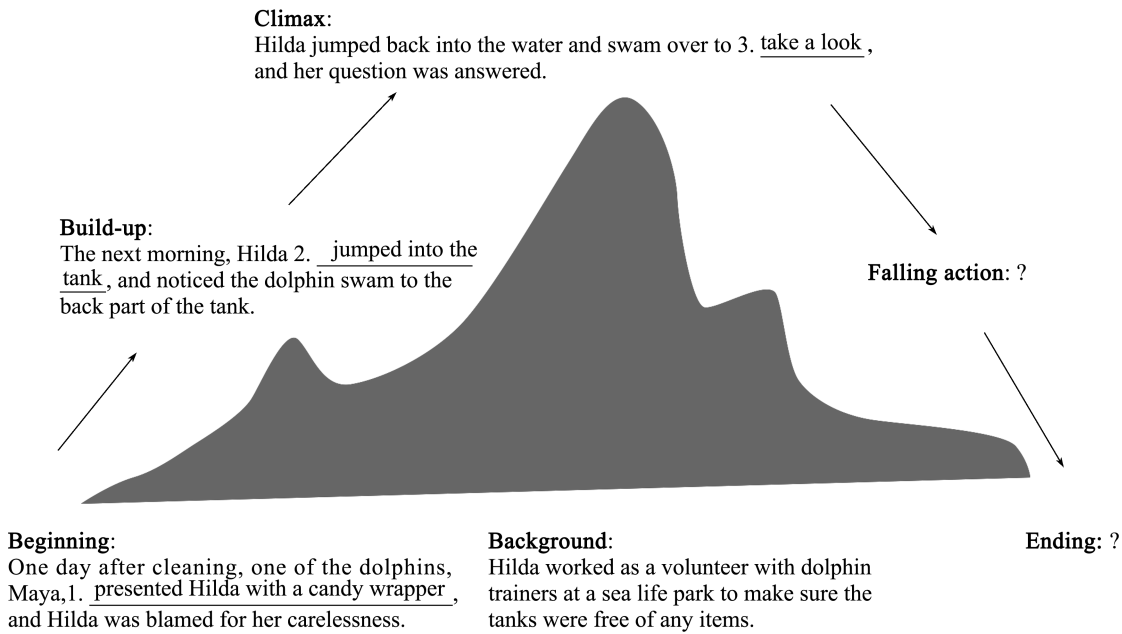
"Maya! Where did you get that?" demanded Katherine, taking the comb and throwing her a fish. "I know where she got it," declared Hilda climbing out of the tank with a handful of items still wet from their watery, resting place. "What's all this?" Katherine asked, obviously confused.

任务一: 阅读文章, 回答问题。

What does the text mainly talk about?

The text mainly tells that Hilda works as a volunteer at a sea life park, where her job is to make sure there are no foreign objects in the dolphin pool so that trainer Katherine can train the dolphins to retrieve certain objects. However, after cleaning, Maya can always bring things like candy wrappers and combs from the pool to Katherine to receive a reward. One day, Hilda finally discovers Maya's secret.

任务二：梳理故事情节，完成故事山。



任务三：回答下面的问题，并根据段落开头提示语，构思、完善故事发展的情节。

Paragraph 1 : “This is Maya’s secret,” Hilda said with a big smile. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. How did Katherine react? Katherine was more confused, wondering where Maya got the comb as well as yesterday’s candy wrapper. 2. How did Hilda make Katherine know Maya’s secret? Hilda suggested Katherine spy on Maya to clear up her confusion on her own. 3. What did Katherine do? The next morning, Katherine did as what Hilda had done the day before. Following behind Maya, she managed to find Maya’s secret.
Paragraph 2 : Now Katherine realised what had been going on. _____ _____ _____ _____ _____	1. What did Katherine think of Maya when she discovered Maya’s secret? Katherine realised that Maya was so intelligent that she was capable of fetching random items, for her extra treat. 2. What did Katherine do to Hilda next? Katherine made an earnest apology to Hilda for her blame without any evidence. 3. How did they turn Maya’s secrets into reality? Katherine asked Hilda to secretly help her collect a few things and put them in the filter at the back of the tank. She wants to give Maya treats.

任务四：根据材料内容和任务三中构思的故事发展情节续写两段，使之构成一篇完整的短文。

注意：续写词数应为 150 左右。

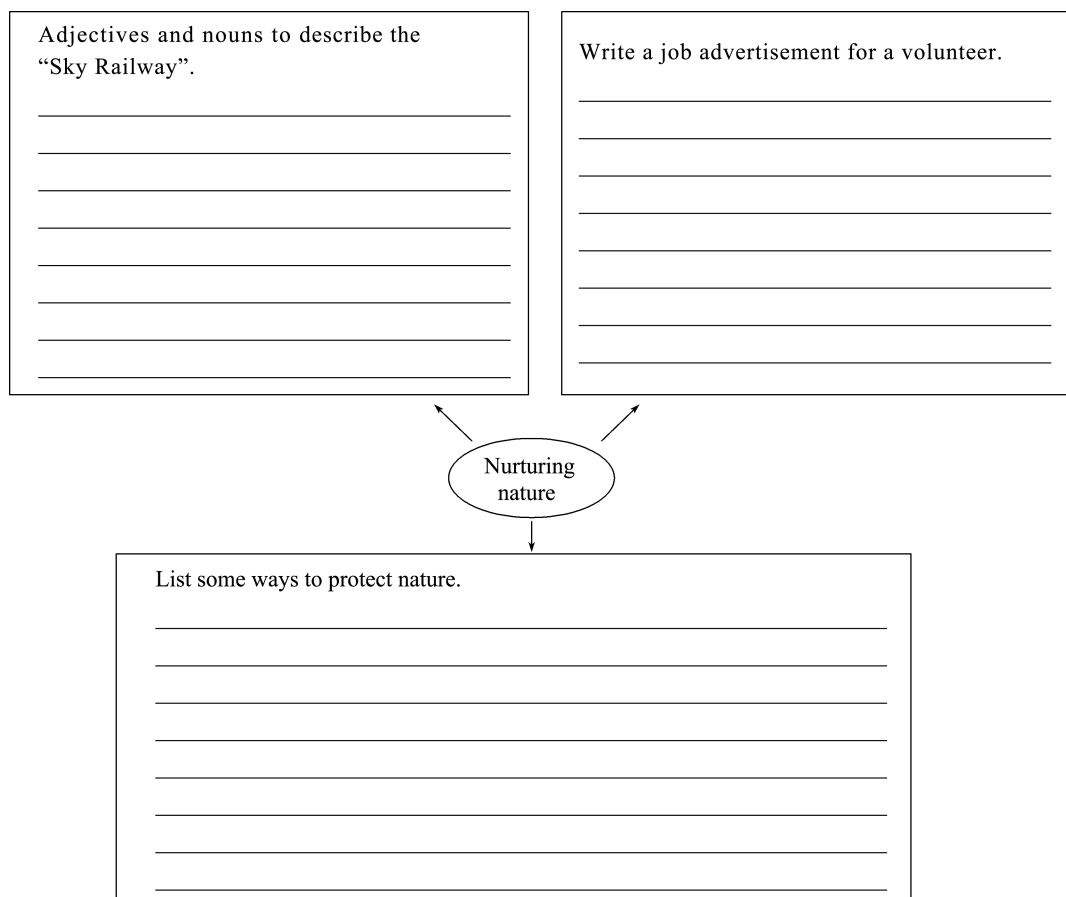
“This is Maya’s secret,” Hilda said with a big smile. “The truth,” Hilda continued, “is that Maya has been secretly collecting items from the tank, hiding them near the filter in the back of the tank. When you train her, she will give you some items so that she can get treats from you.” “Really? How do you know that?” Katherine asked in surprise. Hilda laughed and replied, “It took me a long time to discover this secret, too. It’s not easy to follow Maya.”

Now Katherine realised what had been going on. Katherine thought to herself, this is really a clever dolphin. And she made an earnest apology to Hilda for wrongly blaming her without any evidence And she said to Hilda, “Well, Maya loves treats, so we’ll work together, and you’ll secretly help her collect a few things and put them in the filter at the back of the tank. I’ll give her treats, the number of which I can increase.” Hilda replied, “Good idea, let’s do it.” From then on, the sea life park is full of warmth and harmony. Maya’s performance in front of the audience is getting better and better.

重 · 构 · 拓 · 展

一、单元重构

请根据本单元所学内容,完成思维导图。



答案:略

二、拓展阅读

阅读下面的文章,完成后面的题目。

With Earth Day coming up, a new book *Birding to Change the World* offers reflections on the ways watching birds can renew our joy in nature and even transform our lives. In the book, environmental justice educator Trish O'Kane describes the lessons from birds that have advanced her teaching in Wisconsin.

Author Trish O'Kane is fascinated by American woodcocks (丘鹑), which resemble “a football with wings” and walk awkwardly on land, relying heavily on earthworms (蚯蚓) for food. Their main call is a strange buzzing. Woodcocks are among the 134 bird species inhabiting Warner Park in Madison, Wisconsin. However, every year since the 1990s, on 4 July, the park has hosted a fireworks display called Rhythm and Booms.

At this event, attended by 100,000 people, cannons (大炮) were fired and five tons of fireworks exploded. Birds are known to feel panic and even pain from such loud noise; some abandon nests or even die of

fright. The park was covered in metal left over from the fireworks.

O’Kane was angry when she heard about the plans to further develop the park beyond its existing sports fields. O’Kane carried out research, cooperated with local nature lovers to form an activist group called Wild Warner, and educated middle school and college students about the park. Tirelessly working together, a team of park lovers brought evidence forward to local authorities about the ongoing harms to the park, highlighting the delightful woodcocks eating the park’s earthworms that had poison in them. The authorities listened. Rhythm and Booms was moved out of the park and the damaged areas of the park were restored to their original state.

O’Kane’s story is richer than what can be expressed in the words here. It begins in New Orleans at the time of Hurricane Katrina and ends in Vermont, where she teaches today. O’Kane invites us to see the beauty of birds in our world and act for their well-being. We need their voices in this spring’s chorus.

1.What can we know about the book *Birding to Change the World*?

- A. It changed people’s life.
- B. It involves the insights into birds.
- C. It describes the beauty of fireworks.
- D. It made O’Kane become an educator.

2.What impact did the fireworks display have on the birds?

- A. Severe.
- B. Positive.
- C. Global.
- D. Short-term.

3.Why did O’Kane oppose the park’s further development?

- A. Because it threatened bird habitats.
- B. Because it transformed nature lovers.
- C. Because it increased fireworks costs.
- D. Because it destroyed sports facilities.

4.What does O’Kane aim to achieve through her book?

- A. Expanding park sports fields.
- B. Inspiring nature conservation.
- C. Promoting fireworks festivals.
- D. Documenting hurricane history.

答案:1~4 BAAB

单元评估(六)

I. 阅读理解

A

Master Gardener Volunteers Wanted

What Is a Master Gardener?

A master gardener is a citizen interested in gardening and able to fulfill the training and volunteer hours necessary. Requirements vary by county and state, and the course is tailored for that specific region. You will receive special education on the soils in your area, the types of native plants, insect and disease issues, basic botany, and other information pertinent (相关的) to your gardening zone.

The educational opportunity to learn specifics about your gardening area will not only help you become a better gardener but is then passed along to the general public in lectures, clinics, and through newsletters.

What Qualifications Must You Meet?

Anyone can apply to be a Master Gardener—you don't need to be an expert or hold a degree. You do, however, need to:

- Have certain experience or know a little about gardening or landscape management.
- Be willing to share horticulture (园艺学) information with others.
- Be willing to attend a training programme and devote time to volunteering and continuing education.

Besides, to become a Master Gardener volunteer, each applicant needs to complete an application, prepare background screening paperwork and schedule an interview with Extension staff.

What Does the Training Involve?

Training sessions are offered one day a week over a three-month period and are led by expert educators in the region. Approximately 60 hours of classroom instruction and field study and 50 hours

of volunteer internship (实习) work are required to complete the programme and become certified. In order to remain a certified Master Gardener, 30 hours of volunteer work and 10 hours of continuing education or advanced training are required each year.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章介绍了招聘园艺大师志愿者的条件以及有关事宜。

1. What does a Master Gardener do?

- A. Promote gardening practices abroad.
- B. Train volunteers to help with agriculture.
- C. Teach the youth about diets and agriculture.
- D. Donate time to the local gardening extension.

D 细节理解题。根据 **What Is a Master Gardener?** 中的“A master gardener is a citizen interested in gardening and able to fulfill the training and volunteer hours necessary.”可知,园艺大师可以为当地园艺活动贡献时间。故选 D。

2. What is required if you want to apply to be a Master Gardener?

- A. Having some relevant knowledge.
- B. Acquiring excellent teaching skills.
- C. Completing given training sessions.
- D. Obtaining rich volunteer experience.

A 细节理解题。根据 **What Qualifications Must You Meet?** 中的“Anyone can apply to be a Master Gardener—you don't need to be an expert or hold a degree. You do, however, need to: • Have certain experience or know a little about gardening or landscape management.”可知,如果你想申请成为园艺大师,你需要具备一定的相关知识。故选 A。

3. How long will it take to remain a qualified Master Gardener the second year?

- A. About 40 hours.
- B. Three months.
- C. About 150 hours.
- D. About 110 hours.

A 细节理解题。根据 **What Does the Training**

Involve? 中的 “In order to remain a certified Master Gardener, 30 hours of volunteer work and 10 hours of continuing education or advanced training are required each year.” 可知, 第二年要花四十个小时才能继续成为合格的园艺大师。故选 A。

B

Two pig farmers in Suffolk, East England have succeeded in feeding one million bees after participating in a project that saw them turn over half of their land to wildflowers. Four years ago, brothers Mark and Paul Hayward decided to fill 81 acres of their farmland with wildflowers. This week, a study was carried out monitoring insect activity on the flower-covered land, which found they were feeding one million bees at any time.

“This was our target when we started, to grow enough flowers to feed a million bees in a single day,” Mark said. “We are acutely aware that bees are under threat from modern farming methods and that East England is one of the worst places where bees are seriously suffering from lack of foraging diversity (觅食多样性),” he continued.

“Every third bite of food you eat can come from bees and we wanted to create an operation on our farm that did not push nature out but rather hugged it—as a central part of our ecology system and our food cycle,” he said.

The farm uses all kinds of seeds which can produce many different wild plants and of course, the bees can get food from different wildflowers.

“We are taking a very small role in helping society restore a balance and this starts with plant diversity to encourage insects, bees, small mammals (哺乳动物), and birds,” said Paul. “At the end of the day, we see ourselves as caretakers of this land. Between us we have six children and we owe it to them to farm sustainability (持续性) and set an example for the generations to come,” added Paul.

According to the Bee Conservation Trust, many types of bees have seen their populations decline by 70%, and two species have become extinct in the last century.

Gill Perkins, CEO of the Bee Conservation Trust said, “Thanks to Mark and Paul, at least

here, 1 million bees can keep living, which is of great significance for ourselves and future.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了英国两个兄弟通过种植野花, 帮助蜜蜂生存的故事。

4. What can we know about the brothers from the first two paragraphs?

- A. They have about 162 acres of land.
- B. They grow wildflowers for pigs.
- C. They are not good at growing wildflowers.
- D. They have to support 1,000,000 bees in their land.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的 “Two pig farmers in Suffolk, East England have succeeded in feeding one million bees after participating in a project that saw them turn over half of their land to wildflowers. Four years ago, brothers Mark and Paul Hayward decided to fill 81 acres of their farmland with wildflowers.” 可知, Mark 和 Paul 将 81 英亩的土地用来种植野花, 而这些土地是两兄弟所拥有的超过一半的土地, $81 \times 2 = 162$, 即他们拥有的土地接近 162 英亩。故选 A。

5. Why are bees under threat in East England?

- A. Because there is not enough food for bees.
- B. Because bees are not used to the modern society.
- C. Because there are too many animals eating bees.
- D. Because bees cannot find different wildflowers.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段中的 “‘We are acutely aware that bees are under threat from modern farming methods and that East England is one of the worst places where bees are seriously suffering from lack of foraging diversity (觅食多样性),’ he continued.” 可知, 蜜蜂受到的威胁有两种: 一是现代农业方法, 二是缺乏觅食多样性, 即蜜蜂需要多种不同的花作为食物。由此可知, 蜜蜂找不到不同的野花。故选 D。

6. What is the Gill Perkins' attitude to the action?

- A. Opposed.
- B. Doubtful.
- C. Supportive.
- D. Disappointed.

C 观点态度题。根据最后一段的内容可推知, Gill Perkins 对这样的行为持肯定态度, 表示支持。故选 C。

7. What is the best title for the text?

- A. The Bees Are in Danger Now

- B. Two Brothers Feed a Million Bees
C. One Million Bees Are Surviving in East England
D. Two Brothers Love Wildflowers in East England

B 标题归纳题。根据第一段中的“Two pig farmers in Suffolk, East England have succeeded in feeding one million bees after participating in a project that saw them turn over half of their land to wildflowers.”可知,本文主要讲述了两位兄弟通过种植野花,为100万只蜜蜂提供了食物,从而实现生态平衡的事迹。由此可知,B项适合作为文章标题。故选B。

C

The Amazon rainforest spreads across nine South American countries but most of it (60%) is in Brazil. Brazilian scientists think they might have found a way to reverse the damage caused by deforestation and turn farmland back into forest. The secret lies in ancient local knowledge of soil.

Amazonian dark earth (ADE) is a thick, black soil found deep in the Amazon rainforest, and it may help restore forests around the world. ADE is a kind of compost made from dead plants and animals. Various kinds of compost are sold in gardening centres around the world, but ADE is unique. It was created by indigenous people (the descendants of people who lived somewhere before another culture arrived and took over) from the Amazon between 2,000 and 2,500 years ago. The Amazonian people, today known as Amerindians, created ADE using charcoal from fires, animal bones, food waste and manure. It contains microbes, including bacteria that help to turn chemicals in the soil into useful nutrients to feed plants and trees.

Vast areas of the Amazon have been cut down, mostly to make way for grassland for raising cattle. Scientists are looking for a way to turn grassland back into rainforest and revive forest ecosystems. These support thousands of animal and plant species, many of them unique to the area. Forests also absorb lots of carbon dioxide, a gas that cause climate change.

To see if the Amazon's special soil could help, the scientists grew grasses and trees in ADE, regular earth and a mixture of both. Trees grown in ADE were up to six times taller than those in

regular soil. ADE takes hundreds of years to create, so the scientists can't simply make more. Team member, Dr Siu Mui Tsai, said that instead they want to try and “copy its characteristics”, especially its helpful microbes, and see if it could help to restore natural habitats.

【语篇解读】文章主要介绍了巴西科学家发现当地亚马孙雨林中的黑土壤可能可以帮助人们恢复森林生态系统。这种黑土壤富含有益的微生物,有助于土壤中成分的转化,帮助植物的生长,但是这种黑土壤的形成需要较长时间,因此科学家只能通过复刻其特有成分来尝试恢复生物的自然栖息地。

8. What are Brazilian scientists trying to do?

- A. To bring forests back.
B. To measure damage.
C. To reduce farmland.
D. To dig out ancient soil.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段第二、三句可知,这些科学家在尝试恢复被破坏的森林。故选A。

9. What made the Amazonian dark earth special?

- A. Dead plants.
B. Animal bones.
C. Food waste.
D. Microbes inside.

D 细节理解题。根据第二段最后两句可知,亚马孙黑土壤的特别之处在于亚马孙人创造它的方法使它最终含有一些微生物,有利于土壤成分的转化。故选D。

10. What is the main idea of Paragraph 3?

- A. The reasons for cutting down forests.
B. The benefits of raising cattle.
C. The significance of forest ecosystems.
D. The influence of climate change.

C 段落大意题。根据第三段第二、三、四句可知,本段主要介绍了恢复森林生态系统带来的好处,包括滋养特有的生物以及吸收二氧化碳,即森林生态系统的重要性。故选C。

11. Which of the following might Dr Siu Mui Tsai agree with?

- A. Amazonian dark earth is helpful to microbes.
B. Amazonian dark earth is produced in large quantities.
C. Microbes are beneficial to the revival of forests.
D. Microbes are the characteristics of the natural habitats.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段最后一句可知,他希望通过创造与亚马孙黑土壤类似的物质,尤其是其中的有益微生物,恢复自然栖息地。由此推知,他会赞同“微生物对森林的恢复是有益的”的观点。故选 C。

D

City air is in a sorry state. It is dirty and hot. Outdoor pollution kills 4.2 million people a year, according to the World Health Organization. Concrete and blacktop, meanwhile, absorb the sun's rays rather than reflecting them back into space, and also take the place of plants which would otherwise cool things down by transpiration. The never-ending spread of buildings and roads thus turns urban areas into heat islands, discomforting residents and worsening dangerous heatwaves, which are in any case likely to become more frequent as the planet warms.

A possible answer to the twin problems is trees. Their leaves may destroy at least some chemical pollutants and they certainly trap airborne particulate matter, which is then washed to the ground by rain. And trees cool things down. Besides transpiration, they provide shade. Their leaves have, after all, developed to block sunlight.

To cool an area effectively, though, trees must be planted in quantity. In 2009, researchers at the University of Wisconsin found that American cities need 40% tree coverage to cut urban heat back meaningfully. Unfortunately, not all cities—and especially not those now springing up in the world's poor and middle-income countries—are blessed with parks, private gardens or even decorative street trees in sufficient numbers. And the problem is likely to get worse. At the moment, 55% of people live in cities. By 2050 that share is expected to reach 68%.

Some botanists believe they have at least a partial solution to this lack of urban vegetation. It is to plant very small simulacra of natural forests, ecologically engineered for rapid growth. Over the course of a career that began in the 1950s, Akira Miyawaki, the team leader and plant ecologist at Yokohama National University in Japan, has developed a way to do this starting with even the

most unpromising and in-bad-condition areas.

The method originated in Japan and was later introduced to other Asian countries. As it has become known, the Miyawaki method is finding increasing prevalence around the world. In Europe, Belgium, France and the Netherlands are all home to Miyawaki forests. Dr Miyawaki's insight was to deconstruct and rebuild the process of ecological succession, by which bare lands develop naturally into mature forests.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章介绍了城市的空气质量不好,而且建筑物和道路无休止扩建将城区变成热岛,使居民感到不适并加剧热浪,从而指出增加植被覆盖率是解决城市空气污染和缓解城市热岛效应的方式。

12. What are the twin problems in the text?

- A. Air pollution and heatwaves.
- B. Lack of water and green space.
- C. Bad weather and road conditions.
- D. High-rise buildings and traffic jams.

A 细节理解题。根据第一段中的“City air is in a sorry state. It is dirty and hot. Outdoor pollution kills 4.2 million people a year, according to the World Health Organization.”以及“The never-ending spread of buildings and roads thus turns urban areas into heat islands, discomforting residents and worsening dangerous heatwaves, which are in any case likely to become more frequent as the planet warms.”可知,这两个问题分别指空气污染和热浪。故选 A。

13. Which paragraph stresses the need to increase the coverage of forest?

- A. Paragraph 2.
- B. Paragraph 3.
- C. Paragraph 4.
- D. Paragraph 5.

B 推理判断题。根据第三段的内容可知,第三段强调了增加森林覆盖率的必要性。故选 B。

14. What does the underlined word “prevalence” in the last paragraph probably mean?

- A. Return.
- B. Threat.
- C. Trade.
- D. Favour.

D 词义猜测题。根据最后一段中的“The method originated in Japan and was later introduced to other Asian countries.”以及“In Europe, Belgium, France and the Netherlands

are all home to Miyawaki forests.”可知，Miyawaki 方法受到世界各地的人喜爱。由此推知，画线词 prevalence 的意思可能是“喜爱”。故选 D。

15. What is probably to be discussed next?

- A. What mature forests are.
- B. How bare land comes into being.
- C. How the Miyawaki method works.
- D. Why the Miyawaki method is popular.

C 推理判断题。根据最后一段最后一句可推知，接下来最有可能介绍 Miyawaki 方法是如何起作用的。故选 C。

II. 七选五

The key to dealing with test-day jitters (紧张不安) is through preparation! 16 It is important to prepare your mind and body before the test for the experience of working under pressure.

Get some sleep.

I know you've heard this before, but it's often repeated because it's so important. Get plenty of sleep the night before the test! If you don't have enough rest, you'll end up with less concentration. 17

Leave early.

Be sure to leave earlier than normal on the day of a test to avoid the added fear of arriving late. 18 The embarrassment will cause you to be distracted and lose valuable time.

19

Once you arrive at school or at the testing centre, find a quiet space where you can be all alone. You can use your car if you drive, or you can find an empty locker room or office (ask a teacher). Once you locate a cozy nest in a quiet place, do a relaxation session (一段时间). Close your eyes and try to relax completely. Take deep breaths and remain calm.

20

It's possible that some students start to stress out as other students discuss the material. When you hear others chatting, it might sound like you ignored something important or you misunderstood a concept (概念). It's probably not even true—but it can seem like it!

- A. Take a quiet moment.
- B. A sleepy brain is a foggy brain.

- C. Watch out for chatting with others after a test.
- D. Attending an exam late is the last thing you need.
- E. You can find time to eat some snacks during a break.
- F. Don't talk with other students in the minutes before a test.
- G. But full preparation means more than knowing the test material.

答案: 16~20 GBD AF

III. 完形填空

I was in the kitchen making lunch when I saw my six-year-old son, Billy, walking towards the woods. I could only see his back. He 21 to be walking with a great effort, trying to be as 22 as possible.

A few minutes after he disappeared into the 23, he came running towards the house again. I went back to making sandwiches, 24 that whatever task he had been doing was completed. Moments later, 25, he was once again walking slowly towards the woods.

26 curiosity, I walked out and followed him on his journey. He was 27 both hands in front of him as he walked, being careful not to 28 the water he held in them. I secretly walked 29 behind him as he went into the woods and I saw the most amazing 30.

Several large deer loomed (出现) in front of him. Billy walked right up to them. I almost 31 at him to get away. A huge male deer with elaborate (精美的) antlers (鹿角) was 32 close. But they didn't even move as Billy 33. And I saw a small deer lying on the ground, obviously suffering from 34 and extreme heat, lift its head 35 to drink the water cupped in my beautiful boy's hands.

It was on this day that I learned the true lesson of sharing.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了在酷热天气下，作者的儿子捧水去救一头小鹿，作者为之感动的故事。

- 21. A. happened B. seemed
- C. managed D. meant

B 句意：他似乎走得很吃力，尽量小心翼翼地。seem to be doing sth. “看起来正在做某事”符合句意。故选 B。

- 22. A. quick B. secret
- C. smooth D. careful

D 根据下文可知,小男孩是捧着水去救小鹿,所以走起路来非常小心。故选 D。

23. A. distance B. yard
C. woods D. park

C 根据下文中的“he was once again walking slowly towards the woods”可知,他又一次慢慢地朝着树林走去。故选 C。

24. A. wondering B. thinking
C. studying D. doubting

B 句意:我回去做三明治了,以为他做的事情都已经完成了。thinking 表示作者的想法。故选 B。

25. A. eventually B. actually
C. however D. therefore

C 根据上文可知,作者认为他做的事情已经完成了,然而却没有。所以前后句子表示转折。故选 C。

26. A. Within B. Out of
C. Beyond D. In spite of

B 根据下文“I walked out and followed him on his journey”可知,出于好奇,作者走了出去,跟在他的后面。out of curiosity “出于好奇”。故选 B。

27. A. holding B. waving
C. surrounding D. cupping

D 句意:他走路时双手捧在胸前,小心翼翼地不让手里的水洒出来。故选 D。

28. A. spill B. combine
C. gather D. leak

A 句意:他走路时双手捧在胸前,小心翼翼地不让手里的水洒出来。故选 A。

29. A. away B. close
C. out D. off

B 句意:当他走进树林时,我偷偷地紧跟在他后面走,我看到了最令人惊奇的一幕。故选 B。

30. A. scene B. story
C. view D. game

A 根据下文对于小男孩捧着水喂鹿的描述可知,作者看到了最令人惊奇的一幕。故选 A。

31. A. fought B. signed
C. screamed D. waited

C 句意:我差点对他尖叫,要他离远点。故选 C。

32. A. hardly B. dangerously
C. easily D. nearly

B 句意:靠近一只长着精美鹿角的雄鹿很危险。故选 B。

33. A. ran away B. turned out
C. knelt down D. settled down

C 根据下文中的“I saw a small deer lying on the ground”可知,作者看见一只小鹿躺在地上。所以 Billy 要想喂小鹿喝水,就得双膝跪下来。故选 C。

34. A. hunger B. disease
C. thirst D. injury

C 根据下文的“extreme heat”可知,小鹿口渴得厉害。故选 C。

35. A. in turn B. in silence
C. with appreciation D. with difficulty

D 根据语境可知,酷热天气下,小鹿遭受着缺水的痛苦,所以抬起头喝水是很吃力的。故选 D。

IV. 语法填空

A young man, while **36. travelling** (travel) through a desert, came across a spring of clear water. The water was sweet. He filled his leather container so that he could bring some back to an elder **37. who/that** had been his teacher. After a four-day journey, the young man **38. presented** (present) the water to the old man. His teacher took a deep drink, smiled **39. warmly** (warm), and thanked his student very much for the sweet water. The young man went home **40. with** a happy heart.

After the student left, the teacher let **41. another** student taste the water. He spat it out, **42. saying** (say) it was awful. Apparently, it was no longer fresh **43. because** of the old leather container. He asked his teacher, “Sir, the water was awful. Why did you pretend to like it?”

The teacher replied, “You tasted the water. I tasted the gift. The water was simply the container for an act of kindness and love. Nothing could be **44. sweeter** (sweet).”

We understand this lesson best when we receive gifts of love from children. Whether it is a cheap pipe or a diamond necklace, the proper response is **45. appreciation** (appreciate). We love the idea within the gift rather than the thing.

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华,得知学校手语社(the School Sign Language Club)正在招收新成员。你想邀请在中国作交换生的美国好友 Henry 加入该社团,请用英语给 Henry 写一封信,邀请他加入。内容包括:

1. 邀请加入的理由(如学习手语可以帮助他人,可以交到新朋友等);

2. 报名方式及截止日期。

注意:1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节,以使行文连贯;

3. 开头和结尾已给出,不计入总词数。

Dear Henry,

Is everything going well recently? The School Sign Language Club which I belong to is taking on new members. I hope you can take the precious opportunity to join it. The reasons are as follows.

First of all, the School Sign Language Club is a great club and often offers the members opportunities to attend various activities. Meanwhile, you can make more friends. Besides, you can use sign language to help those who are in need. If you would like to join us, you can complete the application form and send it to signlanguageclub@123 .com before 15th, May.

I hope you can take my advice into consideration.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料,根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段,使之构成一篇完整的短文。

The eight-year-old Carol lived with her father David, mother May and elder brother Rob. The little family happily lived in a beautiful village surrounded with beautiful nature. The village was at the foot of a mountain, with beautiful views of the snowy mountain. The family survived on growing seasonal plants and trees. Their life is totally surrounded by nature and beauty.

While they lived a very happy life, Carol did not love the beautiful atmosphere of the village. She really wanted to move into the city and enjoy the city life. She wanted to shop, move around the city, watch movies, and eat in fantastic restaurants and cafés, etc.

However, there was hardly any chance that Carol's family moved to the city as they had everything in the village.

One day, Carol fell asleep during the early noon and she had a sound sleep. Of course, she had a strange dream. She saw her grandmother as a fairy and her deceased (已故的) grandmother granted her a wish. Carol requested her that she should love to enjoy the city life as she always desired.

Grandmother understood Carol's desire, but still wanted to convince her that the peaceful village life is better than the city life.

She told Carol, "Baby, you cannot have access to fresh fruit and vegetables from plants as you have at your home. You cannot breathe fresh air. You cannot play with animals. You can hardly find any trees. You will not find peace as you see here! Do you still want to go to the city?"

Without hearing the concerns, Carol asked her grandmother to grant the wish. Grandmother granted her wish, but with a condition. Carol was told that she would only have 6 hours to spend in the city. Later, she would return to the village. Carol agreed.

注意:续写词数应为 150 左右。

Carol then found herself in the city with her friends. Carol and her friends went to watch movies. After that they enjoyed delicious food in a restaurant and shopped in a huge mall. Carol was happy that she had the chance to experience the life in the city. Yet at the same time, she understood that everything told by her grandmother was true in the city. There was no peace and no silence; the city life was fast and rushing. The air quality is not satisfying. She could hardly find any animal or trees.

Carol's brother Rob called her for lunch and Carol woke up. She recalled what happened just now in her dream and realised that her life in the village with her family was much more wonderful than the city life. Carol understood that she was having a more joyful life. She shared her dream with her family while enjoying the fresh fruit and vegetables, and they laughed together. Carol also developed love for plants, animals and beautiful nature.

模块评估

I. 阅读理解

A

Canadian Music Festivals to Let Your Hair Down at Osheaga—Quebec

This 3-day local favourite is one of Canada's biggest festivals, having a line-up of indie, rap and pop moguls. The festival is divided into six main stages: Mountain, River, Tree, Green, Valley and Zone Piknic Electronik—each featuring a different type of music.

Ottawa Bluesfest—Ontario

This music festival will celebrate its birthday with hundreds of world-class shows. Taking place in the LeBreton Flats along the Ottawa River, the festival will run across five stages over 10 exciting days. The star-studded line-up is full of local and international talents. Household names include alt-J, Alexisonfire, Chvrches, Jessie Reyez, Kygo, Logic, Shakey Graves, and many more.

Montreal Jazz Festival—Quebec

Founded in 1979, this jazz festival will celebrate its anniversary this year by hosting more than 600 concerts across 20 stages. Held in the heart of downtown and kicking off at the end of June, this year's line-up is a mix of artists from around the world. This festival attracts more than 2.5 million music fans during 10 days, and is world-famous in the jazz community. Most shows are free, but some can cost up to \$40 per person.

Festival d'été—Quebec

Established in 1908, the Festival d'été is an all-out 11-day musical feast that takes place in downtown Quebec City annually. Its main stage is one of the biggest in North America and is located in the historic Plains of Abraham. There are also hundreds of smaller performances spreading across a dozen venues in the city. The best part is that tickets are super cheap!

【语篇解读】本文是一篇应用文。文章主要介绍了加拿大的四个音乐节。

1. Where will the Montreal Jazz Festival be held?

- A. On the Ottawa River.
- B. In a village.
- C. In the city centre.
- D. On a plain.

C 细节理解题。根据 **Montreal Jazz Festival—Quebec** 部分中的“Held in the heart of downtown and kicking off at the end of June, this year's line-up is a mix of artists from around the world.”可知,蒙特利尔爵士音乐节在市中心举行。故选 C。

2. Who are the intended readers of the passage?

- A. Thrill-seekers.
- B. Foodies.
- C. Party-planners.
- D. Concert-goers.

D 推理判断题。根据标题 **Canadian Music Festivals to Let Your Hair Down at** 及全文内容可知,本文主要介绍了加拿大的音乐节,是写给常去音乐节的乐迷朋友的。故选 D。

3. What do the four festivals have in common?

- A. All of them are held in Quebec.
- B. All of them are multi-stage festivals.
- C. All of their performers are from Canada.
- D. All of their shows are ticketed.

B 细节理解题。根据 **Osheaga—Quebec** 部分中的“The festival is divided into six main stages: Mountain, River, Tree, Green, Valley and Zone Piknic Electronik—each featuring a different type of music.”, **Ottawa Bluesfest—Ontario** 部分中的“Taking place in the LeBreton Flats along the Ottawa River, the festival will run across five stages over 10 exciting days.”, **Montreal Jazz Festival—Quebec** 部分中的“Founded in 1979, this jazz festival will celebrate its anniversary this year by hosting more than 600 concerts across 20 stages.”以及 **Festival d'été—Quebec** 部分中的“ Its main stage is one of the biggest in North America and is located in the historic Plains of Abraham. There are also hundreds of smaller performances

spreading across a dozen venues in the city.”可知，这四个音乐节的共同点是它们都是多舞台的节日。故选 B。

B

When Kirk Alexander went missing for 11 days, an unlikely savior came to his rescue: his neighbourhood pizza store.

Almost every night for more than ten years, Alexander ordered a late dinner from his local Domino's pizza store. Until suddenly, for nearly two weeks, he didn't.

It was a Saturday night when Domino's general manager Fuller felt she could no longer ignore Alexander's recent absence.

Fuller had known Alexander since 2009, when she started at the Domino's store as a delivery driver and regularly made the short trip to Alexander's home about six minutes away. She knew Alexander worked from home, and neighbours said he rarely left. She also knew that he had suffered some health issues in the past. Something, Fuller worried, was wrong.

On Sunday, Fuller sent her coworker Hamblen to stop by Alexander's home. Hamblen approached Alexander's door and knocked. He could plainly see that Alexander's TV set was on, as were his lights; but after several minutes, Alexander still didn't answer the door. Seriously worried now, Hamblen called Alexander directly. His phone went straight to voicemail.

Hamblen called to relay the upsetting developments to Fuller. She dialed 911. Soon, officers were on their way.

When deputies (警官) arrived at Alexander's house, they broke the door down and found Alexander on the floor “in need of immediate medical attention”. Alexander was rushed to the hospital, where he was listed in stable condition shortly after the dramatic rescue. In the following weeks, Fuller and the other employees went to visit him with flowers and cards, noting that Alexander greeted them with knowing smiles. Their role in his rescue did not seem lost on Alexander, though to Fuller, it was all just part of the job.

Fuller and her coworkers' heroism did not go unnoticed. After their story went viral, they

received invitations—and free flights to a Domino's corporate rally in Las Vegas as a nod to their status as real-life superheroes.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章讲述了 Kirk Alexander 生病时被他经常点餐的比萨店里的员工及时发现并救助的感人故事。

4. How did Fuller get to know Alexander?

- A. By going on a trip.
- B. By delivering dinner to him.
- C. By Hamblen's introduction.
- D. By working as Domino's general manager.

B 细节理解题。根据第四段第一句可知,2009 年 Fuller 在比萨店当送餐司机给 Kirk Alexander 送餐时与他结识。

5. What is the meaning of the underlined part in Paragraph 7?

- A. Alexander knew he was safe.
- B. Alexander was in stable condition.
- C. Alexander was happy to see his friends.
- D. Alexander was aware of what had happened to him.

D 推理判断题。根据第七段画线句的后面 “Their role in his rescue did not seem lost on Alexander...”可知选 D。

6. Why did Fuller and her workmates go to a corporate rally?

- A. Because that was part of their job.
- B. Because they were offered free flights.
- C. Because they were rewarded for their kind act.
- D. Because they wanted to be superheroes.

C 细节理解题。根据最后一段中的 “as a nod to their status as real-life superheroes”可知选 C。

7. Which of the following can be used to describe Fuller?

- A. Attentive and helpful.
- B. Hard-working and honest.
- C. Careful and brave.
- D. Reliable and powerful.

A 推理判断题。通读全文可知,Fuller 注意到 Kirk Alexander 较长时间没有点餐,也记得他的身体和生活状态,及时派人查看并救助,所以 A 项更合适。

C

Now is the time to act on climate change. We need to cut carbon emissions (排放), and knowing this, it is easy to be pessimistic. Strangely, I'm

feeling the opposite. And that's mostly because of one factor: Batteries. It isn't obvious but over the last decade or so, just as we've watched our computers get faster and screens get thinner, batteries have greatly improved too.

According to the European Patent Office, the number of battery patents filed grew by an average of 14 percent every year between 2005 and 2018. Energy storage is getting better and better, as more companies are discovering new chemistry and processes to make them work more efficiently.

And the results of all of this work are astonishing. Energy density—the amount of power that can be stored in the same sized battery—has doubled in the last decade. And the costs of batteries have fallen a lot too.

Brilliantly, because electric batteries are improving so noticeably, we can already see the results. Last September, 15 percent of all new vehicle registrations were pure electric vehicles. So the change is starting to happen.

It's conceivable that in the not-too-distant future, alongside other essentials in our homes like a boiler and a fuse box, we might also have an enormous battery in the garage. This would take power from the grid (电网) or maybe even solar panels on the roof, and power appliances and lights in our homes at the times when demand for electricity is high.

So, given how much technology has improved batteries over the last decade, I can't help but be strangely optimistic about the future. Batteries may not be as flashy (显眼的) as phones, rockets or other new technologies, but when it comes to technology to fight climate change, they're definitely leading the charge.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇说明文。文章主要介绍了在目前这个碳排放量极高的社会,电池的快速发展使得作者对于减少碳排放充满乐观。

8. What is the author's attitude towards cutting carbon emissions?

- A. Doubtful. B. Favourable.
C. Unclear. D. Anxious.

B 观点态度题。根据第一段前两句可推断,作者认为应该减少碳排放。故选 B。

9. What is the possible result of batteries' great improvement?

- A. It'll make them more environment-friendly.
B. It'll make people use electricity at will.
C. It will slow the development of pure electric vehicles.
D. It'll cause the prices of batteries to rise.

A 推理判断题。根据最后一段最后一句可推知,电池的巨大改进有利于应对气候变化,这说明电池的巨大改进让电池更环保。故选 A。

10. What does the underlined word "conceivable" in Paragraph 5 mean?

- A. Unacceptable. B. Astonishing.
C. Possible. D. Unreliable.

C 词义猜测题。根据第五段画线词后面的“in the not-too-distant future, alongside other essentials in our homes like a boiler and a fuse box, we might also have an enormous battery in the garage”可知,由于电池的快速发展,这些都是可能发生的。所以 conceivable 意为“可能的”。故选 C。

11. Which of the following is a suitable title for the text?

- A. Carbon Emissions Result in Climate Change
B. Now Is the Time to Act on Climate Change
C. How Battery Technology Can Save the Planet
D. How Much Technology Has Improved Batteries

C 标题归纳题。根据第一段第二、三句及全文内容可知,文章主要介绍了在目前这个碳排放量极高的社会,电池的快速发展使得作者对于减少碳排放充满乐观。所以 C 项最适合作为文章标题。故选 C。

D

It is no accident that many films and shows open with a crazy, action-packed scene that drives viewers to ask: "What's going on here, who are these people and what do they want?" These scenes are designed to keep us watching.

A scientist who explores climate history by analysing stalagmites (石笋) held a lecture. At the beginning of her talk, she showed a photo of herself crawling through a cave to collect samples. The audience immediately perked up. Starting with that image, we couldn't wait to ask why this scientist was crawling around in a dangerous cave, which might have attracted the audience more strongly

from the beginning.

However, this particular storytelling technique is perhaps the most appropriate in presentations; research papers typically demand more straightforward reporting of results in the form of a clear abstract. When scientists describe their research to audiences outside their professional field, they often avoid discussing personal trials and sufferings. Instead, they focus only on positive, published results. No one wants to look like a failure, even if such experiences can be vastly valuable. But hiding the hardships might cut out some of your best story material. The research process lends itself perfectly to this narrative concept (叙事概念); it can be described as a winding road of plot twists that reshapes the lives of scientists and our understanding of the world. Invite others to join you for the ups and downs of your research. Instead of just presenting your findings, describe how you reacted to those discoveries. What was the most exciting? How did you get wrong? As Emma Coats, a former Pixar storyboard artist, noted in a list of storytelling principles she posted on a website: “You admire a character for trying more than for their successes.”

Try to apply screenwriting strategies to your presentation. After all, as the character Tyrion Lannister states in the television series *Game of Thrones*, “There’s nothing in the world more powerful than a good story.”

【语篇解读】本文是一篇议论文。文章主要论述了讲故事的技巧在演讲中的重要性,并建议在演讲中正确运用故事。

12. What is the common feature of a film and a lecture mentioned in the first two paragraphs?
- A. They start with a story.
B. They both focus on technical details.
C. They reflect the same background.
D. They both arouse audiences’ curiosity.
- D 细节理解题。根据第一段的内容和第二段第二、三、四句可知,它们都能激起观众的好奇心。故选 D。
13. Which can best replace the underlined phrase “perked up” in Paragraph 2?
- A. Became active.
B. Got shocked.

C. Became embarrassed.

D. Got lost.

A 词义猜测题。根据画线词后面的“Starting with that image, we couldn’t wait to ask why this scientist was crawling around in a dangerous cave, which might have attracted the audience more strongly from the beginning.”可知,这张照片一开始就吸引了观众,使观众积极思考,由此可知,画线短语应为“被吸引,感兴趣,积极”的意思,选项 A“变得积极起来”与之意义最为接近。故选 A。

14. How do the researchers typically present their findings?
- A. By using a storytelling technique.
B. By outlining the results in brief.
C. By describing their report in detail.
D. By focusing only on valuable experiences.
- B 细节理解题。根据第三段中的“ When scientists describe their research to audiences outside their professional field, they often avoid discussing personal trials and sufferings. Instead, they focus only on positive, published results.”可知,研究人员通常只是通过简要地概述结果来展示他们的发现。故选 B。
15. What is this text mainly about?
- A. The power of a good story.
B. The advice on research papers.
C. The techniques to attract audience.
D. The storytelling technique in presentations.
- D 主旨大意题。通读全文,尤其是最后一段中的“Try to apply screenwriting strategies to your presentation.”以及“ There’s nothing in the world more powerful than a good story.”可知,本文主要论述了演讲中讲故事的技巧。故选 D。

II. 七选五

Humour is a phenomenon influenced by culture. It can be difficult to determine what aspects form a certain sense of humour. How funny somebody finds a certain incident depends on many aspects including ages, personal experiences, levels of education and geographical locations. A nation’s sense of humour is linked to the historical development of the country. 16

But what about when both countries speak the same mother tongue? Will they then share the same

sense of humour or can differences still occur? Let's take the example of Britain and America. 17 To what degree is this true, if at all?

Recent research proves that there are two major differences between British and American sense of humour. 18 However, it's not shared by Americans. For example, if a British man lost his new and favourite mobile phone in the toilet, he just said, "Well done! That's just what I need."

19 And that kind of jokes is called negative humour by researchers. British men and women use it on a daily basis, while it is not the case of American humour. What Americans don't understand is the need to use it so frequently. When Americans use negative humour, they tend to state that they were "only kidding".

Although the British really do have a unique sense of humour, quite different from American humour, they can both appreciate the other's sense of humour. Therefore, some shows describe a lifestyle which both Americans and the British alike can relate to. 20

- A. British jokes tend to have a hidden meaning.
- B. Thus humour can't always be conveyed in another country.
- C. Americans and the British often share the same sense of humour.
- D. Humour contrary to what you want to say is regarded as typically British.
- E. The other difference is how frequently to joke about the dark side of life.
- F. People say Americans and the British hardly understand each other's jokes.
- G. Comedies *The Office* (UK) and *The Office* (USA) gain in popularity in both countries.

答案: 16~20 BFDEG

III. 完形填空

A few years back, I planned to build a networked digital library where theses (论文) from African universities could be stored. I wanted to find a way to make these great 21 visible to the whole world. It took me months and even years to 22 build it to my taste. But finally, it went nowhere.

The other day, I was at a rest area. I observed

that when one ant found food, others immediately 23 to help pull the food to their storage. I tried to 24 the pattern, which unfortunately resulted in 25 one. Quickly, they came together to rescue it. Then they reorganised and 26 in the line they had created. I saw no 27 of supervision (监督), yet they were moving pieces of food that were about 30 times their individual sizes, which is a 28 task.

As I watched them, the library plan 29 in my mind. Wouldn't it be 30 to trust others to help you? Right there, I made the following 31. The ants cooperated with each other: I will form a(n) 32, bringing professionals together. The ants trusted one another: I must 33 the notion (观念) that only by working alone can I ensure quality. The ants were 34: I will share my ideas with like-minded people.

It is about a month later now and the project is progressing well. It's true that by 35 everyone in the organisation and trusting people, we will achieve success.

【语篇解读】本文是一篇记叙文。文章主要讲述了作者通过观察蚂蚁寻找食物的活动中获得灵感,从而通过团结合作寻找志同道合的专业人士来一起建设网络数字图书馆项目的故事。

- 21. A. conditions B. contributions
- C. positions D. instructions

B 根据上文的"I planned to build a networked digital library where theses (论文) from African universities could be stored"可知,作者计划建立一个可以存储非洲大学论文的网络数字图书馆,目的在于让优秀的稿件被全世界看到。故选B。

- 22. A. personally B. similarly
- C. peacefully D. slightly

A 根据"It took me months and even years to 22 build it to my taste."及下文作者通过用从蚂蚁身上学到的团队合作精神来构建网络数字图书馆项目可知,作者是独自打造自己的项目。故选A。

- 23. A. survived B. gathered
- C. happened D. hesitated

B 根据下文的"to help pull the food to their storage"和"The ants cooperated with each other"可知,蚂蚁相互合作,所以一只蚂蚁找到食

物时,其他蚂蚁会立刻聚集过来帮忙。故选 B。

24. A. memorise B. share
C. disturb D. match

C 根据下文的“which unfortunately resulted in 25 one. Quickly, they came together to rescue it”可知,作者应该是打乱了蚂蚁的模式,才会导致其他蚂蚁来救这只蚂蚁。故选 C。

25. A. wounding B. motivating
C. conducting D. discovering

A 根据“which unfortunately resulted in 25 one”和下文“Quickly, they came together to rescue it.”可知,作者打乱了蚂蚁的模式,应该是弄伤了一只蚂蚁,才会导致其他蚂蚁来救这只蚂蚁。故选 A。

26. A. waited B. hid
C. continued D. reflected

C 根据上文的“they came together to rescue it”和句中“Then they reorganised and 26 in the line they had created.”可知,蚂蚁们救助伤员后便重新组织到一起,并且继续按照之前的队列前进(去搬运食物)。故选 C。

27. A. favour B. form
C. response D. comparison

B 根据上文可知,一只蚂蚁看到食物,其他蚂蚁来帮忙搬运食物——一只蚂蚁受伤,其他蚂蚁来救它——救完伤员,蚂蚁们重新组织接着搬运食物,作者从蚂蚁这一系列的动作里看不到任何形式的监督。故选 B。

28. A. regular B. permanent
C. simple D. massive

D 根据上文的“they were moving pieces of food that were about 30 times their individual sizes”可知,蚂蚁正在搬运大约是其个体大小 30 倍的食物,所以这是一项艰巨的任务。故选 D。

29. A. weakened B. varied
C. flashed D. collapsed

C 根据下文的“I will form a(n) 32, bringing professionals together”可知,看着蚂蚁协作搬运食物,作者的脑海里闪现出他的图书馆项目。故选 C。

30. A. ridiculous B. cruel
C. greedy D. wonderful

D 根据上下文可知,作者从蚂蚁身上看到团结协作、相互信任的力量,故反问道“相信别人会帮助自己难道不是很好吗?”故选 D。

31. A. decisions B. mistakes
C. assumptions D. decision

A 根据下文的“I will form a(n) 32, bringing professionals together”可知,看到蚂蚁们团结协作、相互信任的力量,作者决心一改以往亲力亲为的做法,并决定邀请专业人士一起构建网络数字图书馆项目。故选 A。

32. A. order B. opinion
C. requirement D. team

D 根据下文的“bringing professionals together”可知,作者要将专业人士聚集在一起,这是要组建一个团队。故选 D。

33. A. get along with B. keep pace with
C. get rid of D. come up with

C 根据上下文可知,作者想要摒弃那种只有自己亲力亲为才能保证质量的信念。故选 C。

34. A. efficient B. open
C. honest D. hard-working

B 根据下文的“I will share my ideas with like-minded people”可知,作者学习蚂蚁们的开放和包容,所以想与志同道合的人分享自己的想法。故选 B。

35. A. engaging B. impressing
C. challenging D. rewarding

A 根据上文的“The ants cooperated with each other”和“I will share my ideas with like-minded people”可知,作者领悟到:让组织中的每个人都参与进来,并相信每个人的力量,终将取得成功。engage... in...“让……参与……”。故选 A。

IV. 语法填空

Painted with tung oil, a kind of plant oil from the tung tree, to make them water-proof, Chinese oil-paper umbrellas are not just tools to shelter people 36. from rain or sunlight, but also works of art with rich 37. cultural (culture) meaning in China.

Chinese oil-paper umbrellas are among the world's 38. oldest (old) umbrellas. According to historical records, the first oil-paper umbrellas appeared during the Eastern Han Dynasty. They soon became very popular, 39. especially (especial) among the literati (文人). They loved to write and draw on the umbrella surface to demonstrate their literary tastes and painting 40. skills (skill).

During the Tang Dynasty, Chinese oil-paper umbrellas 41. were brought (bring) overseas to

Japan and ancient Korea, **42.** where they were known as Tang umbrellas. Over centuries, these umbrellas also spread to other Asian countries such as Vietnam and Thailand.

Oil-paper umbrellas are **43.** a necessary part of traditional Chinese weddings. A red oil-paper umbrella is needed as the bride is greeted at the groom's home, because the umbrella is supposed **44.** to help (help) avoid bad luck. Also, oil-paper sounds similar to “youzi” in Chinese, which means **45.** having (have) children. So the umbrella is seen as a symbol of fertility (多子多孙).

V. 写作

第一节 应用文写作

假定你是李华, 你想邀请你的留学生朋友 Martin 参加“建设美丽乡村”志愿者活动。请你根据下面的要点给他写一封邮件。

1. 时间: 星期日下午;
2. 志愿者活动介绍: 捡河边的垃圾, 沿路种植一些花;
3. 志愿者活动可能带来的收获。

注意: 1. 词数 80 左右;

2. 可以适当增加细节, 以使行文连贯;

3. 开头和结尾已给出, 不计入总词数。

Dear Martin,

How is everything going with you these days? I would like to invite you to take part in the “Build Beautiful Countryside” voluntary activity.

In this activity, not only will we gather rubbish from the river but we are also expected to plant some flowers along the road. In addition, what needs to be emphasised is that it is scheduled to be held on Sunday afternoon in the countryside in the south of our city. I have the idea that you will know more about traditional Chinese countryside and realise the importance of environmental protection, which, without doubt, requires joint efforts.

Looking forward to your participation.

Yours,

Li Hua

第二节 读后续写

阅读下面材料, 根据其内容和所给段落开头语续写两段, 使之构成一篇完整的短文。

From the time I started playing basketball at six years old, my father never missed a game. He would stand beside the basketball court from beginning to end and cheer for me and my team.

When I was on the team at Trinity College, he would leave work and drive two hours from Massachusetts to the Connecticut campus to see me play. He always stuck around after the game (no matter how long the coach kept us in the locker room) and then turned around and headed home to start his shift at his second job.

Growing up, I played every sport, but basketball really connected me to my father. He was raised in a rough-and-tumble household with four older brothers and one older sister, and he looked forward to playing basketball with them. To this day, he still holds basketball records at the high school we both went to. My dad was the person I could ask for feedback on how I played, and the one I could practise with on the little half-court in our backyard.

When I joined a coed AAU (Amateur Athletic Union) team at the age of twelve, it was the first time I had remembered him giving me inspiring talks and telling me that I could hang with the boys and not to be afraid of being small. As I got older, I was always the workhorse of the team and the player who did the dirty work—I had to wear knee pads during my games because I'd scramble (争夺) so hard for the ball, which earned me a role as captain.

注意: 续写词数应为 150 左右。

The day came soon when I would compete again. My father, as usual, came into my room, patted my shoulder, and said in his firm but slow voice, “Be skilled in using skills, keep the cooperation with your team members, and pay attention to safety.” The familiar language and instructions stirred in my heart again. Many times I would secretly resolve to finish the race well and live up to my father's expectations.

After the game, as usual, I told my father about it. My father smiled slightly and asked, “What did you learn from this competition?” I thought my father would be happy to praise me, so I did not know what to do when he asked. My father seemed to see my embarrassment and said, “The game is important, but the most important thing is the reflection it gives us.” I looked at my father as if I understood a lot.